

Substantive Application under the Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 – Volume B – RMA Approvals

Alternative to the Brynderwyn Hills – Brynderwyn Hills Section

2 April 2026

Revision A

10722-PTA-2B0-PE-RPT-0002

Copyright information

Copyright ©. This copyright work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International licence. In essence, you are free to copy, distribute and adapt the work, as long as you attribute the work to NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi (NZTA) and abide by the other licence terms. To view a copy of this licence, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/>.

Table of Contents

A1. OVERVIEW	1
A1.1. Structure and Purpose of this Volume	1
A2. FTAA SUBSTANTIVE APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS	2
A2.1. Pre lodgement requirements – Existing Resource Consents	2
A2.2. FTAA Substantive Application Requirements	2
A2.2.1. Application Checklist A – Resource Consents	2
A2.2.2. Application Checklist C – Designation	4
B1. OVERVIEW	6
B2. NOTICE OF REQUIREMENTS	6
B3. RESOURCE CONSENTS	6
B3.1. National Environmental Standard Consents	7
B3.1.1. Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2011) Regulations 2011 (NES-CS)	7
B3.1.2. Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) 2020 (NES-F)	7
B3.2. Regional Resource Consents	8
B4. PERMITTED ACTIVITIES	9
C1. OVERVIEW	10
C2. RELEVANT POLICY AND PLANNING DOCUMENTS	10
C2.1. National Policy Statements	10
C2.1.1. National Policy Statement for Infrastructure 2025	10
C2.1.2. National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020	13
C2.1.3. National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022	14
C2.1.4. National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023	15
C2.1.5. National Policy Statement for Electricity Networks 2008	16
C2.2. National Environmental Standards	17
C2.2.1. National Environmental Standards for Freshwater 2020 (NES-F)	17
C2.2.2. National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contamination in Soil to Protect Human Health 2011	17
C2.3. Northland Regional Plans	18
C2.3.1. Regional Policy Statement for Northland 2016	18
C2.3.2. Regional Plan for Northland 2026	18
C2.4. Kaipara Plans	19
C2.4.1. Kaipara District Spatial Plan – Ngā Wawata 2050 (2020)	19
C2.4.2. Operative Kaipara District Plan 2013	19
C2.4.3. Proposed Kaipara District Plan 2025	21
C2.5. Whangārei District Plan Operative in Part 2022	22
C3. RELEVANT IWI MANAGEMENT PLANS	24
C3.1. Management Plan Provisions	24
C3.1.1. Te Uri o Hau - Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao (2011)	24
C3.1.2. Patuharakeke - Hāpu Environmental Management Plan (2014) and Climate Update (2025)	24
C3.1.3. Te Parawhau - Whatitiri Resource Management Plan (2016)	24
C3.2. Project Assessment against Management Plan Provisions	25
C4. OTHER MATTERS	26
C5. NOTICE OF REQUIREMENT	26
C5.1. Effects on the Environment	26
C5.1.1. Positive Effects	26
C5.2. Consideration of Alternatives	27

C5.2.1. Introduction	27
C5.2.2. Background	27
C5.2.3. Emerging Preferred Corridor / Consent Design.....	28
C5.2.4. Summary of alternatives assessments	29
C6. RESOURCE CONSENTS.....	33
C6.1. Section 104.....	33
C6.2. Section 105.....	34
C6.2.1. Stormwater discharges during construction	35
C6.2.2. Operational Stormwater Discharges.....	35
C6.2.3. Construction Air Discharges	35
C6.3. Section 107.....	36
C7. ASSESSMENT AGAINST PART 2 OF THE RMA.....	37
C7.1. Section 5 – Purpose	37
C7.2. Section 6 – Matters of National Importance	37
C7.3. Section 7 – Other Matters	38
D1. OVERVIEW	40
D2. SUMMARY OF EFFECTS	40
D3. TRAFFIC AND TRANSPORT.....	45
D3.1. Construction Traffic Effects	45
D3.1.1. Light and heavy vehicle movements	45
D3.1.2. Construction Safety	46
D3.1.3. Mitigation	46
D3.2. Operational Transport Effects.....	47
D3.2.1. Traffic volumes	47
D3.2.2. Travel times and reliability.....	47
D3.2.3. Interchanges.....	48
D3.2.4. Road Safety.....	48
D3.2.5. Public Transport Network Performance	48
D3.2.6. Pedestrian and Cycle Network Performance	48
D4. NOISE AND VIBRATION.....	49
D4.1. Construction Noise and Vibration Effects	49
D4.1.1. Mitigation	50
D4.2. Operational Noise Effects.....	51
D4.2.1. Mitigation	53
D5. LANDSCAPE, NATURAL CHARACTER AND VISUAL AMENITY	53
D5.1. Temporary Landscape and Visual Amenity Effects.....	54
D5.2. Operational Landscape and Visual Amenity Effects	54
D5.3. Effects on Natural Character.....	55
D5.4. Mitigation	55
D6. HERITAGE AND ARCHAEOLOGY.....	57
D6.1. Mitigation	58
D7. ECOLOGY.....	58
D7.1. Terrestrial Ecology	58
D7.1.1. Mitigation	62
D7.2. Freshwater Ecology	64
D7.2.1. Effects on Streams	65
D7.2.2. Natural Inland Wetlands	67
D7.2.3. Potential groundwater drawdown effects on streams and wetlands	69

D7.2.4.	Mitigation	69
D7.3.	Avifauna Ecology	71
D7.3.1.	Mitigation	72
D8.	CULTURAL VALUES	73
D8.1.	Te Uri o Hau	73
D8.2.	Patuharakeke	77
D8.3.	Te Parawhau	82
D8.4.	Summary	82
D9.	LAND CONTAMINATION	82
D9.1.	Mitigation	83
D9.1.1.	Mitigation Recommended by Specialist	83
D9.1.2.	Mitigation Proposed by NZTA	84
D10.	CONSTRUCTION WATER.....	84
D10.1.	Mitigation	86
D10.1.1.	Mitigation Recommended by Specialist	86
D10.1.2.	Mitigation Proposed by NZTA	87
D11.	OPERATIONAL STORMWATER AND FLOODING	87
D11.1.	Operational Stormwater.....	87
D11.1.1.	Effects on water quantity and quality.....	87
D11.1.2.	Ecological effects	88
D11.1.3.	Stormwater related effects on water users.....	88
D11.1.4.	Mitigation	88
D11.2.	Flooding	88
D11.2.1.	Effects outside the Proposed Designation	89
D11.2.2.	Mitigation	89
D12.	GROUNDWATER AND SETTLEMENT	90
D12.1.	Effects of construction dewatering and depressurisation (construction phase)	90
D12.2.	Effects on baseflow to wetlands and streams from permanent dewatering (operational phase)	90
D12.3.	Potential effects of reduction in groundwater drainage for realigned streams on top of spoil sites	91
D12.4.	Potential effects on neighbouring groundwater users	91
D12.5.	Potential settlement effects on nearby structures due to groundwater drawdown	92
D12.6.	Potential effects on groundwater quality	92
D12.7.	Mitigation	92
D12.7.1.	Mitigation Recommended by Specialist	92
D12.7.2.	Mitigation Proposed by NZTA	93
D13.	CONSTRUCTION AIR QUALITY AND DUST	93
D13.1.	Mitigation	93
D14.	HIGHLY PRODUCTIVE LAND.....	94
D14.1.	Mitigation	94
E1.	PROPOSED CONDITIONS	95
APPROVAL UNDER SECTION 85.....		96
APPENDIX A.....		99
FTAA Checklists A (Resource Consents) and C (Designations).....		99
APPENDIX B.....		100
Rules Assessment		100
APPENDIX C.....		101
Objectives and Policies Assessment.....		101

APPENDIX D	102
Technical Assessments	102
D1 - Assessment of Transport Effects	102
D2 - Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects	102
D3 - Assessment of Operational Noise Effects	102
D4 - Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects	102
D5 - Assessment of Effects on Archaeology	102
D6 - Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology	102
D7 - Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology	102
D8 - Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology	102
D9 - Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects	102
D10 - Construction Water Assessment	102
D11 - Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects	102
D12 - Assessment of Effects on Groundwater	102
APPENDIX E	103
Proposed Conditions (NoR and RC)	103
APPENDIX F	104
Schedule of Owners and occupiers of land within the Designation Boundary	104
APPENDIX G	105
Maps and Schedule of owners and occupiers of land adjacent to the Proposed Designation Boundary	105

Figures

Figure 1: Volumes of the Application

Figure 2: Map of the shortlist options considered for the Emerging Preferred Corridor (relative to existing SH1)

Figure 3: Options assessed as part of the Brynderwyn Hills alignment alternatives assessment (IBC Option in grey, Alternative 1 in magenta, and Alternative 2 in green; emerging preferred corridor in red and prior to rationalisation).

Figure 4: Options assessed in the EoT alternatives assessment (IBC Option shown in grey and EoT Option shown in green; emerging preferred corridor in red and prior to rationalisation).

Figure 5: Options assessed as part of the Piroa Stream Crossing alternatives assessment (Option 1 on the left, Option 2 in the centre, and Option 3 on the right). Note that the visualisations present a scenario where vegetation is near or at full maturity).

Figure 3: Map of the four sectors along the Indicative Alignment for the Assessment of Operational Noise Effects

Figure 7: Indicative location of the proposed Northern Mitigation and Release Site

Figure 8: Indicative location of the proposed Central Mitigation and Release Site

Figure 9: Indicative location of the proposed Southern Mitigation and Release Site

Tables

Table 1: Checklist of Information requirements under Clauses 5-7, Schedule 5 of the FTAA

Table 2: Checklist of Information requirements under Clauses 5-7, Schedule 5 of the FTAA

Table 3: Resource consents required under the NES-F (Regulations 45, 57 and 71)

Table 4: Resource Consents required under the RPN (s42(4)(a) FTAA)

Table 5: Permitted Activity Rules Assessment

Table 6: Relevant local, regional and national planning documents

Table 7: Recognised Iwi Management Plans lodged with authorities

Table 8: Recognised iwi management cross-plan compliance matrix

Table 9: Evaluation process for alternatives assessments

Table 10: Summary of actual and potential effects

Table 11: Summary of effects and the recommended mitigations for landscape and visual amenity values and natural character (temporary and operational) effects across the Proposed Designation boundary

Table 12: Summary of construction and operational effects of the Project on terrestrial ecology, level of effect and recommended mitigation

Table 13: Level of stream effect based on value and magnitude of the effect

Table 14: Natural inland wetland areas (m²) impacted by works associated with the Indicative Alignment

Table 15: Level of effect of wetland change based on value and magnitude of change

Table 16: Recommended mitigation measures for the Project's operational effects on streams and wetlands

Table 18: Summary of potential temporary and operational effects of the Project on avifauna species of 'Moderate', 'High' and 'Very High' ecological values

Table 19: Te Uri o Hau cultural effects assessment and magnitude of effect summaries

Table 20: Patuharakeke cultural effects assessment and magnitude of effect summaries

Table 21: Earthworks Areas across Earthworks Zones

Table 22: Summary of Project Sediment Yield Analysis

Table 23: Project catchment sediment contribution to overall catchment sediment

Glossary of Acronyms and Abbreviations

The glossary of acronyms and abbreviations table in Volume A of the Substantive Application applies to this Volume and should be referred to in addition to the acronyms and abbreviations below.

Acronym / Abbreviation	Term
ALAN	Artificial Light at Night
AOG	Alternatives Oversight Group
ARI	Average Recurrence Interval
BPO	Best Practicable Option
CESCP	Construction Erosion and Sediment Control Plan
CIA	Cultural Impact Assessment
CNVMP	Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan
CMA	Coastal Marine Area
CSMP	Contaminated Soils Management Plan
CTMP	Construction Traffic Management Plan
CWA	Construction Water Assessment
DBH	Diameter at Breast Height
DMP	Dust Management Plan
DSI	Detailed Site Investigation
EIANZ	Environment Institute of Australia and New Zealand
EoT	East of Transpower
ESCP	Erosion and Sediment Control Plan
HPL	Highly productive land
HSRs	Highly sensitive receivers
IBC	Indicative Business Case
KDSP	Kaipara District Spatial Plan – Ngā Wawata 2050 (2020)
LCP	Landscape Concept Plan
LUC	Land Use Capability
LoS	Level of Service
NES	National Environmental Standard
NES-AQ	Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004
NES-DW	Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Sources of Human Drinking Water) Regulations 2007
NIWA	National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research
NPS-EN	National Policy Statement for Electricity Networks 2008
NPS-FM	National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020
NPS-HPL	National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022
NPS-IB	National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023
PPFs	Protected Premises and Facilities
RAP	Remedial Action Plan
RPSN	Regional Policy Statement for Northland 2016

SAP	Site Access Point
SH15	State Highway 15
SIDRA	The Signalised and Unsignalised Intersection Design and Research Aid
SME	Subject Matter Expert
SNA	Significant Natural Area
SSTMP	Site-Specific Traffic Management Plan
SQEP	Suitably Qualified and Experienced Person
REC	River Environment Classification
WAA	Wildlife Act Authority

Glossary of Defined Terms

The glossary of defined terms table in Volume A of the Substantive Application apply to this Volume and should be referred to in addition to the defined terms below.

Term	Meaning
Constructed wetland	<p>As defined in the Regional Plan for Northland 2026: A wetland developed deliberately by artificial means or constructed on a site where:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) a wetland has not occurred naturally previously, or 2) a wetland has been previously constructed legally. <p>This does not include induced wetland, reverted wetland or wetland created solely for ecological restoration purposes. Artificial water storage facilities; detention dams; reservoirs for firefighting, irrigation, domestic or community water supply; engineered soil conservation structures including sediment traps; and roadside drainage channels are also not constructed wetlands or natural wetlands.</p> <p>As defined in the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater, for groundwater assessment purposes: A stormwater management device that is a shallow densely vegetated pond that controls the release of stormwater flows related to extended detention for stream erosion protection and intermediate storm control. The wetland also provides water quality treatment.</p>
dB	<p><u>Decibel</u> The unit of sound level which does not have its characteristics modified by a filter (unweighted). Expressed as a logarithmic ratio of sound pressure (P) relative to a reference pressure (Pr) of Pr=20 mPa i.e. $dB = 20 \times \log(P/Pr)$</p>
Dewatering	<p>As defined in the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater, means the removal of groundwater or stormwater from a construction site.</p>
Natural wetland	<p>As defined in the Regional Plan for Northland 2026: Any wetland including an induced wetland and a reverted wetland, regardless of whether it is dominated by indigenous vegetation, but does not include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) a constructed wetland, or 2) wet pasture, damp gully heads, or 3) areas where water temporarily ponds after rain, or 4) pasture containing patches of rushes, or 5) artificial water storage facilities; detention dams; reservoirs for firefighting, irrigation, domestic or community water supply; engineered soil conservation structures including sediment traps; and roadside drainage channels.
Natural inland wetland	<p>As defined in the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020, means a wetland that is not:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) in the coastal marine area; or (b) a deliberately constructed wetland, other than a wetland constructed to offset impacts on, or to restore, an existing or former natural inland wetland; or (c) a wetland that has developed in or around a deliberately constructed water body, since the construction of the water body; or (d) a geothermal wetland; or (e) a wetland that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (i) is within an area of pasture used for grazing; and (ii) has vegetation cover comprising more than 50% exotic pasture species (as identified in the National List of Exotic Pasture Species using the Pasture Exclusion Assessment Methodology (see clause 1.8)); unless (iii) the wetland is a location of a habitat of a threatened species identified under clause 3.8 of this National Policy Statement, in which case the exclusion in (e) does not apply
Sensitive Activities	<p>Relates to construction noise. Sensitive activities are any dwelling, visitor accommodation, boarding house, marae, papakāinga, integrated residential development, retirement village, supported residential care, care centres, lecture theatres in tertiary education facilities, classrooms in education facilities and healthcare facilities with an overnight stay facility.</p>
Sensitive receptor	<p>Relates to contaminated land. Sensitive receptors are person(s) or ecosystem(s) with the potential to be exposed to contaminants</p>
Sensitive Use Buildings	<p>Relates to construction vibration. Sensitive buildings are buildings used for residential activities, medical treatment and educational purposes, and marae.</p>

Specified infrastructure	<p>As defined in the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020, means any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) infrastructure that delivers a service operated by a lifeline utility (as defined in the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002) (b) regionally significant infrastructure identified as such in a regional policy statement or regional plan (c) any water storage infrastructure (d) any public flood control, flood protection, or drainage works carried out: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) by or on behalf of a local authority, including works carried out for the purposes set out in section 133 of the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941; or (ii) for the purpose of drainage by drainage districts under the Land Drainage Act 1908 (e) defence facilities operated by the New Zealand Defence Force to meet its obligations under the Defence Act 1990 (f) ski area infrastructure
Vegetation clearance	<p>As defined in the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) means the disturbance, damage, destruction, or removal of vegetation by any means (for example, by cutting, crushing, application of chemicals, or burning); and (b) includes activities that result in the disturbance, damage, destruction, or removal of vegetation (for example, over-planting, applying the seed of exotic pasture species, mob-stocking, or draining away water); but (c) does not include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) the removal of sphagnum moss for the purpose of a harvest in accordance with regulation 48 or 49; or (ii) the crushing of other vegetation for the purpose of maintaining the dominance of sphagnum moss, if the crushing is carried out during a harvest of sphagnum moss or to rehabilitate the moss after it is harvested; or (iii) an activity described in paragraph (a) or (b) that is for the maintenance or construction of fencing for the purpose of excluding stock or marking property boundaries; or (iv) an activity described in paragraph (a) or (b) that is for the maintenance of shelter belts; or (v) grazing <p>As defined in the Regional Plan for Northland 2026: The cutting, burning, crushing, removal or destruction of vegetation, but does not include clearing:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) hedges and amenity plants, or 2) vegetation along fences and around dams and ponds, or 3) vegetation around network utilities, or 4) vegetation alongside roads and tracks, or 5) vegetation that is infected by an unwanted organism as declared by the Ministry of Primary Industries Chief Technical Officer or an emergency declared by the Minister under the Biosecurity Act 1993, or 6) pasture, or 7) agricultural or horticultural crops, or 8) weeds and pest plants. <p>Note: The vegetation clearance definition only applies to vegetation clearance in the coastal riparian and foredune management area or within 10 metres of a natural wetland, or within 10 metres of the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake, as provided for by the rules in C.8.4 Vegetation clearance in riparian areas and foredune management area and related policies.</p>
Vibration	<p>When an object vibrates, it moves rapidly up and down or from side to side. The magnitude of the sensation when feeling a vibrating object is related to the vibration velocity.</p> <p>Vibration can occur in any direction. When vibration velocities are described, it can be either the total vibration velocity, which includes all directions, or it can be separated into the vertical direction (up and down vibration), the horizontal transverse direction (side to side) and the horizontal longitudinal direction (front to back).</p>

PART A – Introduction and FTAA Requirements

A1. Overview

This Volume (B) of the Application has been prepared on behalf of the New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi (NZTA) in support of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) approvals (Notice of Requirements (NoRs) and resource consents) required for the Brynderwyn Hills section of the Alternative to the Brynderwyn Hills Project (hereinafter referred to as “the Project”), being one stage of the listed project under Schedule 2 of the Fast-track Approvals Act 2024 (FTAA). This section provides the structure and purpose of this Volume and outlines the requirements for RMA approvals for a substantive application under sections 42, 43, 44 and Schedule 5 of the FTAA.

A1.1. Structure and Purpose of this Volume

As outlined in Volume A, this Application has been structured in accordance with the requirements of sections 42, 43, 44 and Schedules 5, 7, 8 and 9 of the FTAA and as such has been separated into four volumes.

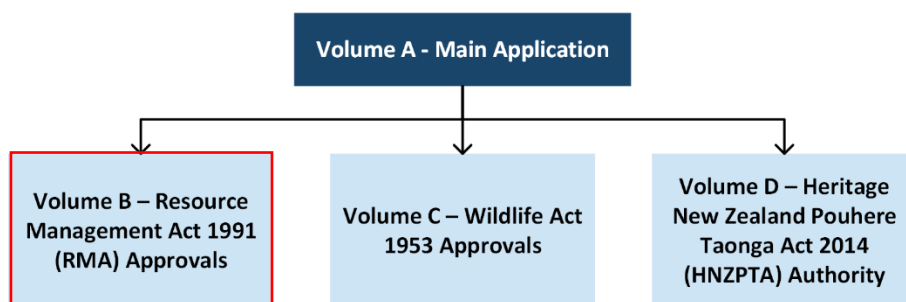


Figure 1: Volumes of the Application

This volume of the Application, **Volume B**, has been prepared to support the NoRs and resource consents required for the Project that would have otherwise been applied for or lodged under the RMA¹ and contains the information necessary to satisfy the requirements for RMA approvals.²

Volume B should be read in conjunction with Volume A, which is the main overarching report for the Application and contains general information relevant to all approvals. Volume B covers the following:

- FTAA general pre-lodgement requirements;³
- FTAA Schedule 5 requirements and Checklists A and C;
- Details of the RMA Approvals sought in this Application;
- Statutory Context and Assessment.
- Assessment of Actual and Potential Effects on the Environment;
- Proposed Conditions (NoR and Resource Consent); and
- Conclusion.

¹ Section 42(4)(a) and (d) FTAA.

² Section 43 and Schedule 5, clauses 5 to 8 and 12 FTAA.

³ Section 30 FTAA.

A2. FTAA Substantive Application Requirements

This Section outlines the requirements for RMA approvals for a substantive application under sections 42, 43, 44 and Schedule 5 of the FTAA and where the relevant information to satisfy each requirement can be found within this Volume.

A2.1. Pre lodgement requirements – Existing Resource Consents

As noted in Section B2 of Volume A, NZTA does not hold any existing resource consents for the same activity using some or all of the same natural resource/s.⁴ The Northland Regional Council (NRC) email confirming this is attached as Appendix C of Volume A.

A2.2. FTAA Substantive Application Requirements

Section 43(1)(e)(ii) of the FTAA requires a substantive application to comply with the requirements listed in subsection 3 that apply to approvals sought.

A2.2.1. Application Checklist A – Resource Consents

In accordance with section 43(3)(a), Table 1 below sets out the information requirements in clauses 5 to 7⁵ of Schedule 5 of the FTAA and the section of this Volume or Volume A in which they are addressed. These requirements have been provided in sufficient detail⁶ for the purpose for which it is required within Volumes A and B of this Application.

Table 1: Checklist of Information requirements under Clauses 5-7, Schedule 5 of the FTAA

Clause, Schedule 5	Information required for an approval described in section 42(4)(a) (resource consent), Clauses 5-7 of Schedule 5	Application Reference
5(1)(a)	a description of the proposed activity; and	Volume A, Part C
5(1)(b)	a description and map of the site at which the activity is to occur, including whether the site is within or adjacent to— a statutory area (as defined in the relevant Treaty settlement Act); or ngā rohe moana o ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou; or a protected customary rights area under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011; and	Volume A, Part B and Appendix D
5(1)(c)	confirmation that the consent application complies with section 46(2)(a), (b), and (d); and	Volume A, Sections A2, A5.4 and A7
5(1)(d)	the full name and address of— each owner of the site and of land adjacent to the site; and each occupier of the site and of land adjacent to the site whom the applicant is able to identify after reasonable inquiry; and	Volume A, Section D5 and Appendix D Volume B, Appendices F and G
5(1)(e)	a description of any other activities that are part of the proposal to which the consent application relates; and	Volume A, Part C
5(1)(f)	a description of any other resource consents, notices of requirement for designations, or alterations to designations required for the project to which the consent application relates; and	Volume A, Section A6
5(1)(g)	an assessment of the activity against sections 5, 6, and 7 of the Resource Management Act 1991; and	Volume B, Section C7
5(1)(h)	an assessment of the activity against any relevant provisions in any of the documents listed in subclause (2); and	Volume B, Sections C2, C3 and Appendix C
5(1)(i)	information about any Treaty settlements that apply in the area covered by the consent application	Volume A, Section D7

⁴ Section 30 FTAA.

⁵ Note that Schedule 5, clause 8 is not relevant to this application.

⁶ Section 44 FTAA.

Clause, Schedule 5	Information required for an approval described in section 42(4)(a) (resource consent), Clauses 5-7 of Schedule 5	Application Reference
5(1)(j)	a list of any relevant customary marine title groups, protected customary rights groups, ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou (where an application is within, adjacent to or directly affecting ngā rohe moana o ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou), or applicants under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011; and	Volume A, Sections A5.1 and D6.2
5(1)(k)	any conditions that the applicant proposes for the resource consent; and	Volume B, Section E3 and Appendix E
5(1)(l)	if a notice under section 30(3)(b) or (5) has been received, — a copy of that notice showing that it was received within the time frame specified in section 30(6)(b); and if a notice has been received under section 30(5), any more up-to-date information that the applicant is aware of about the existing resource consent referred to in the notice.	Volume A, Section B2 and Appendix C
5(2)	The documents referred to in subclause (1)(h) are the following: a national environmental standard: other regulations made under the Resource Management Act 1991: a national policy statement: a New Zealand coastal policy statement: a regional policy statement or proposed regional policy statement: a plan or proposed plan: a planning document recognised by a relevant iwi authority and lodged with a local authority.	N/A – refer to Clause 5(1)(h) above.
5(3)	An assessment under subclause (1)(h) must include an assessment of the activity against— any relevant objectives, policies, or rules in a document listed in subclause (2); and any requirement, condition, or permission in any rules in any of those documents; and any other requirements in any of those documents.	N/A – refer to Clause 5(1)(h) above.
5(4)(a)	A consent application must include an assessment of the activity's effects on the environment that includes the information required by clause 6; and	Volume B, Part D and Appendices D1 to D12
5(4)(b)	A consent application must include an assessment of the activity's effects on the environment that covers the matters specified in clause 7.	Volume B, Part D and Appendices D1 to D12
5(5)(a)	if a permitted activity is part of the proposal to which the consent application relates, a description that demonstrates that the activity complies with the requirements, conditions, and permissions for the permitted activity (so that a resource consent is not required for that activity under section 87A(1) of the Resource Management Act 1991); and	Volume B, Section B3 and Appendix B
5(5)(b)	Not Applicable – the activity is not occurring in an area that is within the scope of a planning document prepared by a customary marine title group under section 85 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 or the environmental covenant prepared by ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou under section 19 of the Ngā Rohe Moana o Ngā Hapū o Ngāti Porou Act 2019	N/A
5(5)(c)	Not Applicable – the activity is not occurring in an area that is a taiāpure-local fishery, a mātaītai reserve, or an area that is subject to bylaws made under Part 9 of the Fisheries Act 1996	N/A
5(6)	Not Applicable – The Applicant has supplied names and addresses of the owner and each occupier of the site and of land adjacent to the site	N/A
5(7)	Not Applicable – Only being lodged by 1 party (NZTA)	N/A
6(1)(a)	an assessment of the actual or potential effects on the environment:	Volume B, Part D and Appendices D1 to D12
6(1)(b)	Not Applicable - no use of hazardous installations	N/A
6(1)(c)	if the activity includes the discharge of any contaminant, a description of—	Volume B, Sections D10 and D11.1

Clause, Schedule 5	Information required for an approval described in section 42(4)(a) (resource consent), Clauses 5-7 of Schedule 5	Application Reference
	the nature of the discharge and the sensitivity of the receiving environment to adverse effects; and any possible alternative methods of discharge, including discharge into any other receiving environment:	
6(1)(d)	a description of the mitigation measures (including safeguards and contingency plans where relevant) to be undertaken to help prevent or reduce the actual or potential effect of the activity:	Volume B, Part D
6(1)(e)	identification of persons who may be affected by the activity and any response to the views of any persons consulted, including the views of iwi or hapū that have been consulted in relation to the proposal:	Volume A, Part D and Appendix E
6(1)(f)	if iwi or hapū elect not to respond when consulted on the proposal, any reasons that they have specified for that decision:	Volume A, Part D; and Appendix E
6(1)(g)	if the scale and significance of the activity's effects are such that monitoring is required, a description of how the effects will be monitored and by whom, if the activity is approved:	Volume B, Part D
6(1)(h)	an assessment of any effects of the activity on the exercise of a protected customary right.	N/A
6(2)	A consent application need not include any additional information specified in a relevant policy statement or plan that would be required in an assessment of environmental effects under clause 6(2) or 7(2) of Schedule 4 of the Resource Management Act 1991.	Noted. N/A
7(a)	any effect on the people in the neighbourhood and, if relevant, the wider community, including any social, economic, or cultural effects:	Volume B, Part D
7(b)	any physical effect on the locality, including landscape and visual effects:	Volume B, Section D5
7(c)	any effect on ecosystems, including effects on plants or animals and physical disturbance of habitats in the vicinity:	Volume B, Section D7
7(d)	any effect on natural and physical resources that have aesthetic, recreational, scientific, historical, spiritual, or cultural value, or other special value, for present or future generations:	Volume B, Sections D5 and D6
7(e)	any discharge of contaminants into the environment and options for the treatment and disposal of contaminants:	Volume B, Sections 10 and D11.1
7(f)	any unreasonable emission of noise:	Volume B, Section D4
7(g)	any risk to the neighbourhood, the wider community, or the environment through natural hazards or hazardous installations.	Volume B, Section D11.2

A2.2.2. Application Checklist C – Designation

In accordance with section 43(3)(d), Table 2 below sets out the information requirements in clause 12, Schedule 5 of the FTAA and the section of this volume in which they are addressed. These requirements have been provided in sufficient detail⁷ for the purpose for which it is required within Volumes A and B of this Application.

Table 2: Checklist of Information requirements under Clauses 5-7, Schedule 5 of the FTAA

Clause, Schedule 5	Information required for an approval described in section 42(4)(d) (Designation), Clause 12 of Schedule 5	Application Reference
12(1)(a)	a description and map of the site to which the notice of requirement applies, including whether the site is within or adjacent to a statutory area (as defined in a relevant Treaty settlement Act)	Volume A, Part B and Appendix D

⁷ Section 44 FTAA.

Clause, Schedule 5	Information required for an approval described in section 42(4)(d) (Designation), Clause 12 of Schedule 5	Application Reference
12(1)(b)	information on the effects of the proposed project or work on the environment, together with a description of how any adverse effects will be mitigated	Volume B, Section C5.1 and Part D
12(1)(c)	confirmation that the notice of requirement complies with section 46(2)(a), (b), and (d),	Volume A, Sections A2, A5.4 and A7
12(1)(d)(i)	an assessment of the project or work against sections 5, 6, and 7 of the Resource Management Act 1991	Volume B, Section C7
12(1)(d)(ii) and 12(2)	an assessment of the project or work against any relevant provisions in any of the documents listed in subclause (2) being: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) a national policy statement: b) a New Zealand coastal policy statement: c) a regional policy statement or proposed regional policy statement: d) a plan or proposed plan: e) a planning document recognised by a relevant iwi authority and lodged with a local authority. 	Volume B, Sections C1; C2; and C3
12(1)(e)	information about any Treaty settlements that apply in the area to which the substantive application relates, including – identification of the relevant provisions in those Treaty settlements; and a summary of any redress provided by those settlements that affects natural and physical resources relevant to the area to which the substantive application relates	Volume A, Section D7
12(1)(f), 12(3) and 12(4)	the full name and address of— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) each owner of the land to which the notice of requirement relates and of the land adjacent to that land; and (ii) each occupier of the land to which the notice of requirement relates and of land adjacent to that land whom the requiring authority is able to identify after reasonable inquiry; and 	Volume A, Section D5 Volume B, Appendix F
12(1)(g)	an assessment of whether the project or work and the designation sought are reasonably necessary for achieving the objectives of the requiring authority	Volume B, Section C5.3
12(1)(h)	any consideration of alternative sites, routes, or methods of undertaking the project or work	Volume B, Section C5.2
12(1)(i)	a list of the resource consents needed for the project or work and whether they have been applied for	Volume B, Section B2; Appendix B
12(1)(j)	a description of any consultation undertaken with parties likely to be affected by the project or work and the designation	Volume A, Part D; Appendix E
12(1)(k)	any conditions that the requiring authority proposes for the designation.	Volume B, Section E2 and Appendix E

PART B – Approvals Sought

B1. Overview

This section outlines the approvals sought for the Project under the FTAA⁸ that would otherwise be applied for under the RMA. The approvals include NoRs, and resource consents under both National Environmental Standards (NESs) and Regional Plan for Northland 2026 (RPN). This section also provides an overview of the permitted activities, including the corresponding rule/regulation, that form part of the Project.

B2. Notice of Requirements

Section 42(4)(d) of the FTAA sets out that a substantive application may seek NoRs for new designations that would otherwise be lodged with Kaipara District Council (KDC) and Whangārei District Council (WDC) under the RMA.⁹

NZTA is seeking NoRs for the Project, for two new designations (KDC and WDC) which are required to secure the state highway route and facilitate future construction, operation and maintenance of the Project and ancillary activities. Planning and construction of the Project is expected to take approximately six years, so long term security of the route is critical to ensure the Project can be delivered and to ensure present and future landowners have full transparency of the route.

The nature of the NoRs is:

- To establish new designations for the Project, the purpose of which will be:
“To construct, operate and maintain a state highway and associated infrastructure”
- To encompass the preferred route of the Project within the boundaries of the new designation that will replace the existing State Highway 1 (SH1) in this location.
- To establish conditions for the designations to manage effects on the environment in a reasonable and proportionate manner. Appendix E of this Volume includes proposed conditions for the designations.
- To establish a lapse date for the designations of 20 years to allow for the establishment of the Project to give effect to the designations.

B3. Resource Consents

Section 42(4)(d) of the FTAA sets out that a substantive application may seek resource consents that would otherwise be applied for under the RMA. Various resource consents, both under NESs and RPN, are required for the construction, operation and maintenance of the Project.

The sections below describe the resource consents required in more detail, including the required information and assessment in accordance with clauses 5 to 9, and 17 of Schedule 5, and section 43(3)(a) of the FTAA.

In summary, NZTA is seeking the following resource consents:

⁸ Schedule 5 FTAA.

⁹ Section 168 RMA.

- Resource consent under the Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011 (NES-CS);
- Resource consents under the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 (NES-F); and
- A suite of regional resource consents under the RPN inclusive of activities under section 9 (earthworks), section 13 (use of beds of rivers), section 14 (water) and section 15 (discharges to air, land and/or water).

B3.1. National Environmental Standard Consents

B3.1.1. Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2011) Regulations 2011 (NES-CS)

NZTA is seeking a resource consent under the NES-CS as the Project is classified as a Discretionary Activity under Regulation 11. This classification is based on the results of a Preliminary Site Investigation (PSI), as most land within the Proposed Designation boundary has not yet had Detailed Site Investigations (DSIs) undertaken.

B3.1.2. Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) 2020 (NES-F)

All Project works constitute “construction of specified infrastructure” as defined in the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 (NPS-FM) and therefore Part 3, Subpart 1 of the NES-F applies.¹⁰

NZTA is seeking the following resource consents for the project under the NES-F:

- Resource consents under the NES-F Regulation 45 (Discretionary Activity) for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure where it involves vegetation clearance, earthworks or land disturbance, damming, diversion or discharge of water within, or within specified setbacks, of natural inland wetlands;¹⁰
- Resource consents under the NES-F Regulation 57 (Discretionary Activity) for the reclamation of the bed of any river;¹¹ and
- Resource consents under the NES-F Regulation 71 (Discretionary Activity) for the placement and use of new culverts in, on, over or under the beds of rivers.¹² They are discretionary activities because they will not comply with all of the permitted activity conditions in Regulation 70 (asset out in **Appendix B** of this Volume).

Resource consents required under the NES-F for the Project are set out in Table 3 below.

Table 3: Resource consents required under the NES-F (Regulations 45, 57 and 71)

NES Regulation	Purpose	Expiry Date	Lapse
Subpart 1 - Construction of specified infrastructure - Regulation 45(1)	Vegetation clearance within, or within a 10 m setback from, a natural inland wetland is a discretionary activity if it is for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure	20 years	20 years (from date of commencement of consent)
Subpart 1 - Construction of specified infrastructure - Regulation 45(2)	Earthworks or land disturbance within, or within a 10m setback from, a natural wetland for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure		
Subpart 1 -Construction of specified infrastructure - Regulation 45(3)	Earthworks or land disturbance outside a 10 m, but within a 100 m, setback from a natural inland wetland for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure		

¹⁰ Part 3, Subpart 1, clause 45, Construction of specified infrastructure - Discretionary activities; NES-F.

¹¹ Part 3, Subpart 2, clause 57, Reclamation of rivers– Discretionary activities; NES-F.

¹² Part 3, Subpart 1, clause 71, Culverts – Discretionary activities; NES-F.

Subpart 1 - Construction of specified infrastructure - Regulation 45(4)	Taking, use, damming, diversion, or discharge of water within, or within a 100m setback from, a natural wetland for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure.		
Subpart 2 – Reclamation of Rivers - Regulation (57)	Reclamation of the bed of any river		
Subpart 3 – Culverts - Regulation (71)	The placement, use, alteration, extension, or reconstruction of a culvert in, on, over, or under the bed of a river	35 Years	20 years (from date of commencement of consent)

Assessments were also undertaken under the following NESs:

- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (NES-AQ); and
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Sources of Human Drinking Water) Regulations 2007 (NES-DW).

Activities for the Project comply with the relevant permitted conditions under these regulations, as detailed in **Appendix B** of this Volume. No resource consents are required under the NES-AQ and NES-DW.

B3.2. Regional Resource Consents

Table 4 below sets out the resource consents required (and sought as part of this Substantive Application) for the construction, operation and maintenance of the Project under the RPN.

A detailed assessment of the rules can be found in **Appendix B** of this Volume.

Table 4: Resource Consents required under the RPN (s42(4)(a) FTAA)

Resource Consents	Rule Trigger	Purpose	Expiry Date Sought	Lapse Date Sought
Land use consents (s9 RMA)				
Rule applying under Earthworks	Rule C.8.3.4	General Earthworks	35 years	20 years
Vegetation clearance	Rule C.8.4.3	Vegetation clearance in riparian areas	35 years	20 years
Resource consents for the use of beds of rivers (s13 RMA)				
Activities in the beds of lakes and rivers	Rule C.2.1.11	Construction or removal of structures in, on, under, or over the bed of a river or lake	35 years	20 years
Regionally Significant Infrastructure structures outside the coastal environment and in a significant area	Rule C.2.1.13	Construction and installation of a Regionally Significant structure in, on, under, or over the bed of a river or lake that is part of a significant wetland	35 years	20 years
Activities in natural and constructed wetlands	Rule C.2.2.4	Construction and installation of a structure in, on, under, or over a wetland	35 years	20 years
Activities in significant wetlands	Rule C.2.2.6	Activities in significant wetlands	35 years	20 years
Water permits required (s14 RMA)				
Diversion	Rule C.3.1.7	River channel diversion	35 years	20 years
Damming and Diversion	Rule C.3.1.8	Damming or diverting water	35 years	20 years
Obstructions that divert water onto other property.	Rule C.3.1.9	Placement of structures in a flood hazard area that will divert water onto other property	35 years	20 years

Resource Consents	Rule Trigger	Purpose	Expiry Date Sought	Lapse Date Sought
Damming or diverting water into a significant wetland	Rule C.3.1.10	Damming and or diverting water in a significant wetland	35 years	20 years
Other water takes	Rule C.5.1.12	Dewatering during construction	35 years	20 years
Discharge permits required (s15 RMA)				
Stormwater discharges onto or into contaminated land	Rule C.6.4.6	Stormwater discharges onto or into contaminated land or from high-risk industrial or trade premises	35 years	20 years
Discharge	Rule C.6.8.5	Discharging Temporary Contaminates to Land	20 years	20 years

B4. Permitted Activities

Due to the scale and nature of the Project, the proposed works exceed the thresholds for many of the permitted activities in the RPN and NESs. For instance, under the RPN, the permitted activity thresholds for vegetation clearance in riparian areas cannot exceed 200 m² within a 12-month period located less than 10 meters from a natural wetland or a flowing riverbed (Rule C.8.4.2).

Relevant permitted activities are set out in Table 5 below and in the rule assessment in **Appendix B** of this Volume. All permitted activities will comply with the requirements, conditions, and permissions for the permitted activity (as set out in **Appendix B** of this Volume).¹³

Table 5: Permitted Activity Rules Assessment

Regulation	Content	Assessment
NES-AQ Regulation 13	Ambient Air Quality Standards	Complies – Permitted Activity
NES-DW Regulation 6	Types of activity to which regulation 7 and 8 apply	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.2.1.1.	Introduction of plants in a riverbed	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.2.1.3	Maintenance of the free flow of water in rivers	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.2.1.4	Existing Structures	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.2.1.7	Demolition or removal of existing structure	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.2.2.1	Natural wetland maintenance and enhancement	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.2.2.2	Structures in wetlands	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.2.2.3	Constructed wetland alteration	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.3.1.1	Off-stream damming and diversion	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.3.1.2	Small Dam	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.3.1.3	Existing in stream Dam	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.3.1.4	Dam maintenance	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.6.8.1.	Investigating potentially contaminated land	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.6.9.1	Discharge of dust suppressants	Complies – Permitted Activity
RPN C.7.2.8	Discharge to air	Complies – Permitted Activity

¹³ Schedule 5, clause 5(5)(a) FTAA.

PART C – Statutory Context and Assessment

C1. Overview

This section provides an assessment of the Project against any relevant provisions of local, regional and national planning documents and spatial strategies, iwi management plans and any other relevant matters.¹⁴ This section also includes an assessment of the statutory requirements to be addressed to support NoR and resource consent applications under the FTAA, including an assessment of the Project against Part 2 of the RMA.¹⁵

C2. Relevant Policy and Planning Documents

The Project has been developed in accordance with relevant local, regional and national planning documents and spatial strategies as summarised in Table 6 below

Table 6: Relevant local, regional and national planning documents

Category	Relevant Planning Document
National	<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ National Policy Statement for Infrastructure 2025 (NPS-I)▪ National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (NPS-FM)▪ National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022 (NPS-HPL)▪ National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (NPS-IB)▪ National Policy Statement for Electricity Networks 2008 (NPS-EN)▪ Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 (NES-F)▪ Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011 (NES-CS)
Regional	<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ Regional Policy Statement for Northland 2016 (RPSN)▪ Regional Plan for Northland 2026 (RPN)
Local	<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ Kaipara District Spatial Plan – Ngā Wawata 2050 (2020) (KDSP)▪ Operative Kaipara District Plan 2013 (OKDP)▪ Proposed Kaipara District Plan 2025 (PKDP)▪ Whangārei District Plan Operative in Part 2022 (WDP)

An assessment of the Project against the relevant provisions of the above documents is outlined in the sections below¹⁶. A more detailed assessment of the Project in relation to the relevant objectives and policies of each document is attached in **Appendix C** of this Volume.

C2.1. National Policy Statements

C2.1.1. National Policy Statement for Infrastructure 2025

The NPS-I was notified in the New Zealand Gazette on 18 December 2025 and came into force on 15 January 2026. It is intended to be directly enabling of infrastructure developments, such as the Project. As set out in its explanatory note, the NPS-I recognises infrastructure as a matter of national significance

¹⁴ Schedule 5, clauses 5(1)(h) and 12(1)(d)(ii) FTAA.

¹⁵ Schedule 5, clauses 5(1)(g) and 12(1)(d)(i) FTAA.

¹⁶ Section 43(3)(a) and 43(3)(d) and schedule 5, clause 5(1)(h) FTAA.

under the RMA, and provides national direction to support the development, maintenance and upgrade of infrastructure across New Zealand.

The NPS-I applies broadly to “all infrastructure activities and infrastructure supporting activities” and therefore applies directly to all elements of the Project.

The NPS-I sets an overarching objective and a number of supporting policies to direct and enable the efficient development, management and upgrading of infrastructure throughout New Zealand. In this regard, there is a high degree of conceptual alignment between the core provisions of the NPS-I and the purpose of the FTAA to facilitate the delivery of infrastructure that has significant national and regional benefits.

Objective

The objective of the NPS-I is to:

- a) *ensure the national, regional and local benefits of infrastructure are provided for;*
- b) *enable infrastructure to support the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities and their health and safety;*
- c) *enable infrastructure to support the development and change of urban and rural environments to meet the diverse and changing needs of present and future generations;*
- d) *ensure infrastructure is well-functioning, resilient and compatible, as far as practicable, with other activities; and*
- e) *ensure infrastructure is delivered in a timely and efficient manner while managing adverse effects from or on infrastructure.*

Under the NPS-I, decision makers are required to recognise and provide for the functional or operational need of infrastructure to be located in certain environments to support development and operation.

The Project is consistent with the objective of the NPS-I as it supports the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of communities, as well as their health and safety. These outcomes reflect the intent of the NPS-I objective to enable infrastructure that provides broad public benefits. As detailed in Section C5 (Benefits of the Project) of Volume A, the Project will provide a more resilient, reliable, efficient and safe transport connection between Auckland and Whangārei leading to an increase in economic activity and supporting higher levels of output (Gross Domestic Product (GDP)) and employment. The Project is expected to result in a predicted reduction of approximately 79% in deaths and serious injuries.

In terms of supporting the social wellbeing of communities, the Project will improve access to economic and social opportunities, which will lead to a higher standard of living and quality of life.

Policies

Policy 1(1) requires decision-makers to "ensure that the national, regional or local benefits of infrastructure, relative to any localised adverse effects on the environment, are recognised and provided for". This policy requires the localised actual and potential adverse effects of the Project to be contextualised against the Project's benefits.

The Project will deliver national, regional and local benefits for present and future generations inclusive of economic benefits, travel efficiency and reliability benefits, safety and resilience benefits and travel resilience and reliability benefits. These benefits are significant and must be recognised and provided for. While the Project will have some adverse environmental effects, these effects are localised and will be managed through appropriate mitigations, including measures to protect significant vegetation, waterbodies and the wider natural environment. The Project has also been designed to be resilient to natural hazards and climate change, ensuring that the infrastructure remains fit for purpose in the long term. This demonstrates consistency with Policy 1.

Policy 2 requires decision makers to "recognise that infrastructure may have an operational need or functional need to operate in, be located in, or traverse particular locations and environments." Elements of that operational or functional need, in respect of infrastructure, are set out in Policy 2(2).

The Project has a clear functional and operational need to traverse particular environments, including the Brynderwyn Hills, as confirmed through the assessment of alternatives.¹⁷ The Indicative Alignment is shorter and traverses comparatively more geotechnically competent ground, reducing earthworks requirements and providing greater confidence in slope stability than is achievable in other locations. Of note and as discussed elsewhere in this Volume, consideration of functional need is also relevant to the analysis of the Project against the NPS-FM in respect of impacts on wetlands and rivers and NPS-IB in respect of impacts on significant natural areas. Specific direction as to the consideration of functional need for infrastructure projects in Policy 2 of the NPS-I must be reflected in the analysis carried out under the NPS-FM and NPS-IB.

The Project is also aligned with key strategic planning documents such as the NRLTP, the NRLTP and the NRTAMP which identify the SH1 corridor between Auckland and Whangārei as a critical link for freight, communities and tourism. The Project is also part of a RoNS as identified in the GPS. The Project establishes a cross-boundary infrastructure network spanning the Kaipara and Whangārei Districts. The Project therefore demonstrates consistency with Policies 3 and 5 relating to strategic alignment and infrastructure location.

Of direct relevance to the Project, Policy 4(1)(a) requires decision-makers to "*enable the efficient and timely delivery of infrastructure activities*". Policy 4(1)(c) and Policy 4(1)(f)(ii) are also directly relevant to the Project. As outlined elsewhere in this Application, NZTA's consenting approach for the Project is to provide flexibility for innovation in the construction phase which demonstrates consistency with Policy 4(1)(c). One of the key drivers behind the Project and key benefits it will deliver is to improve the resilience of the SH1 network, demonstrating consistency with Policy 4(1)(f)(ii). Policy 4(2)(a) goes on to require decision-makers to "*recognise it is the role of the infrastructure provider to identify the preferred location for the infrastructure activity*". As explained elsewhere in this Application, NZTA has carefully assessed where the Project should be located. It is not for the decision-maker to substitute its own judgment in respect of that investment decision.

As outlined above NZTA have been working with Te Uri Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project. NZTA intend to continue working with these hapū (aligning with Policy 6, *recognising and providing for Māori interests.*)

The assessment of alternatives for the Project has considered environmental effects, Project requirements (including inherent technical and operational requirements and constraints), existing infrastructure impacts, and relevant standards. Mitigation measures and consent conditions have been developed for the Project that are proportionate to the scale of effects. Therefore, the Project aligns with Policy 7.

Policy 9(1) directs that decision-makers must enable new infrastructure in all environments. Policy 9(2) provides that where infrastructure activities are proposed to locate in or are likely to have adverse effects on environments and values provided for in section 6 of the RMA, the provisions of Policy 9 must be read alongside other relevant national direction. Policy 9(3) provides that in all other areas, adverse effects of infrastructure must be, where practicable, avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Development of the Project has considered likely environmental effects of the Project on environments and values provided for in section 6 of the RMA, alongside national direction and regional and district planning frameworks and in accordance with Policy 9. These effects are assessed comprehensively in Sections D1 to D15 and C7.2 of this Volume. To reiterate and summarise the assessments in these sections; the Project avoids the coastal environment, mitigates effects on rivers and wetlands, manages landscape impacts in the Brynderwyn Ranges, and mitigates impacts on significant biodiversity as far as practicable. These assessments and the mitigation proposed demonstrate alignment with Policies 9 and 11.

In summary, for the above reasons, the Project is consistent with the relevant Objective and Policies of the NPS-I.

¹⁷ Section C5.2 of this Volume.

C2.1.2. National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020

The NPS-FM seeks to ensure that natural and physical resources are managed in a way that prioritises, firstly, the health and well-being of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems, secondly the health and needs of people and thirdly the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being now and in the future.

The NPS-FM states that the fundamental concept is Te Mana o te Wai, which refers to the fundamental importance of water and recognises that protecting the health of freshwater protects the health and wellbeing of the wider environment, including people. It also protects the mauri of the wai and is about restoring and preserving the balance between water, the wider environment and the community.

Clause 3.22(1)(b) of the NPS-FM requires regional councils to provide for exceptions to the loss of wetlands in their regional plans where:

“The regional council is satisfied that:

- (i) *the activity is necessary for the purpose of the construction or upgrade of specified infrastructure; and*
- (ii) *the specified infrastructure will provide significant national or regional benefits; and*
- (iii) *there is a functional need for the specified infrastructure in that location; and*
- (iv) *the effects of the activity are managed through applying the effects management hierarchy;”*

The NPS-FM defines ‘specified infrastructure’ as:

“(a) infrastructure that delivers a service operated by a lifeline utility (as defined in the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002)

(b) regionally significant infrastructure identified as such in a regional policy statement or regional plan...”

The purpose of the Project is the construction of ‘specified infrastructure’ that will provide significant national and regional benefits, there is a functional need for the Project in the location, and the effects of the activities required for the Project have been managed commensurate with the values of the freshwater resource affected through applying the effects management hierarchy where required. Therefore, Clause 3.22(1) is applicable to this Project and must be read alongside the provisions of the NPS-I (discussed above).

The Project will involve works within and near freshwater environments, including natural inland wetlands, streams, and rivers. Although construction activities required to deliver the Project will have potential impacts, a holistic approach of avoidance, mitigation, and (where required) offset measures will ensure that the health and wellbeing of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems are prioritised, consistent with the NPS-FM Objective and Te Mana o te Wai when read alongside the provisions of the NPS-I.

As noted above, NZTA has been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project, and NZTA intend to continue working with hapū throughout consenting and delivery of the Project including in relation to freshwater management and Māori freshwater values supporting consistency with Policies 1 and 2.

Operational stormwater design considers and applies the best practice as expressed in the relevant design guidelines,¹⁸ and incorporates climate change considerations, demonstrating alignment with Policies 3 and 4.

¹⁸ NZTA Stormwater Treatment Standard for State Highway Infrastructure and Technical Publication 108 of Auckland Regional Council (1999)

While the Project avoids natural inland wetlands as far as practicable, some impacts are unavoidable. In these cases, ecological offsetting is recommended for residual adverse effects to be partially consistent with Policy 6.

Works in streams and rivers will be minimised. Where unavoidable, culverts and stream realignments will recreate current extent and ecological value, ensuring consistency with Policies 7, 8, and 9.

Overall, the Project manages freshwater in a way that gives effect to the Objective of the NPS-FM while delivering a safer and more efficient state highway that supports economic and community wellbeing in Northland in accordance with Policy 15.

For the above reasons, overall, the Project is assessed to be consistent with the Objective and relevant Policies of the NPS-FM, when read alongside the Objective and relevant policies of the NPS-I.

C2.1.3. National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022

The NPS-HPL seeks to ensure highly productive land (HPL) is protected for use in land-based primary production, both now and for future generations. HPL includes land that is zoned general rural or rural production and is predominantly mapped as Land Use Capability (LUC) class 1, 2, or 3 and forms a large geographically cohesive area. The Proposed Designation traverses rural land that is identified as LUC class 2. The NPS-HPL is therefore applicable to these areas.

While the Project avoids adverse effects to HPL as far as practicable, several parcels of HPL have been identified within the Proposed Designation that are unable to be avoided and will require works within them that may sever some land parcels.

The NPS-HPL requires territorial authorities to avoid the inappropriate use or development of HPL that is not land-based primary production. However, clause 3.9(2) states that the use or development of HPL is inappropriate except where at least one of the subclauses apply. The subclauses include:

- (h) it is for an activity by a requiring authority in relation to a designation or notice of requirement under the Act...*
- (j) it is associated with one of the following, and there is a functional or operational need for the use or development to be on the highly productive land:*
 - (i) the development, operation, or decommissioning of specified infrastructure, including (but not limited to) its construction, maintenance, upgrade, expansion, replacement, or removal...*

In addition to the above exceptions, the measures under subclause (3) must be applied. These include that development on HPL must minimise or mitigate any actual loss or potential cumulative loss of the availability and productive capacity of HPL; and avoid or mitigate any actual or potential reverse sensitivity effects on land-based primary production activities from the development.

The Project meets the exceptions under clause 3.9(2) because it is an activity by a requiring authority in relation to a NoR, it relates to the development, operation, and maintenance of specified infrastructure and has a clear functional and operational need to be located on this land.

The Project has sought to minimise any actual loss of HPL where practicable. The Project recognises that highly productive land is a resource with finite characteristics and long-term values for land-based primary production, having specifically considered this as part of the alternatives assessment process and application preparation demonstrating alignment with Policy 1.

Under Policy 8, the Project similarly meets the required criteria. It is being progressed by a requiring authority (being NZTA) through a NoR process, and its purpose is the development of specified infrastructure that must be located on HPL to operate effectively, as confirmed during the assessment of alternatives process, which is discussed in Section C5.2 below.

Overall, the Project is therefore assessed to be consistent with the relevant Policies of the NPS-HPL.

C2.1.4. National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023

The NPS-IB seeks to maintain indigenous biodiversity across New Zealand so that there is at least no overall loss in indigenous biodiversity. Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna are identified as Significant Natural Areas (SNAs) using a consistent approach.

The Project will affect some SNAs, including small fragments near the northern extent of the Proposed Designation, areas at the northern and southern approaches to the Brynderwyn Hills, a small area north-east of State Highway 12 (SH12), and an area at the southern extent of the Proposed Designation.

Clause 3.10 of the NPS-IB identifies ways of managing adverse effects on SNAs of new subdivision, use and development. However, Clause 3.11(1) sets out the following exemption:

“Clause 3.10(2) does not apply, and any adverse effects on an SNA of a new subdivision, use or development must be managed in accordance with clause 3.10(3) and (4), if:

- a) *the new subdivision, use or development is required for the purposes of any of the following:*
 - (i) *construction or upgrade (if the upgrade does not meet the requirements of clause 3.15(2)) of specified infrastructure that provides significant national or regional public benefit: ...*
 - b) *there is a functional need or operational need for the new subdivision, use or development to be in that particular location; and*
 - c) *there are no practicable alternative locations for the new subdivision, use or development.”*

The Project is required for the purposes of constructing specified infrastructure that provides significant national or regional public benefit. There is a functional and operational need for the use or development of the Project in locations that include those within SNAs, and there are no practical alternative locations as demonstrated in the assessment of alternatives in Section C5.2.

The Project is consistent with the NPS-IB as it provides remediation and offset planting to mitigate vegetation loss, including replacement planting for kauri trees and any indigenous plant species with ‘Very High’ and ‘High’ value; however, not all vegetation loss will be mitigated. Natural inland wetlands with quality ecological habitat will be mitigated and, where necessary, offset. Stream realignment is expected to achieve comparable ecological outcomes. Indigenous fauna habitat will be enhanced at mitigation sites, and protected species will be managed under Wildlife Act Authority, with mitigation and habitat protection anticipated. The Project is therefore partially consistent with Objective 1(a) and 1(b)(ii).

In relation to the remaining relevant section of the objective the mana of hapū is recognised in the work between NZTA and hapū since the early stages of the Project. NZTA will become the future landowner of the areas of indigenous biodiversity as part of this Project. NZTA will act as stewards in the protection, maintenance and restoration of indigenous biodiversity. The provision of the Project to social, economic and cultural wellbeing as discussed in the assessment of the objective of the NPS-I in Section C2.1.1 above.

Hapū have been involved in field work (investigations) alongside NZTA and have also reviewed the work that specialists have undertaken. This involvement is intended to support the principle of kaitiakitanga for indigenous biodiversity in their rohe, demonstrating consistency with Policies 1 and 2.

The Project builds ecological resilience, including resilience to climate change, by incorporating treatment wetlands, wetland swales and treatment swales, while avoiding natural wetlands for stormwater treatment. These measures will help to maintain and enhance the extent and integrity of indigenous biodiversity in accordance with Policy 4.

Through a catchment-based approach, the assessment recognises that the Project traverses two district council boundaries and multiple ecological districts. Mitigation measures are recommended that will ensure management of effects on indigenous biodiversity is undertaken in an integrated and consistent manner in accordance with Policy 5.

Where the Proposed Designation intersects native forest habitat that qualify as SNAs under the NPS-IB and indigenous vegetation outside of SNAs, mitigation will be implemented to ensure adverse effects are managed; including minimising habitat loss wherever practicable and mitigation planting in general accordance with Policies 7 and 8.

As a Road of National Significance, the Project will improve transport safety and community wellbeing. The Project's contribution to New Zealand's social, economic, cultural and environmental wellbeing has been detailed in the assessment of the Project against the NPS-I Objective in Section C2.1.1 above. Collectively, these outcomes demonstrate that the Project is consistent with Policy 10.

Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy 13 as it promotes restoration of indigenous biodiversity by minimising loss and seeking to avoid high value species in specific locations (e.g. kahikatea near Waipū and kauri). Recommended wetland restoration, habitat enhancement at mitigation sites, and landscape and riparian planting will further assist in restoring biodiversity affected by the Project. Future Landscape Concept Plans (LCPs) may further enhance overall vegetation cover within the rural environment partially in accordance with Policy 14.

Desktop and field investigations (**Appendix D8** of Volume B) identified habitat for highly mobile fauna and include recommendations for habitat management and replacement, particularly for cryptic marsh birds. The proposed mitigation sites, alongside stream, wetland, riparian, and landscape enhancement, will assist in maintaining habitat that supports avifauna across their natural range. These studies and associated management practices will also improve information and awareness of highly mobile fauna in Northland in alignment with Policy 15.

Indigenous biodiversity investigations undertaken for the Project will improve understanding of biodiversity values in the Brynderwyn Hills area. Monitoring of mitigation planting will be undertaken demonstrating consistency with Policy 17.

Overall, for the above reasons the Project is considered to be consistent or partially consistent with the relevant NPS-IB provisions relating to the construction of specified infrastructure.

C2.1.5. National Policy Statement for Electricity Networks 2008

The NPS-EN sets out the objective and policies to enable the management of the effects of the electricity transmission and distribution networks. The objectives and policies seek to ensure New Zealand has a reliable, safe and affordable electricity system by guiding how electricity networks are planned and managed; balancing national benefits with local impacts; supporting renewable energy and electrification; and assisting New Zealand to meet its climate and energy goals.

The Proposed Designation generally follows the north-south line of the National Grid transmission lines (Transpower New Zealand's (Transpower's) 220 kV Henderson to Marsden high voltage transmission line). The Indicative Alignment intersects the transmission lines in several locations; however, the Project will not require relocation of electricity towers.

Any works in proximity to the electricity networks will be managed to reduce the potential adverse effects from working beneath and around the electricity networks in accordance with Objective 1 and Policy 1. Ongoing engagement with Transpower and Northpower will ensure that the operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the electricity networks is not compromised by the Project. This includes confirmation of working room clearance around transmission and distribution lines during construction and maintaining access to existing transmission towers for maintenance during the operational phase of the Project. Any physical works required to transmission or local electricity networks will be managed directly with the relevant network utility provider.

In addition, the Project will manage potential environmental effects in a way that enables the effective operation, maintenance and upgrading of the electricity networks to continue in accordance with Policy 2.

The Project is not a sensitive activity so will avoid reverse sensitivity effects on the electricity networks in accordance with Policy 11.

In summary for the above reasons, the Project is considered to be consistent with the Objective and relevant Policies of the NPS-EN.

C2.2. National Environmental Standards

C2.2.1. National Environmental Standards for Freshwater 2020 (NES-F)

The NES-F regulates activities that pose risks to the health of freshwater and freshwater ecosystems and gives effect to the NPS-FM.

The regulations relevant to the Project activities under the NES-F are as follows:

- Regulation 45 – Construction of specified infrastructure, discretionary activities
- Regulation 57 – Reclamation of rivers, discretionary activities
- Regulation 71 – Culverts, discretionary activities

The construction of 'specified infrastructure' is provided for as a Discretionary activity within the NES-F. In relation to natural inland wetlands under Regulation 45, the Project's construction requires vegetation clearance, earthworks, land disturbance, temporary damming and diversion, taking or use of water and discharge of water within, and within 100 m of natural inland wetlands, therefore requiring resource consent.

Regulation 45(6) states that a resource consent for a discretionary activity must not be granted unless the consent authority has first:

- (a) *satisfied itself that the specified infrastructure will provide significant national or regional benefits;*
and
- (b) *satisfied itself that there is a functional need for the specified infrastructure in that location; and*
- (c) *applied the effects management hierarchy.*

These are the same as subclauses (ii), (iii) and (iv) of clause 3.22 of the NPS-FM and have been addressed in Section C2.1.2 above. Based on that analysis, it is concluded that the Project has satisfied the three subclauses when read alongside the relevant provisions of the NPS-I and NPS-FM (discussed above).

Resource consent is required pursuant to Regulation 57 as the Project involves works which will result in stream reclamation.

Resource consent is also required pursuant to Regulation 71 as the Project involves the placement, use, alteration, extension or reconstruction of culverts in, on, over, or under the bed of rivers which do not comply with the conditions in Regulation 70(2).

C2.2.2. National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contamination in Soil to Protect Human Health 2011

The NES-CS includes a set of planning controls and soil contaminant values. It ensures that land affected by contaminants in soil is appropriately identified and assessed before it is developed, and if necessary, the land is remediated or the contaminants contained to make the land safe for human use. The regulations in the NES-CS apply to the sampling and disturbance of soil if the relevant Piece of Land is being used by, is understood to more than likely have been occupied by or has knowingly previously been occupied by an activity described in the Hazardous Activities and Industries List (HAIL).

The Proposed Designation traverses current and historic agriculture/pasture and exotic forestry areas. Within the Proposed Designation boundary, buildings associated with dairy farm operations or general farm and lifestyle block buildings that can be used as workshops and chemical storage are present, which could have resulted in soil contamination.

An Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects has been prepared and submitted with this application, as **Appendix D9** of this Volume, and is a PSI for the purpose of assessing compliance with the Regulations.

As there has been no DSI undertaken for the Project, resource consent will be required as a Discretionary activity under Regulation 11 of the NES-CS.

The PSI describes known and suspected soil contamination within the area of the Proposed Designation based on source, aerial photography review and historical context. Recommended management measures outlined within the PSI have been incorporated into the Proposed Conditions (**Appendix E** of this Volume). All measures are consistent with the approach for identification, management and remedial activities in the NES-CS, and best-practice. Therefore, actual or potential adverse effects of the Project originating due to contaminated soil disturbance are appropriate, and overall, considered to present a low risk.

C2.3. Northland Regional Plans

C2.3.1. Regional Policy Statement for Northland 2016

The RPSN seeks to promote the sustainable management of Northland's natural and physical resources. Objective 3.7 of the RPSN seeks to recognise and promote the benefits of regionally significant infrastructure, which through its use of natural and physical resources can significantly enhance Northland's economic, cultural, environmental and social wellbeing.

State highways are identified in Appendix 3 of the RPSN as regionally significant infrastructure. Policy 5.3.2 notes that:

“Particular regard shall be had to the significant social, economic, and cultural benefits of regionally significant infrastructure when considering and determining resource consent applications or notices of requirement for regionally significant infrastructure.”

The Project is consistent with the qualifications for regionally significant infrastructure and will create significant social, economic and cultural benefits.

The Project is broadly consistent with relevant RPSN Objectives and Policies, with partial consistency where outcomes seek management of effects. Overall, the Project seeks to manage effects through authorities, best practice design, mitigation, offsetting and monitoring. Effects on water quality, freshwater ecology, indigenous biodiversity, natural character, historic heritage and natural hazards have been comprehensively assessed and will be managed to ensure adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated. The Project is regionally significant infrastructure that will support economic wellbeing, connectivity and safety, integrates with regional planning, and appropriately manages risks from natural hazards and climate change.

C2.3.2. Regional Plan for Northland 2026

The RPN is a combined regional air, land, water and coastal plan, which sets controls for the sustainable management of natural and physical resources of the Northland Region.

State highways are defined as regionally significant infrastructure under the RPN.

The Project has been assessed to be consistent or partially consistent with the relevant objectives and policies of the RPN, which are detailed in Table 7 of **Appendix C** of this Volume. A summary of the Project against the relevant sections, rather than individual objectives and policies, of the RPN follows.

In general accordance with the tāngata whenua section of the RPN hapū; including Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau; have been involved in Project since October 2024, including the assessment of alternatives, site visits, site investigations (e.g. geotechnical and ecology) and in the evaluation of cultural values. Their involvement is intended to ensure potential effects on tāngata whenua, their taonga, and culturally significant water bodies have been considered, to the extent practicable.

In accordance with the general section of the RPN the Project delivers significant social and economic benefits and has accounted for climate change effects in its design. As regionally significant infrastructure, it meets functional and operational needs and generally aligns with policies relating to tāngata whenua, historic heritage, natural character, landscapes and biodiversity. Adverse effects such as noise, ecology,

flooding, landscape and visual impacts are avoided where possible or otherwise have been mitigated or offset, primarily through the proposed conditions framework. Pā sites are avoided. Mitigation measures, including minimisation of habitat loss where practicable and habitat restoration, will ensure biodiversity effects are appropriately managed. Overall, the Project is considered to generally align with the relevant general policies of the RPN.

Overall, the Project is consistent with the air section of the RPN as robust dust controls will be implemented during construction activities, following best-practice guidance, to ensure contaminant discharges do not harm people, animals, or ecosystems. Mitigation measures, such as dust suppression and a Dust Management Plan (DMP) will contribute to best-practice management of air quality effects.

The Project is generally consistent with the relevant land and water (section D.4 of the RPN) policies under the RPN as effects from damming, diversion, dewatering, earthworks, and contaminant discharges will be managed through erosion and sediment controls, water quality monitoring, contaminated soil management, and design measures such as fish passage compliant culverts where required and habitat reinstatement. Wetland and stream impacts will be avoided where practicable, and mitigation or offset will be applied where the level of effect experienced demonstrates necessity. Overall, the Project protects ecological values as far as practicable and meets policy requirements for regionally significant infrastructure.

The coastal section of the RPN (D.5) is not relevant as there are no coastal environments within the Project area.

The Project will maintain existing catchment hydrology through flood management structures like culverts, to manage the extent of flooding effects. Although some works occur within flood hazard areas and waterways, mitigation measures, such as improving drainage and creating diversion channels, will reduce or manage flood risks and ensure the Project does not increase the risk of adverse effects on people or property. The Project will improve the resilience of SH1 through an alternative route that is more resilient to natural hazards and the effects of climate change. Geotechnical risks, including land instability, will be actively managed as the design progresses with early identification, targeted investigation and integration of mitigation strategies into the design and construction planning in accordance with the hazards section (D.6) of the RPN.

C2.4. Kaipara Plans

C2.4.1. Kaipara District Spatial Plan – Ngā Wawata 2050 (2020)

The KDSP creates a framework for development in the Kaipara District for the next 30 years, bringing together opportunities, constraints and community aspirations. The KDSP will inform district plan reviews and future development opportunities in Kaipara. The KDSP aims to consolidate growth in key areas to safeguard productive land, to utilise existing infrastructure and to target any necessary infrastructure expansions.

The Northland Corridor project is recognised and supported in the KDSP as follows:

- The KDSP notes the 'huge influence on accessibility' that SH1 links between Kaipara and Auckland will have once proposed improvements are completed.
- The KDSP identifies the Northland to Auckland Corridor as one of the four key infrastructure programmes for Kaipara.

C2.4.2. Operative Kaipara District Plan 2013

The OKDP adopts an effects-based approach, primarily by setting standards that define acceptable levels of environmental impact. It prioritises managing and monitoring activities with the highest potential for adverse effects. Accordingly, an activity's status is largely determined by whether it complies with these standards or the extent to which it does not. District wide Objective 2.4.9 outlines the approach to infrastructure development as follows:

“To enable the development and operation of utilities, utility networks and the transport network (including the state highway network) throughout the District, particularly where this is undertaken in conjunction with land use development and change.”

The Northland Corridor project will be undertaken in accordance with the direction of the OKDP, seeking to secure and continue to provide a critical transport connection within acceptable levels of environmental impact.

The existing SH1 corridor is designated in the OKDP as D52 with the requiring authority being NZTA.

The Project has been assessed to be consistent or partially consistent with relevant objectives and policies of the OKDP as detailed in Table 8 of **Appendix C** of this Volume. A summary of the Project against relevant chapters of the OKDP, rather than individual objectives and policies, is provided below.

The Project is largely consistent with the district wide chapter of the OKDP (Chapter 2), supporting regional growth, transport efficiency, and environmental management as it will significantly enhance the state highway network, improve regional connectivity, market access, and long term resilience. The Project generally avoids sensitive environments, but for some unavoidable effects measures such as revegetation will enhance amenity and natural character over time. Historic heritage and ecological values will be protected where practicable, with mitigation, offsets or authorities applied where avoidance is not possible.

The Project is consistent with the land use and development strategy chapter (Chapter 3) of the OKDP as the Project will provide appropriate infrastructure in the form of a state highway and will support future residential and business development in Northland.

The Project is consistent with the Overlays chapter of the OKDP (Chapter 4) as it avoids habitats and ecological values where practicable, and applies mitigation, such as revegetation and habitat enhancement, where effects cannot be avoided on high value indigenous vegetation. Although the Project is partially located within the Kaipara Harbour Overlay, extensive alternatives assessments have ensured the Project’s design, scale, and location appropriately balance environmental effects with wider Project benefits to the Region and District.

In accordance with Chapter 5, tangata whenua strategy, Te Uri o Hau have worked collaboratively with NZTA in terms of corridor/route selection and on-site investigations including oversight and direct involvement in geotechnical and ecological investigations. NZTA’s desire is to continue working with hapū, to ensure that Māori cultural values, relationships with ancestral lands and waters, sites of significance, wāhi tapu, and taonga are appropriately recognised and protected throughout the Project.

The Project is consistent or partially consistent with the Ecological Areas chapter of the OKDP (Chapter 6) as where unavoidable effects occur, mitigation, and offsets will help maintain ecosystem life supporting capacity. Significant vegetation and habitats have been identified, and mitigation such as revegetation and management of waterbody margins will appropriately manage effects and maintain natural character. Where practical, the Project avoids SNAs. However, where avoidance is not possible, adequate mitigation will be provided, including fauna salvage, relocation, and enhancement planting to maintain indigenous habitat and reduce fragmentation.

The Project is consistent with the Natural Hazards Chapter of the OKDP (Chapter 7) as it has been designed using flood modelling and incorporates mitigation to avoid inducing or worsening flooding effects. It appropriately considers natural hazards, stormwater runoff, and increased impervious areas, with measures such as diversion channels, wetlands, and swales to manage peak flows and provide detention. An observation-based approach will be implemented to manage geotechnical risk as the detailed design progresses.

The Project is consistent with the relevant Objective in the Hazardous Facilities and Contaminated Sites Chapter of the OKDP (Chapter 8) as the Project will ensure that the use and development of any contaminated land is managed to minimise adverse effects on the environment and to prevent adverse effects on human health and safety.

The Project is consistent with the Transport Network chapter of the OKDP (Chapter 11) as the Project will deliver a safe and efficient transport network, and potential conflicts with the environment, adjacent land uses, traffic, and people have been thoroughly considered through the assessment of effects and the alternatives assessments. Potential adverse effects from the transport network have been considered in its design, including the use of low noise type asphalt for specific stretches of the Indicative Alignment to ensure compliance with relevant noise standards.

C2.4.3. Proposed Kaipara District Plan 2025

The PKDP sets out the direction for how rural, urban and commercial land in Kaipara District can be used, developed, subdivided and protected over the next 10 years. The PKDP applies objectives, policies and rules to manage the environmental effects of land use in Kaipara District.

District-wide Infrastructure Objective INF-01 sets out the approach to infrastructure development as:

“Effective, resilient, efficient and safe infrastructure across the Kaipara District that:

- 1. Provides essential and secure services, including in emergencies;*
- 2. Facilitates local, regional, national or international connectivity;*
- 3. Contributes to the economy and support a high standard of living;*
- 4. Integrates with subdivision, use and development ; and*
- 5. Enables people and communities to provide for their health, safety and wellbeing.”*

The Project is consistent with this key objective as it will deliver an effective, efficient, safer and more resilient SH1 transport corridor between Auckland and Northland. This connection will in turn facilitate local, regional and national connectivity, contribute to the economy within the Kaipara District and enable people and communities to provide for their health, safety and wellbeing.

The Project has been assessed to be consistent or partially consistent with relevant objectives and policies of the PKDP as detailed in Table 9 of **Appendix C** of this Volume. A summary of the Project against relevant chapters of the PKDP, rather than individual objectives and policies, is provided below.

The Project is consistent with Infrastructure Chapter of the PKDP, as it will deliver resilient, safe and efficient infrastructure that supports essential services, regional connectivity between Auckland and Northland, freight capacity, and community wellbeing, while providing significant economic, safety, and resilience benefits. The Project demonstrates a clear operational need, has undergone a robust alternatives assessment, and minimises adverse effects as far as practicable while addressing long-standing safety and reliability issues on the existing SH1 route. It recognises and protects the National Grid through appropriate design and ongoing consultation. The Project also adopts best-practice stormwater design methods.

The Project is aligned with Contaminated Land Chapter of the PKDP, as it traverses predominantly rural and rural residential land where the likelihood of HAIL sites is low, and includes measures to manage contaminated land to protect human health and the environment.

The Project is largely consistent with the Natural Hazards Chapter of the PKDP, as it has been designed to minimise risks from flooding, land instability and climate change effects through robust mitigation, resilient design, and best practice stormwater and geotechnical measures. It incorporates detailed flood modelling, observation based geotechnical design and remote terrain assessments to manage risk and improve long term safety and resilience, particularly in response to the known vulnerability of the Brynderwyn Hills section of SH1.

The Project is assessed as partially consistent or consistent with the Historic Heritage Chapter of the PKDP, as it largely avoids impacts on historic heritage; being the Coates Memorial (HH BRY 01). Archaeological sites will be avoided where practicable, with archaeological authorities being sought where avoidance is not possible with a Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP) recommended as a condition of the authorities. All pā sites within the Proposed Designation will be avoided, and archaeological investigation and recording will be undertaken to enhance understanding and appreciation of historic material in the area.

The Project is assessed as partially consistent or consistent with the Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity Chapter of the PKDP. The Project seeks to avoid impacts on significant indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna, and where avoidance is not practicable, mitigation and offsetting measures are proposed to manage adverse effects. The Project includes stewardship by NZTA as future landowner, protection of threatened and at risk species, management of pest species, strict biosecurity controls (including kauri dieback management), and ongoing maintenance and monitoring of mitigation planting.

The Project is consistent with the Natural Character Chapter of the PKDP as adverse effects on the natural character of rivers, streams, wetlands and their margins are addressed through proposed mitigation measures as discussed in the above paragraphs.

The proposed earthworks are required to enable the efficient construction of a state highway and have been assessed as consistent with the Earthworks Chapter of the PKDP. Potential adverse effects on visual amenity, dust, traffic operation, archaeology and significant ecological areas have been comprehensively assessed through specialist assessment reports, as outlined in Part D of this Volume, and will be managed through a range of mitigation measures, including a DMP, CTMP, avoidance of all pā sites, archaeological authorities for other sites, and mitigation planting.

The Project is consistent with the Noise Chapter of the PKDP as the Project's Indicative Alignment is located a significant distance from most PPFs. Any potential adverse operational noise effects will be mitigated through the use of low noise road surfaces in relevant sections, ensuring that adverse noise effects remain reasonable for the receiving environment.

C2.5. Whangārei District Plan Operative in Part 2022

The WDP serves as the primary regulatory framework for land use and development within the Whangārei District. Its purpose is to guide sustainable growth by balancing environmental, social, cultural, and economic interests.

The strategic direction of the WDP includes addressing district growth and development by:

- Managing the locations of different land uses.
- Managing natural hazards and environmental risks.
- Protection of natural, built and cultural heritage.
- Integrating Māori cultural values into development.
- Protecting rural character and rural production activities.
- The protection of and efficient development, operation and maintenance of infrastructure.
- The protection of strategic business and industry.
- The provision of land for open space and recreation.

Overall, the WDP aims to provide a comprehensive and adaptable framework that supports sustainable development while safeguarding the district's natural and cultural values.

The Project aligns with the strategic direction of the WDP to protect and develop strategic infrastructure and will ensure continued connectivity for the Whangārei District overall with Auckland and the rest of New Zealand.

An assessment of the relevant objectives and policies of the WDP has found the Project is consistent or partially consistent with them, as detailed in Table 10 of **Appendix C** of this Volume. A summary of the Project against the relevant sections of the WDP is provided below, rather than against individual objectives and policies.

In relation to district growth and development, the Project is partially consistent or consistent with relevant objectives and policies. Unavoidable effects on rural landscape, historic heritage, and SNAs are

acknowledged. Mitigation and remediation such as avoidance of all pā sites, archaeological authorities for all other sites, revegetation and enhancement of existing vegetation are proposed to reduce the magnitude of impacts. The Project takes into account Māori cultural values with the continued work between NZTA and hapū. The Project is also consistent with natural hazard management as detailed flood modelling has been undertaken for the Project which takes climate change into account.

The Project aligns with all relevant regionally significant infrastructure objectives and policies as it will deliver social and economic benefits, and the Proposed Designation will secure the route for future development. Mitigation, including ecological and landscape-based habitat replacement, revegetation and maintenance of offset sites, will ensure adverse effects are appropriately managed. As a critical lifeline for Northland, especially across the Brynderwyn Hills, the Project will meet the foreseeable regional transportation needs for the district and wider region.

The Project is consistent with relevant parts of the energy, infrastructure and transport section of the WDP as it will primarily avoid or thereafter manage operational conflicts with other network utilities. The Project will also support social, economic, cultural wellbeing and community safety, while proposed mitigation measures will ensure potential adverse effects on health and safety, natural character and heritage are appropriately managed.

The Project is consistent with the transport section of the WDP as it will improve safety, resilience, and capacity of the existing network. Stormwater controls will ensure flooding risks are appropriately managed (including accounting for climate change) and water quality is maintained. The Project accommodates the needs of all users and avoids adverse effects on surrounding sensitive activities.

The Project is consistent with the contaminated land section of the WDP as any contaminated material discovered during construction will be properly handled, transported, and disposed of at locations both in the Proposed Designation, and at regional landfills.

The Project is consistent with the natural hazards section of the WDP as although parts of the Project lie within flood-prone areas, proposed mitigation will ensure that human safety, property, and infrastructure are protected, and river flow paths and natural drainage systems will continue to function effectively. The Project will implement best practice observation-based design to manage land instability risk.

The Project is consistent or partially consistent with the ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity section of the WDP as the Project will avoid significant vegetation and habitats where practicable. Unavoidable effects will be mitigated or otherwise offset with planting, habitat enhancement, and pest control packages. The Project will therefore support broad ecosystem health and biodiversity, including long-term protection and restoration of key sub-catchments of indigenous fauna.

The Project is consistent or partially consistent with the natural features and landscapes section of the WDP as the existing state highway already traverses the Brynderwyn Hills Outstanding Natural Landscape (ONL) and the Project continues this established transport function. Restoration and mitigation measures such as native revegetation of cut and fill batters, and preparation of an LCP to be submitted as part of an OPW will assist in managing visual and landscape effects.

A mandatory approach towards the pre-cleaning and preparation of construction plant and equipment, including adherence to the Kauri Hygiene Standard Operating Procedures, will ensure that the spread of plant and animal pathogens is avoided in accordance with the earthworks section of the WDP.

The Project is consistent with the noise and vibration section of the WDP as rural character will be maintained following construction of the Project given the distance of most sensitive receivers from both the existing state highway alignment, and Indicative Alignment within the Proposed Designation. Operational noise will be managed through the use of low-noise road surfaces in key stretches of the Indicative Alignment to ensure effects on community health, wellbeing, and amenity remain appropriate.

C3. Relevant Iwi Management Plans

The FTAA requires an assessment of the Project against any relevant provisions in a planning document recognised by a relevant iwi authority and lodged with a local authority.¹⁹

The plans used in this assessment are indicated in Table 7 below.

Table 7: Recognised Iwi Management Plans lodged with authorities

Iwi/hapū	Plan	Recognition / lodgement evidence
Patuharakeke	Patuharakeke Hāpu Environmental Management Plan (2014) + Climate Change Update (2025)	Listed by NRC as an Iwi/Hapū Environmental Management Plan held by council. NRC also notes the 2025 Climate Change update.
Te Uri o Hau	Te Uri o Hau – Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao (2011)	Listed by NRC as lodged. KDC also summarises and relies on this plan in District Plan material.
Te Parawhau	Whatitiri Resource Management Plan (2016)	Listed by NRC as lodged. Published on WDC’s governance site

C3.1. Management Plan Provisions

C3.1.1. Te Uri o Hau - Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao (2011)

The Te Uri o Hau - Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao plan sets objectives and policies to maintain and improve freshwater quality and quantity, protect the Kaipara and Mangawhai catchments from sediment and other contaminants, and safeguard customary fisheries across coastal and harbour environments.

It focuses on avoiding adverse effects on cultural and biodiversity landscapes through early engagement.

It also directs development to be integrated with kaitiakitanga, and to protect and manage sensitive sites and taonga species.

C3.1.2. Patuharakeke - Hāpu Environmental Management Plan (2014) and Climate Update (2025)

The Patuharakeke - Hāpu Environmental Management Plan sets objectives and policies for recognition of kaitiakitanga, Treaty principles in practice, and kaitiaki monitoring tools. The plan requires adverse effects to be avoided or minimised on infrastructure projects, with cultural effects addressed through monitoring.

Controls on earthworks, vegetation clearance, erosion and sediment, and respect for cultural landscapes and public access are advocated by the plan.

The 2025 climate chapter update strengthens expectations for resilience and adaptation through policies around discharges to air and climate change risk management.

C3.1.3. Te Parawhau - Whatitiri Resource Management Plan (2016)

The plan emphasises recognition of Mana Whenua ki Whatitiri as kaitiaki and their active participation in planning and decision-making.

It sets clear objectives and policies to protect aquifers and surface waters, imposing strict controls on abstraction, earthworks and land uses that have the potential to degrade water quality and mahinga kai.

It requires robust controls on earthworks and vegetation clearance, mandates riparian protection, the restoration of ecological connectivity, and the avoidance of habitat fragmentation.

It also provides for the identification, mapping and protection of heritage, landscapes and wāhi tapu, supported by discovery protocols and cultural monitoring provisions.

¹⁹ Schedule 5, clauses 5(1)(h), 5(2)(g) and 5(3) FTAA.

C3.2. Project Assessment against Management Plan Provisions

A broad assessment of the Project against the provisions of the recognised iwi management plans is provided in Table 8 below. This is a preliminary assessment having considered the range of various technical environmental reports appended to this application.

Table 8: Recognised iwi management cross-plan compliance matrix

Topic	Te Uri o Hau - Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao (2011)	Patuharakeke - Hāpu Environmental Management Plan (2014) and Climate Update (2025)	Te Parawhau - Whatitiri Resource Management Plan (2016)	Assessment against the Project
Kaitiakitanga and engagement	Strong relationship principles with early marae-based consultation.	Requires early, ongoing, resourced engagement and kaitiaki monitoring.	Participation in planning/decisions.	Early engagement with and involvement of all hapū has occurred, including kaitiaki overseeing field investigations (archaeological, ecological and geotechnical), being involved in alternatives assessment and route refinement.
Freshwater and hydrology	Maintain and improve water quality and quantity.	Avoid sedimentation through a robust ESCP and protecting mahinga kai.	Protect aquifer and surface water through strict controls.	Best-practice design for erosion and sediment controls will be applied, with stormwater treatment ponds sized to accommodate runoff quantity and treat runoff to a sufficient quality.
Wāhi tapu & cultural heritage	Protect wāhi tapu/taonga and cultural landscapes.	Avoidance of cultural heritage, implementation of buffers and accidental discovery protocols, and ongoing monitoring.	Identify and protect cultural heritage and implement stop-work protocols.	Early involvement of iwi in identifying culturally sensitive areas such as pā sites, and avoidance thereof through design.
Biodiversity and connectivity	Avoid fragmentation and protect taonga species.	Avoid clearance of native vegetation, restore habitats and manage pests.	Riparian protection and ecological restoration.	Provision of fish passage through culverts where practically possible. Protection of taonga species through minimisation of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss and restoring habitat through mitigation planting.
Air, noise & vibration	No specific air quality matters, but general protection of values.	Manage discharges to air (dust) and climate risks.	Nuisance and amenity addressed through land policies.	Appropriate management of air, noise and vibration through best practice suggested in the relevant proposed conditions and management plans.
Climate resilience	Emphasis placed on integrated catchment resilience.	Dedicated climate section + 2025 update.	Flooding and land stability implicit in water/land sections.	The Project will ensure a safe and resilient route to Northland through flood-resilient structures/culverts, low-toxicity stormwater treatment ponds that are sized for future rainfall and climate change.

There are no other relevant planning documents recognised by a relevant iwi authority and lodged with a local authority to consider.²⁰

C4. Other Matters

This section provides an outline of other legal authorisations that NZTA considers are needed to authorise the Project.²¹

There is one existing designation within the Proposed Designation, referenced as Designation D62 under the OKDP for the purpose of 'Natural Gas Pipeline' and the requiring authority being Vector Gas Ltd / First Gas Ltd.

NZTA will need to obtain written consent from First Gas Ltd under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA given that First Gas has an existing designation within the Proposed Designation.

C5. Notice of Requirement

As set out in Section B2, NZTA is seeking NoRs for the Project to protect the state highway route and support the future construction, operation and maintenance of the Project.

The information required to support a NoR is outlined in Clause 12 of Schedule 5 of the FTAA, which is summarised in Table 2, Section A2.2.2 of this Volume.

The following sections cover the requirements relating to effects on the environment,²² adequate consideration of alternatives,²³ and an assessment of whether the project or work and the designation sought are reasonably necessary for achieving the objectives of the requiring authority.²⁴

C5.1. Effects on the Environment

Clause 12(1)(b) of Schedule 5 of the FTAA requires a NoR to include "information on the effects of the proposed project or work on the environment, together with a description of how any adverse effects will be mitigated".

The effects on the environment as a result of allowing the Proposed Designations have been assessed in detail in **Part D** of this Volume and are supported by the Technical Assessments in **Appendix D** of this Volume. An assessment is also made against a range of relevant statutory and non-statutory documents as set out in Sections C2, C3 and C4 and formed conclusions as to consistency with them. The NPS-I, NPS-FM, NPS-HPL, NPS-IB, NPS-EN, the RPSN, the RPN, OKDP, PKDP, and WDP generally provide a high-level of policy support and direction for the Project and have been given particular regard to in the assessment of effects.

C5.1.1. Positive Effects

This section describes the positive effects of the Project on the environment. Project benefits are outlined in detail in Section C.5 of Volume A. In summary, Section C.5 outlines that the Project aims to deliver a more resilient, reliable, safe, and efficient transport connection between Auckland and Whangārei by providing an alternative to the existing weather vulnerable Brynderwyn Hills section of SH1. The Project is expected to reduce weather related road closure duration and frequency by 79%, cut deaths and serious injuries by a similar proportion, and improve travel efficiency through travel time savings worth \$795 million (Net Present Value). By offering safer overtaking opportunities and reducing interactions between

²⁰ Schedule 5, clause 5, subclause 2(g) FTAA.

²¹ Section 13(4)(t) FTAA.

²² Schedule 5, clause 12(1)(b) FTAA.

²³ Schedule 5, clause 12(1)(h) FTAA.

²⁴ Schedule 5, clause 12(1)(g) FTAA.

slow moving and faster vehicles, the Project will enhance travel time reliability. These factors will lead to an increase in economic activity and a higher standard of living and quality of life.

In relation to Traffic and Transport, operational effects of the Project are highly positive and will contribute to significant improvements in safety, resilience and capacity of the existing network. Once operational it is also expected that Heavy Commercial Vehicles (HCVs) will prefer using the Project route over the existing SH1. This will have a positive impact on the performance and safety of freight (refer to Section D3).

In relation to Heritage and Archaeology, the discovery and recording of new archaeological sites, should they be uncovered during construction activities, will positively contribute to the understanding of heritage in the area (refer to Section D6).

All of these items are positive effects of the Project that are proposed by NZTA as requiring authority and as part of the Application. Therefore, they should be considered as part of the overall assessment of effects of the Project (refer to Section D2).

C5.2. Consideration of Alternatives

C5.2.1. Introduction

This section sets out NZTA's consideration of alternative sites, routes, or methods of undertaking the Project under Clause 12(1)(h) of FTAA Schedule 5. At the time of lodgement, NZTA did not have an interest in all of the land required for the construction, operation, and maintenance of the Project - and so Section 171(1)(b) of the RMA is to be taken into account.

C5.2.2. Background

The Project has been assessed at different scales across the optioneering process and via different studies since 2017. The assessment process has systematically narrowed the geographic area from potential strategic corridors down to the Project's NoR boundary and Indicative Alignment.

Short to medium investments to improve resiliency and safety along the corridor in Dome Valley and the Brynderwyn Hills area have also occurred since 2017.

Te Hana to Whangārei Single Stage Business Cases (2018 and 2022)

The first options assessments completed were for the entire Te Hana to Whangārei corridor. This work involved a series of "Single Stage" Business Cases between 2018 and 2022, which assessed a 'long list' of strategic corridor options.

Outcomes of this work relevant to the Project included NZTA decisions to:

- progress with further 'short list' optioneering work on central and western corridor options;
- discount other eastern strategic route options (largely due to resilience challenges, cost, and impacts to significant sites); and
- discount an option to upgrade the existing SH1 alignment (due to design speed requirements, poor ground conditions and resilience issues).

Northland Corridor Roads of National Significance Investment Case (2024 – 2025)

In 2024, NZTA as part of the Northland Corridor Road of National Significance Investment Case reassessed the earlier long list. This reassessment sought to further optimise the corridor through development of an indicative design for each corridor and consideration of additional elements, such as earthworks volumes and structure sizes.

The longlist reassessment reconfirmed the previous optioneering decisions to progress with central and western options to a shortlisting process. The following four shortlist options were considered for the "Emerging Preferred Corridor" and are shown in Figure 2 below.

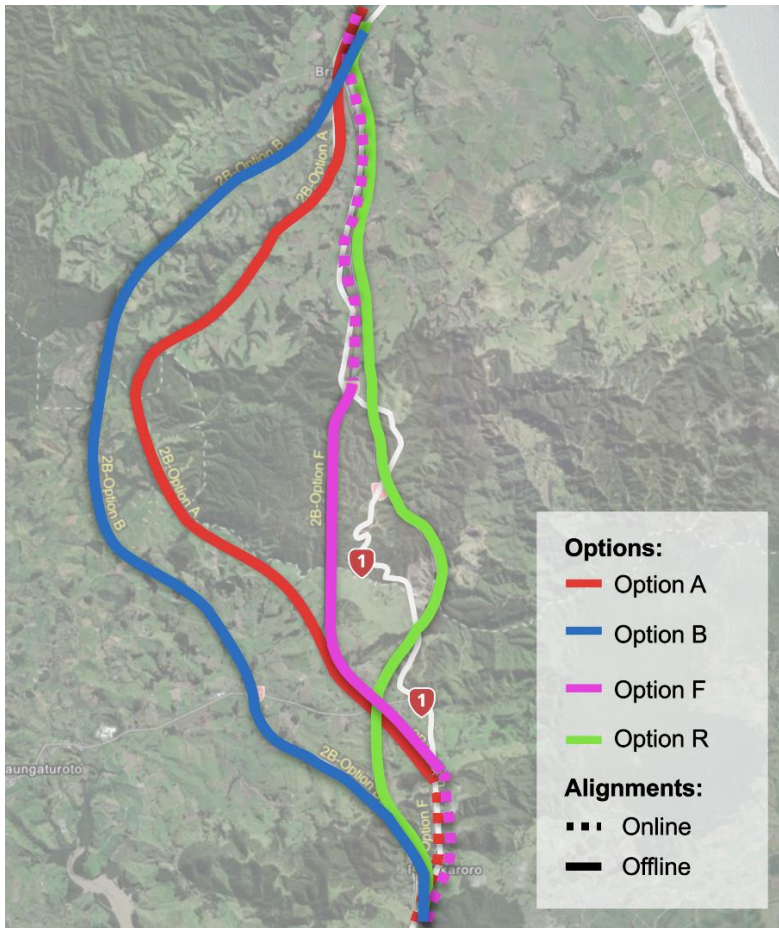


Figure 2: Map of the shortlist options considered for the Emerging Preferred Corridor (relative to existing SH1)

All of these options were assessed by NZTA and its assessors and independent technical specialists using a multi criteria assessment (MCA) framework. The criteria for the MCA assessment included safety, resilience, economic productivity, geology, cultural values, property impacts, archaeology, Coastal Marine Areas, sites of 'High' ecological value / outstanding features, settlements and proxy cost.

Option R (the "Central Eastern Bypass") was identified as the preferred route of the Project (referred to as 'Emerging Preferred Corridor') for the Investment Case. Factors supporting that recommendation (when compared to other options) were:

- well-understood and manageable geological risks;
- lowest cost option;
- notable travel time savings;
- allowance for alternative detour routes, and
- opportunities to address environmental constraints.

It is important to note that the Emerging Preferred Corridor retained a generous width for further alignment testing and refinement to support definition of a Consent Design. This included extending up to the eastern edge of the National Grid corridor.

C5.2.3. Emerging Preferred Corridor / Consent Design

The next stage of the assessment focussed on the ongoing refinement of the Emerging Preferred Corridor and included consideration of associated interchange locations (and form) to confirm a 'Consent Design' (i.e., the Indicative Design to be taken through the NoR and resource consenting process).

This step involved further MCA and NZTA decision-making processes. The assessment was led by the Project’s Resource Management Planning team and supported by the wider Project Team. Specialist technical advice was also provided by independent and NZTA assessors and “Subject Matter Experts” (SMEs) on a range of relevant topics: economics, social, environmental, transport, property and cultural.

The following table summarises the alternatives assessment process undertaken to confirm the Indicative Design, including the reporting stages and decision points to achieve a Consent Design.

Table 9: Evaluation process for alternatives assessments

Step	Consideration
1	Project Team identified high-level constraints / opportunities in the Emerging Preferred Corridor arising from the earlier optioneering refinement / design process, environmental survey findings, and stakeholder or landowner feedback.
2	Briefing prepared by Project Team covering the identified constraint / opportunity and potential alternatives to address those matters.
3	Concept alternatives prepared by Project Team for assessors / SMEs to individually assess and score.
4	Briefing from Project Team presented to assessors / SMEs to ensure they understood the alternatives and related contextual factors.
5	Assessment by SMEs within their area of expertise, scoring each alternative using a common scoring table and recording their key rationale / assumptions.
6	Project Team workshop held where assessors / SMEs presented initial scoring and rationale and they and wider team discussed and considered the conclusions and the relative pros and cons of the various alternatives.
7	A summary of the assessment produced, critical differentiators highlighted and recommendations on preferred alternative made by Project Team to NZTA.
8	Planning Lead summarised outcomes for NZTA consideration / endorsement.
9	NZTA decision on preferred alternative.

C5.2.4. Summary of alternatives assessments

Three assessments took place for the Project using the process in Table 9 for:

- 1) The Brynderwyn Hills alignment;
- 2) An area east of existing Transpower transmission lines on the northern side of the Brynderwyn Hills (Transpower’s 220 kV Henderson to Marsden high voltage transmission line); and
- 3) The proposed Piroa Stream Crossing.

Each of these processes and the outcomes are briefly summarised in the following sub-sections.

Brynderwyn Hills alignment

Figure 3 below shows the three options assessed for the Brynderwyn Hills alignment alternatives assessment. The key constraints and opportunities identified within the Brynderwyn Hills alignment area included:

- Cultural considerations – the Brynderwyn Hills are a culturally significant area for Iwi.
- Regionally significant land use and property – Atlas Concrete Quarry.
- Potential environmental effects – the Outstanding Natural Landscape (ONL) values applying to the Brynderwyn Ranges and bush margins, including ecological effects.
- Constructability risk / methodology – potential alignment options cross over the existing SH1 alignment more than once.
- Significant structures – different alignment options require a range of significant structures, including viaducts.

- Significant impacts on other physical infrastructure - specifically the National Grid.

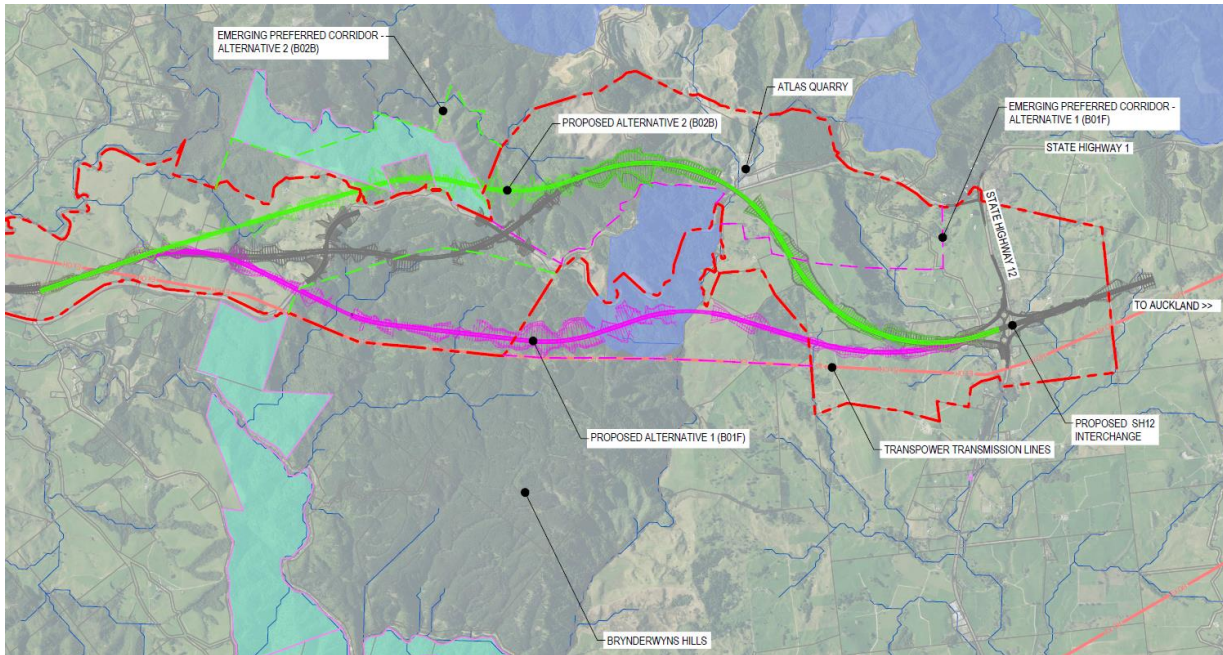


Figure 3: Options assessed as part of the Brynderwyn Hills alignment alternatives assessment (IBC Option in grey, Alternative 1 in magenta, and Alternative 2 in green; emerging preferred corridor in red and prior to rationalisation).

Alternative 1 (Western) Option was selected as the preferred option including on the basis that it:

- Offered the most balanced earthworks solution and greater constructability benefits;
- Avoided the Atlas Quarry;
- Avoided the National Grid, and could be designed to maintain access to that line;
- Avoided the Brynderwyn Scenic Reserve; and
- Avoided known pā sites.

The assessment acknowledged that this option directly impacted an ONL and would result in potential terrestrial and freshwater ecological effects. However, the IBC Option would have also had similar detrimental effects.

East of Transpower (EoT) (located on the northern side of the Brynderwyn Hills)

The geographic area subject to this alternatives assessment sits between Waipū Gorge Road and the southern extent of the future Waipū (Millbrook Road) interim Interchange, as shown in Figure 4 below. The key constraints and opportunities identified within this area included:

- Flooding: due to its proximity to the Waihoihoi River.
- Utilities: the IBC Option crossed the National Grid at several points.
- Property: the IBC design affected the Kauri Park Nursery at 2180 SH1, Kaiwaka and a listed and scheduled heritage site: the Fraser/McKenzie House (also known as 'The Braigh') located at 90 Glenmohr Road, Waipū.
- Constructability: an opportunity was identified to optimise the preferred corridor / route earthworks to enhance material reusability and efficiency.
- Significant structure: the IBC design required a bridge over Glenmohr Road, while the proposed alternative option went under Glenmohr Road.

A map of the two options assessed in the EoT alternatives assessment is shown in Figure 4 below.

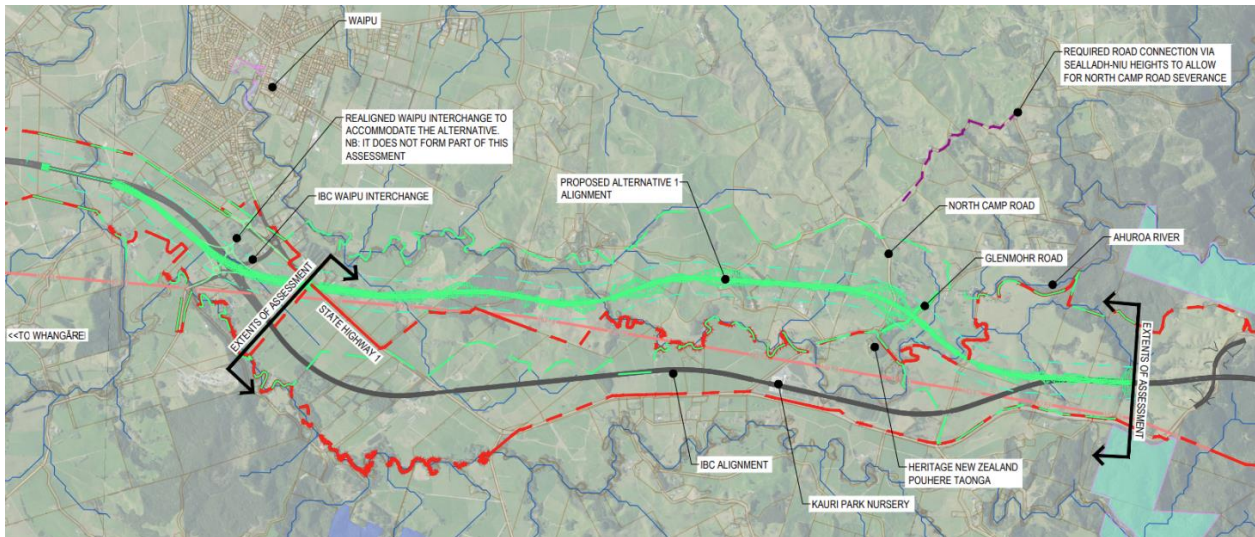


Figure 4: Options assessed in the EoT alternatives assessment (IBC Option shown in grey and EoT Option shown in green; emerging preferred corridor in red and prior to rationalisation).

Following the assessment, the IBC Option was retained as the preferred option, including on the basis that:

- The EoT Option traversed rolling hill terrace, which had greater geological uncertainty and a higher geotechnical risk profile.
- The EoT Option resulted in more complex constructability challenges, including associated construction programme implications.

The assessment acknowledged that there were a number of factors that did not differentiate between the two options.

Piroa Stream Crossing (located on the southern extent of the Brynderwyn Hills)

The Alternative 1 (Western) Option - Brynderwyn Hills alignment (described above) required a crossing of the Piroa stream at the base of the Brynderwyn Hills. Given the elevation difference of approximately 50m over the Piroa stream, either a significant bridge or fill embankment was required. The key constraints and opportunities identified within this area included:

- Cultural considerations/effects: different structural options had different impacts on cultural values.
- Environmental effects: crossing the Piroa Stream and an ONL required consideration of landscape, visual and terrestrial and ecological effects.
- Significant structure: either a bridge over the Piroa Stream and southern face of the ONL, or a fill embankment with culverting of the Piroa Stream was required.
- Constructability risk / methodology: the options had different risks, costs and programme implications, including earthworks management/optimisation.

Three options were assessed for the Piroa Stream Crossing Alternative Assessment:

- 1) Option 1 – Bridge with six piers of typical 50 m span length;
- 2) Option 2 – Fill embankment with culvert for Piroa Stream; and
- 3) Option 3 – Bridge with four piers of typical 75 m span length.



Figure 5: Options assessed as part of the Piroa Stream Crossing alternatives assessment (Option 1 on the left, Option 2 in the centre, and Option 3 on the right). Note that the visualisations present a scenario where vegetation is near or at full maturity).

Following the assessment process, Option 2 (fill embankment) was confirmed as the preferred option to be carried forward into the Indicative Design (Consent Design), including for the following reasons:

- Overall, Option 2 was determined to present significant benefits over the bridge/viaduct options including for resilience, cost and construction flexibility.
- It was the safest and most constructable option with considerable construction programme benefits.
- It was the least complex option in terms of structures.
- It would make highly efficient use of surplus fill material and provide for more balanced earthworks.
- Terrestrial and freshwater ecological effects were not a material differentiator.
- While it did score negatively from a landscape values perspective, when balanced against other criteria that did not shift the overarching assessment outcomes.

Summary

The Project has been assessed as the technically preferred option through a robust MCA process, also informed by ongoing discussions with hapū and key stakeholders.

Reasonably necessary to achieve Objectives

Schedule 5, Clause 12(1)(g) of the FTAA and section 171(1)(b) of the RMA requires the decision maker to have particular regard to applications for NoR's to include an assessment of whether the project or work and the designation sought are reasonably necessary for achieving the objectives of the requiring authority. In this context, 'reasonably necessary' does not mean absolutely necessary in that there is no alternative, nor does it mean just expedient or desirable.

As detailed in **Section C3** of Volume A of this Application, the NoR objectives for the Project are:

1. Improve the safety and resilience of the state highway network between Pukekaroro and Waipū.
2. Improve travel time reliability and transport efficiency of the state highway network between Pukekaroro and Waipū.
3. Support the inter and intra-regional movement of people and freight by providing local connections off State Highway 1 between Pukekaroro and Waipū.
4. Support national and regional economic growth and productivity.

The Project is reasonably necessary for achieving the above NoR objectives because it will:

- Provide a safer transport corridor between Auckland and Northland, resulting in a reduction in deaths and serious injuries;
- Create a more resilient transport network through the provision of a new highway, designed to be more adaptable to the effects of climate change and to support recovery from natural hazard events. The new highway will allow normal traffic along the state highway network to be restored as quickly as possible in such events;
- Enable regional growth and bring significant economic benefits through improved connectivity, accessibility and reliability along the state highway corridor, an important regional and national freight

route connecting economic generators such as Northport, Port Whangārei and the Northland economy to the rest of New Zealand.

The mechanism of a designation is also reasonably necessary to achieve NZTA's objectives for the Project because:

- It will enable NZTA to achieve its objective to contribute to an effective, efficient and safe land transport system under the Land Transport Management Act 2003;
- It will protect the land and the proposed route from inappropriate development which may otherwise preclude the construction of the Project;
- It will allow the land required to be identified in the relevant district plans (through the Proposed Designation), providing certainty to the community and landowners of the nature and location of the Project;
- It will enable the Project to be undertaken in a comprehensive and integrated manner; and
- Construction funding for the Project is not yet confirmed. Alongside the resource consents that are also being applied for, the Proposed Designation provides certainty to NZTA that the Project can be built and operated once construction funding is available as well as certainty to landowners and the wider community.

In light of the above considerations, a designation is the preferred planning mechanism to authorise the Project rather than obtaining district plan land use consents or a district plan change (noting a plan change cannot be processed under the FTAA).

As a RoNS in the GPS 2024, the Project is highlighted as one of New Zealand's most essential corridors that necessitates development and investment. As such, the decision maker should take this into account. Under section 171(1)(d) of the RMA, there are no other matters considered reasonably necessary to make a recommendation on the requirement.

C6. Resource Consents

The following section assesses the Project against the relevant criteria and other matters for a consent application.²⁵ These include assessment of the Application against relevant sections of the RMA including section 104 (excluding section 104D), section 105, and section 107. An assessment of the Project against Part 2 of the RMA (sections 5, 6 and 7) follows this section. Assessment of the Project against the purpose of the FTAA is undertaken in the Benefits Assessment in Section C5 of Volume A.

C6.1. Section 104

The actual and potential effects²⁶ of the Project on the environment are assessed in Part D and supported by the Technical Assessments in **Appendix D** of this Volume. As set out in Part D, there are a range of effects. When NZTA's proposed package of proposed mitigation measures is taken into account, the overall effects of the Project are largely assessed to range between less than minor to more than minor. However, in the case of very high-value vegetation and Hochstetter's Frog high residual effects remain for which mitigation and offset will be confirmed at detailed design. Further offsets are proposed by NZTA as measures that will ensure positive effects on the environment to mitigate for adverse effects on landscape and visual, terrestrial and freshwater ecology habitats and fauna.²⁷

In terms of the planning instruments to which the decision-maker must have regard in section 104(1)(b) of the RMA, the assessment in Sections C2, C3 and C4 demonstrate that:

²⁵ Schedule 5, section 17(1) FTAA.

²⁶ Section 104(1)(a) RMA.

²⁷ Section 104(1)(ab) RMA.

- The Project has strong policy support in the NPS-I. It aligns with the NPS-I as it is significant infrastructure that will deliver significant public benefits. It has a clear functional and operational need and aligns with strategic transport plans. Environmental effects are mitigated to an appropriate level, hapū partners have been involved, and the Project supports efficient delivery, resilience, and appropriate route selection.
- The Project is generally consistent with the NPS-FM and the NES-F. It is significant infrastructure with a functional need and its effects on freshwater will be managed through avoidance, remedy and mitigation, and offsets to uphold Te Mana o te Wai.
- The Project is consistent with the NPS-HPL as it is essential infrastructure being developed by NZTA through a NoR process and has a functional and operational need to operate on HPL.
- The Project is generally consistent with the NPS-I as it is essential infrastructure that will contribute to New Zealand's social and economic wellbeing and its effects on indigenous biodiversity will be managed through avoidance, remediation, mitigation and offsetting, ecological resilience measures, and partnership with hapū where appropriate.
- Although the Project intersects with National Grid and distribution network infrastructure, any work in close proximity to the infrastructure will be consistent with the NPS-EN and ensure the electricity network's safe operation, maintenance, and upgrading is not compromised through ongoing engagement with Transpower and Northpower, careful construction management, and avoidance of reverse-sensitivity effects.
- With the recommended mitigation measures in place the Project will effectively manage any actual or potential effects from contaminated land on human health and the environment in accordance with the NES-CS.
- The Project has been assessed to be generally consistent with the RPSN and the RPN as it is regionally significant infrastructure that will create significant social and economic benefits.
- The Project is broadly consistent with the OKDP and PKDP as it supports regional growth and transport efficiency, incorporates partnership with hapū, avoids or mitigates environmental and cultural effects to the extent practicable, provides essential infrastructure for future development, and applies appropriate ecological, natural hazard, and transport management measures.
- The Project is broadly consistent with the relevant provisions of the WDP because, while it will have some unavoidable effects on rural landscapes, heritage, and biodiversity, these will be managed to the extent practicable through mitigation and offsets. The Project will also deliver regionally significant infrastructure that supports growth, improves transport safety and resilience, seeks to protect cultural values through partnership with hapū, and appropriately manages natural hazards, contaminated land, utilities, ecosystems, amenity, and noise effects.

Section 104(1)(c) states that when considering an application for resource consent, the consent authority must, subject to Part 2 of the RMA, have regard to any other matter the consent authority considers relevant and reasonably necessary to determine the application. Relevant matters have been identified and assessed such as relevant iwi management plans (Section C3), other legal authorisations needed for the Project (Section C4), and relevant strategic documents such as the GPS 2024, NLTP, NRLTP, NTAMP in the strategic overview (Section A8.3 of Volume A). The Project aligns with the government's strategic priority for economic growth and productivity in the GPS 2024; with the improvements to the transport connection provided by the Project leading to an increase in economic activity supporting higher levels of output (GDP) and employment. As a RoNS in the GPS 2024, the Project is highlighted as one of New Zealand's most essential corridors that necessitates development and investment. These documents are strongly supportive of the Project.

C6.2. Section 105

Section 105 of the RMA requires that for a discharge permit, the consent authority must have regard to, in addition to the matters in section 104(1):

- the nature of the discharge and the sensitivity of the receiving environment to adverse effects; and
- the applicant's reasons for the proposed choice; and
- any possible alternative methods of discharge, including discharge into any other receiving environment.

Details of the discharges are provided in the following technical assessments and sections:

- Construction Water Assessment (**Appendix D10**) for stormwater discharges during construction; and
- Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (**Appendix D11**) for operational stormwater discharges.

The details of the construction and operational discharges described and assessed by the Project's supporting technical assessments are summarised in the following sections.

C6.2.1. Stormwater discharges during construction

The nature of the discharge to land and water include discharge of sediment from earthworks during both rain and flood events, discharge of sediment from in-stream activities and changes to flow, and discharge of other contaminants (such as oils, fuels and cement).

The sensitivity of the receiving environment to adverse effects varies along the Project route due to its linear nature. The majority of the area is highly modified land used for agriculture. However, there are identified high-risk areas which are considered to be more sensitive such as wetlands, streams, protected areas, and steep areas.

It is not possible to avoid sediment discharges during construction works and there are no alternative methods or alternative receiving environments. The methods for management of these discharges are well understood based on experience with other major roading projects. Therefore, it is proposed to implement best practice erosion and sediment control measures to minimise sediment generation and sediment yield to minimise, remedy and mitigate the effects of stormwater discharges from the Project during construction.

C6.2.2. Operational Stormwater Discharges

Once operational, the nature of any ongoing discharges to land and water derive from the introduction of new impervious surfaces that will increase stormwater runoff volumes and peak flows. These discharges are long term.

The sensitivity of the receiving environment is the same as outlined above; that is the majority of the area is highly modified land used for agriculture. However, there are identified high-risk areas which are considered to be more sensitive such as wetlands, streams, protected areas, and steep areas.

There is no alternative receiving environment.

In the operational phase of the Project, stormwater is to be collected using best practice industry standard design interventions including via a network of highway runoff conveyance systems, constructed wetlands (for stormwater treatment ecological areas) and wetland swales. Culverts will maximise fish passage where necessary and practicable. Stream diversion designs will replicate natural channel form and habitat features and maintain habitat continuity and hydraulic function. This combination of methods has been adopted for the Project as the best practicable option.

C6.2.3. Construction Air Discharges

The nature of the discharge is likely to be the loading and off-loading of vehicles with spoil, substrate and aggregate, resuspension of dust from exposed surfaces.

The sensitivity of the receiving environment is deemed to be low, as the area is mostly characterised as a rural environment.

There is no alternative receiving environment as the wider subregion is characterised by a similar mix of rural activities. There are no alternative methods of discharge, as the dust and odour discharges are associated with standard construction activities for major roading projects. These effects are well-understood from experience with these large-scale projects. As adverse dust and odour effects during construction cannot be avoided, they will be remedied and mitigated by adopting best practice dust control methods via a DMP.

C6.3. Section 107

Section 107 of the RMA prevents a discharge permit from being granted in certain circumstances.

Those circumstances are where the discharges are likely to give rise to all or any of the following effects in the receiving waters:

- The production of any conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials:
- Any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity:
- Any emission of objectionable odour:
- The rendering of fresh water unsuitable for consumption by farm animals:
- Any significant adverse effects on aquatic life.

The Project will not give rise to any of these effects. The Construction Water Assessment (**Appendix D10** of this Volume) and Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (**Appendix D11** of this Volume) do not identify any adverse effects of the type identified in the bullet points above. Therefore, the applications for discharge permits are able to be granted for the following reasons:

- The potential for significant adverse effects from sediment discharges during construction is considered to be low because best practice industry standard erosion and sediment control methodologies will be applied, including a continuous improvement monitoring programme with adaptive management where required. Any adverse effects experienced will be temporary and minor in nature, restricted to the construction period of the Project, and will be contained through the application of a range of measures as set out in Section D10.
- The potential for effects on receiving waters associated with conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials or odour both through construction and operation is low. After reasonable mixing it is considered that no adverse effect will arise from conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials or odour. This conclusion is based on the nature of the stormwater discharge as well as the treatment efficiency and efficacy that the stormwater devices have been designed to achieve as set out in the Construction Water Assessment and Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects.
- The Construction Water Assessment and Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects have confirmed that the discharge of treated stormwater is unlikely to adversely affect the ecological values of the receiving water bodies, nor will it impact aquatic life. As noted above, best practice industry standard design interventions have been applied to the Indicative Design. As such, significant adverse effects on the existing aquatic life are not anticipated to be generated.
- Once completed, the Project will treat all stormwater runoff from the Project to an appropriate standard, consistent with best practice prior to discharging to surrounding watercourses, as set out in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects.

Therefore, the Project is not expected to give rise to the adverse effects listed in section 107 of the RMA.

C7. Assessment against Part 2 of the RMA

The purpose of the RMA is “to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources” as set out in section 5(1) of the RMA.

As required under Schedule 5 clause 5(1)(g) and clause 12(1)(d)(i) of the FTAA, an assessment of the Project against sections 5, 6 and 7 of the RMA is provided below.

C7.1. Section 5 – Purpose

SH1 is a regionally and nationally significant resource. The Project will enable people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being and for their health and safety, by providing:

- Safety improvements for all users of the Project.
- Significant economic benefits for the Northland region due to more efficient freight transport, with savings in business user and freight travel times supporting higher productivity for the direct beneficiaries, which will then create broader ‘flow-on’ effects through the economy. This will result in a higher level of output (GDP) and employment.
- A route that is more resilient to natural hazards, leading to an estimated 79% reduction in the time the road is closed due to weather events.
- An integrated approach to cultural wellbeing through ongoing engagement with hapū in the design and delivery of the Project.

Sustainable management also involves the promotion of the matters in section 5(2)(a) through to (c) of the RMA. In this regard, the Project will:

- With mitigation, be undertaken in a manner that does not result in significant adverse effects on the natural or physical resources of the Project and its surrounds.
- Sustain the potential of natural and physical resources for future generations by delivering positive environmental outcomes by implementing appropriate stormwater discharge standards to ensure that the increase in impervious areas will be managed appropriately.
- Sustain the potential of natural and physical resources by minimising land disturbance and avoiding vegetation clearance, where practicable, to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations.
- Safeguard the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems by avoiding, where practicable, remedying, mitigating and compensating for the adverse effects on flora and fauna.
- Safeguard the life-supporting capacity of air, water, and soil through appropriate erosion and sediment control, stormwater management, and dust controls.
- Avoid, where practicable, remedy and mitigate adverse effects on the environment, such as adverse noise and vibration effects, landscape and visual effects and heritage effects, as discussed in Part D below.

Given the above, the Project will promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources consistent with the purpose of the RMA.

C7.2. Section 6 – Matters of National Importance

The Project recognises and provides for the relevant matters of national importance in section 6 of the RMA. Specifically, the Project recognises and provides for the following:

- The Project does not have any impact on the natural character of the Coastal Environment as no works are proposed in the Coastal Environment or the CMA. The Project will however involve works

within wetlands, rivers and their margins. To manage the impact on the natural character of these features, mitigation measures are proposed and discussed in detail in Section D5.5 below.²⁸

- The Project crosses through an outstanding natural landscape associated with the Brynderwyn Ranges and bush margins, identified in the WDP and RPN. Mitigation measures will be implemented, such as recontouring of the land, planting and revegetation to ensure adverse landscape and visual effects on the outstanding natural landscape are managed adequately.²⁹
- Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna will be protected to the extent practicable by minimising adverse effects and offsetting where appropriate. The Project is not 'inappropriate' development, as it is specified infrastructure in accordance with the NPS-FM, the NPS-IB and the NPS-HPL.³⁰
- The relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites waahi tapu, and other taonga will be enhanced through ongoing engagement and avoidance of culturally important sites (e.g. pā).³¹
- The archaeological values of historic heritage have been assessed in detail and identified pā sites have been avoided. While the Project will involve works within, and close to archaeological sites, mitigation measures will be implemented, such as buffer zones and will be set out in a HHMP prior to the commencement of construction activities. Archaeological authorities have been applied for where avoidance is not possible and for unknown sites to be managed in accordance with HNZPT protocols. This approach will ensure adverse effects on historic heritage are adequately managed.³²
- NZTA acknowledge that the environment is a taonga that must be managed carefully and that Māori have a kaitiaki responsibility and obligation of care over their communities and environments. The Project will not occur in a protected customary rights area.³³
- The design of the Project takes into consideration the 1% Annual Exceedance Probability (AEP) rainfall event, including the effects of climate change.³⁴

C7.3. Section 7 – Other Matters

The Project has had particular regard to the following relevant matters identified in section 7 of the RMA:

- Kaitiakitanga and the ethic of stewardship through NZTA's engagement and (since 2024) sought to embed partnerships with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau throughout the Project, including draft technical assessment and draft conditions. NZTA will continue this engagement throughout the Detailed Design, construction and operational phases of the Project.³⁵
- The Project will provide a new state highway network that is safe and will contribute to a more efficient use and development of state highway network as a physical resource and matter of national significance.³⁶
- The Project provides for the maintenance and enhancement of amenity values and the quality of the environment through landscape and ecological mitigation planting and wetland restoration.³⁷

²⁸ Section 6(a) RMA.

²⁹ Section 6(b) RMA.

³⁰ Section 6(c) RMA.

³¹ Section 6(e) RMA.

³² Section 6(f) RMA.

³³ Section 6(g) RMA.

³⁴ Section 6(h) RMA.

³⁵ Section 7(a) and (aa) RMA.

³⁶ Section 7(b) RMA.

³⁷ Section 7(c) RMA.

- The Project has considered the intrinsic values of ecosystems, particularly the notable size and representativeness of Wetland 24, and ensures that mitigation measures such as offsetting are implemented.³⁸
- The Project will be constructed and operated in accordance with dust, noise, and sediment controls to maintain the quality of the environment during and following construction.³⁹
- The Project has considered the finite characteristics of natural and physical resources, particularly relating to highly productive soils. The Project avoids adverse effects to HPL as far as practicable and acknowledges the finite value of HPL. However, due to the lack of feasible alternative options, it is necessary that the Project is located partially within HPL.⁴⁰
- The effects of climate change have been considered in the Project design to avoid overtopping from flood events and takes into consideration the 1% AEP rainfall event, including the effects of climate change.⁴¹

³⁸ Section 7(d) RMA.

³⁹ Section 7(f) RMA.

⁴⁰ Section 7(g) RMA.

⁴¹ Section 7(i) RMA.

PART D – Assessment of Actual and Potential Effects on the Environment

D1. Overview

This section provides an assessment of the actual and potential effects generated from the construction, operation, use and maintenance of the Project. It draws on the descriptions of the existing environment as provided in Part B of Volume A and provides an overview of the findings from the assessment of effects associated with the Project from each technical investigation presented in **Appendices D1-D12** of this Volume. It also summarises the cultural effects which have been identified in the Cultural Impact Assessments (CIAs) received from Te Uri o Hau and Patuharakeke (Appendices H and G of Volume A respectively).

The assessment of actual and potential effects has been prepared on the basis of the Indicative Alignment (as shown in the Consent Design Drawing Package in Appendix D of Volume A), while accounting for the potential for the future final alignment being located anywhere within the Proposed Designation and subject to meeting the proposed conditions. As part of the design and development phase for the Project, a primary principle was to avoid adverse effects upon the receiving environment where practicable. The assessment (along with the supporting technical assessments in the Appendices) has been prepared to address the relevant requirements set out in the FTAA⁴².

Each section below includes a summary of:

- the scale at which effects will occur and whether they are likely to be temporary (construction-related) or permanent (operation-related);
- the recommendations from specialists on how to avoid, remedy, mitigate or offset those adverse effects (including any temporary effects), where appropriate and in a proportionate manner to the magnitude of those effects; and
- a conclusion on the residual level of effects on the environment.

A summary of NZTA's proposed mitigation is also provided. In some cases, the proposed mitigation differs from specialists' recommendations. However, NZTA considers the proposed mitigation is appropriate within the context of the FTAA framework. Where NZTA's proposed mitigation differs from that recommended by Specialists, this is noted below.

D2. Summary of Effects

A high-level summary of the actual and potential effects of the construction, operation, use and maintenance of the Project is set out in Table 10 below, along with the scale of effect, post implementation of the mitigation proposed by NZTA.

Table 10: Summary of actual and potential effects

Actual or potential effect / type of effect	Scale of effect (post mitigation proposed by NZTA)
Traffic and Transport	
Potential adverse construction (temporary) traffic effects regarding:	Less than Minor (construction) No specific mitigation is proposed as preparation, implementation and monitoring of a Construction Traffic

⁴²Section 43(3)(a) and 43(3)(d) and schedule 5, clause 5(1)(4), clause (6)(1), clause 7 and clause 12(1)(b) FTAA.

Actual or potential effect / type of effect	Scale of effect (post mitigation proposed by NZTA)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increase in light and heavy vehicles. ▪ Increased safety risks at Site Access Point (SAP) locations <p>Potential positive operational effects regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Safety improvements ▪ Travel time and reliability improvements ▪ Resilience improvements ▪ Corridor performance improvements 	<p>Management Plan (CTMP) supported by Site-Specific Traffic Management Plans (SSTMPs) will be implemented through the requirements of the relevant road controlling authorities, so conditions on the designation are not required.</p> <p>Operational effects are positive, so no mitigation is required.</p>
Noise and Vibration	
<p>Potential adverse construction (temporary) effects relating to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Earthworks activity, including in the indicative spoil areas. ▪ Rock excavation and crushing. ▪ Bored piling (e.g. bridge construction). ▪ Impact piling (e.g. retaining walls and bridges construction). ▪ Sheet piling (e.g. culverts installation). ▪ Road compaction (e.g. using vibratory roller compaction). <p>Potential adverse operational noise effects relating to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Operational traffic noise increases to PPFs. ▪ Note also potential positive operational noise effects for traffic noise decreases to PPFs. 	<p>Less than Minor (Construction)</p> <p>Mitigation includes ensuring works comply with relevant noise and vibration standards; preparation of a schedule to set out the BPO for minimising any noise and vibration effects that cannot comply with the aforementioned criteria; preparation of a Schedule for works in the vicinity of existing network utility services; and offer of building condition surveys.</p> <p>Less than Minor (Operational)</p> <p>Mitigation includes ensuring the Detailed Design of the Project complies with the relevant operational noise criteria, and requirements to implement noise mitigation measures as required to ensure compliance with the relevant standards (e.g. low noise type of asphalt surface for specific stretches of the Indicative Alignment if needed)</p>
Landscape, Natural Character and Visual Amenity	
<p>Potentially moderate to high adverse construction (temporary) and operational landscape, natural character and visual amenity effects regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Loss of distinctive kahikatea / tōtara stands at the entrance to Waipū. ▪ Diversion of a meander loop of the Waihoihoi River. ▪ Effects on the values of the ONL on the southern escarpment of the Brynderwyn Hills. ▪ Effects on the natural character of the Piroa Stream and its two tributaries. ▪ Effects on the bush clad volcanic hills and tributary valley of the Pukekaroro Stream. ▪ Effects on views from a small number of individual houses. 	<p>Minor</p> <p>Mitigation includes avoidance of the northern kahikatea totara stand at the entrance to Waipū. Other mitigation measures will be submitted as part of an Outline Plan of Works to relevant local authorities. Measures include preparation of LCPs to achieve outcomes set in the proposed conditions.</p> <p>The actual landscape, visual amenity values and natural character effects of the Project are considered to be high on some features such as the ONL initially, however as mitigation becomes more established and realised incrementally over time this would reduce to be minor.</p>
Heritage and Archaeology	
<p>Potentially adverse effects (permanent) including modification or destruction of the 13 recorded and any unrecorded archaeological sites in the Proposed Designation from earthworks.</p> <p>Potential effects of earthworks and land disturbance on pā sites within the Proposed Designation.</p>	<p>No effects on pā sites within the Proposed Designation.</p> <p>More than Minor effects on all other archaeological sites impacted by the Project within the Proposed Designation.</p> <p>Mitigation includes avoiding all pā sites (including an avoid condition on the designation) and applying for archaeological authorities (Volume D of this Application) to modify or destroy all other archaeological sites in the Proposed Designation with a HHMP as a condition of the authorities.</p>
Ecology	

Actual or potential effect / type of effect	Scale of effect (post mitigation proposed by NZTA)
<p>Terrestrial Effects: Potential adverse effects include vegetation loss, habitat loss and fragmentation injury or death of indigenous fauna during construction works and from vehicle collisions, and operational disturbance including from noise, vibration and artificial lighting.</p>	<p>Less than Minor to More than Minor residual adverse effects are identified for vegetation and Hochstetter’s frogs as detailed in Table 12.</p> <p>Mitigation for the effects on vegetation includes minimisation of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss; replacement planting for kauri trees and any indigenous plant species with ‘Very High’ or ‘High’ value; mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the three indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites”; including for the purpose of protected fauna and maintenance and monitoring requirements for habitat enhancement and mitigation planting.</p> <p>Establishing and implementation of Bat and vegetation management protocols during vegetation clearance is also promoted.</p>
<p>Freshwater Effects: Potential adverse effects include stream and habitat loss from reclamation, stream realignment at spoil sites, stream realignment on natural ground, culverts and fish passage, Impacts on natural inland wetlands and potential effects on streams and wetlands due to groundwater drawdown.</p>	<p>Negligible to No More than Minor</p> <p>Mitigation includes like for like stream realignment, culvert design that allows for benthic habitat, typical flow conditions and fish passage. Wetland reestablishment and offset is recommended to mitigate high value wetland habitat impacted</p>
<p>Avifauna Effects: Potential adverse effects include habitat loss, injury/mortalities from construction works, and vehicle collisions and disturbance/displacement during operational phase.</p>	<p>Less than Minor</p> <p>Mitigation includes minimising habitat loss; preparation and implementation of an Avifauna Management Plan (AMP); and replacement, at a ratio of 1:1, any wetland features that may be utilised by cryptic marshbirds that include those located within Wetlands 13, 14, 15, 16 and 26.</p>
<p>Cultural Values</p>	
<p>NZTA understands potential adverse effects to cultural values include:</p> <p>Te Uri o Hau (as noted in the CIA in Appendix H of Volume A)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Effects from earthworks (disturbance) on the mauri of the whenua as a living system.. ▪ Fragmentation of the cultural landscape. ▪ Damage to areas of highest value for Te Uri o Hau rangatiratanga. ▪ Severance of cultural connections. ▪ Effects on intergenerational wellbeing and hapū aspirations. ▪ Long term construction effects on Te Uri o Hau and all communities living near these sites. <p>Patuharakeke (as noted in the CIA in Appendix G of Volume A)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Further degradation of the natural environment and Papatūānuku.. ▪ Significant permanent effects on their lands, waters and taonga.. ▪ Severance of access to culturally important sites.. 	<p>NZTA has actively and ongoingly engaged with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau to integrate cultural, environmental and spiritual values into the Project. Hapū involvement from early project stages through route selection and design has informed alignment decisions, avoidance of wāhi tapu and culturally significant sites, and the development of mitigation measures.</p> <p>Following the CIAs received from Te Uri o Hau and Patuharakeke, NZTA is committed to working with hapū on the management of cultural effects through the continued involvement of hapū in the Project and identifying associated outcomes.</p>

Actual or potential effect / type of effect	Scale of effect (post mitigation proposed by NZTA)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Effects on water quality from earthworks and sediment release to waterways. ▪ Destruction of habitat, including streams and wetlands (diminish freshwater taonga species habitat) and Taonga species. This includes fragmentation and edge effects.. ▪ Hydrological disruption.. ▪ Effects associated with road stormwater discharge. ▪ Risk of mortality to certain Taonga species (including Hochstetter's Frog, mokomoko individuals, ika and tuna). ▪ Cultural effects associated with the disturbance of known archaeological sites, and ancestors burial sites. ▪ Spiritual and cultural effects on the Piroa. ▪ Cultural effects from cross-catchment translocation of earth and gravel. ▪ Carbon emissions. <p>Te Parawhau</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The volume of earthworks, particularly within the Brynderwyn Hills area. In addition, Te Parawhau had raised concerns with the use of material haul route and expressed a preference for use of local roads for the transport of material between Earthworks Zones. ▪ Impacts of the Project on undisturbed / natural sites, terrestrial and freshwater environments within the Brynderwyn Hills area and a preference for the Project following the existing / developed alignment. ▪ The use of culverts and stream realignments, with particular impacts on, and loss of habitat for, indigenous freshwater fauna. ▪ Impacts on sites of cultural and historical significance. ▪ Impacts on rakau rangatira sites, particularly existing Kahikatea stands near the entry to Waipū. 	
Land Contamination	
<p>Potentially adverse (permanent) effects to human health and the environment regarding disturbance of soil in relation to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Five HAIL sites are identified within the Proposed Designation, of which only one is classified as moderate-risk and intersected by the Indicative Alignment (the Plant Nursery and Market Garden site); and ▪ Unexpected contamination at BH2B_1160 that is located within the Proposed Designation. 	<p>Less than Minor on the four identified HAIL sites within the Proposed Designation that are avoided by the Indicative Alignment.</p> <p>Minor on the two identified HAIL sites intersected by the Indicative Alignment, being the Plant Nursery and Market Garden and the BH2B_1160 sites.</p> <p>Mitigation includes undertaking a DSI; preparing a Contaminated Soils Management Plan (CSMP) for any medium risk sites impacted and for the accidental discovery at BH2B_1160 and a Remedial Action Plan (RAP), if the CSMP identifies contaminated soils requiring remediation; and the preparation of a Site Validation Report following the completion of a RAP (if required).</p> <p>Specific management of soil (reuse framework) and groundwater, with possible groundwater treatment measures required for area impacted at BH2B_1160.</p>
Construction Water	
Potential adverse construction effects regarding:	Minor

Actual or potential effect / type of effect	Scale of effect (post mitigation proposed by NZTA)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Discharge of sediment to surface water from earthworks during both rain and flood events. ▪ Discharge of sediment from in-stream activities and changes to flow. ▪ Discharge of other contaminants (such as oils, fuels and cement). 	<p>Mitigation includes structural and non-structural controls, preparation of a Construction Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (CESCP) and Site Specific CESCP; Construction staging and sequencing with progressive stabilisation; Non-Structural Measures such as chemical treatment, weather response, winter works restrictions; and a Continuous Improvement Monitoring Programme.</p>
Operational Stormwater and Flooding	
<p>Operational Stormwater effects: Potentially adverse operational (permanent) effects regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increase stormwater runoff volumes and peak flows that could result in increased flooding in downstream watercourses. ▪ Stormwater runoff may contain contaminants such as sediment and hydrocarbons, impacting water quality. If untreated, such runoff could affect the health of ecosystems, agriculture, and watercourses. ▪ Effects on freshwater ecology due to installation of culverts and stream diversion. 	<p>Less than Minor</p> <p>Mitigation proposed includes best industry practice stormwater design to manage residual effects.</p>
<p>Flooding Effects: Potentially adverse operational (permanent) effects regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ A predicted localised increase in maximum flood levels outside the Proposed Designation in specific locations. ▪ Increased flood levels for one habitable building outside of the Proposed Designation. 	<p>Minor</p> <p>NZTA has proposed conditions to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ ensure that the Project will not, as far as reasonably practicable, increase water levels in the 100-yearARI (Average Recurrence Interval) event by more than: ▪ 100 mm vertically in areas that are outside the Proposed Designation at the time of construction and outside the banks of a watercourse or wetland; and ▪ 0 mm above floor level of any habitable building in areas outside the site. ▪ demonstrate that any headwater ponding upstream of any Project culvert in the 100-year ARI event is contained within either: ▪ Land within the Proposed Designation at the time of construction; or ▪ An existing watercourse, wetland, or floodplain.
Groundwater and Settlement	
<p>Potential adverse construction and operational effects regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Groundwater from construction dewatering and depressurisation. ▪ Baseflow to wetlands and streams from permanent dewatering. ▪ Reduction in groundwater drainage for realigned streams on top of spoil sites. ▪ Neighbouring groundwater users. ▪ Settlement on nearby structures due to groundwater drawdown. ▪ Groundwater quality. 	<p>Less than Minor to Minor</p> <p>Mitigation includes surface water augmentation of affected streams and wetlands where necessary; ensuring the Project does not adversely impact ground and surface water takes or provide alternative water supplies if required; and remodelling following Detailed Design to confirm impacts.</p>
Dust	
<p>Potentially moderate adverse construction dust effects regarding:</p>	<p>No more than Minor</p> <p>Mitigation includes the preparation of an DMP to manage dust. Other mitigation measures and controls may be</p>

Actual or potential effect / type of effect	Scale of effect (post mitigation proposed by NZTA)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Loading and off-loading of vehicles with spoil, substrate, and aggregate. ▪ Resuspension of dust from exposed surfaces. ▪ Blasting. ▪ Rock crushing. 	included in the DMP for specific activities, such as machinery use or blasting.
Highly Productive Land	
Potential adverse effects on HPL include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Potential reduction in productive capacity through fragmentation or reduction in the size of property titles. ▪ Excessive compaction resulting in reduction of productive capacity of land. 	Less than Minor No mitigation is proposed. Effects have already been avoided to the extent practicable via route selection.

D3. Traffic and Transport

The Assessment of Transport Effects (**Appendix D1** of this Volume) provides a detailed analysis of the construction and operational effects on the land transport network generated by the Project.

The Project has been evaluated under two scenarios based on the Northland Corridor Model⁴³ (the Model), developed to determine the effects of the Project when compared to the baseline for the 2054 forecast year. The two scenarios predict forecast years 2034, 2044 and 2054, and are known as:

- **Reference Case Scenario** – This scenario considers the future transport network without the Project – i.e. the existing situation. This scenario includes all anticipated land use and transport network changes but assumes that the Project is not constructed.
- **Project Scenario** – This scenario has the same network, land use, and demand assumptions as the Reference Case, but it includes the Project. The Project is modelled using the Indicative Alignment as a four-lane highway connecting SH1 in the south via an interim roundabout intersection at Baldrock Road, and to SH1 just south of Waipū through an interim tie-in at Millbrook Road / The Braigh.

D3.1. Construction Traffic Effects

While a detailed construction methodology has not been developed, the general nature and scale of effects of construction traffic from the Project are well understood based on similar highway projects. Construction activities for the Project that have the potential to impact traffic, and the surrounding transport network include:

- Arrival and departure of construction workers in light vehicles;
- Delivery of plant and materials using HCVs;
- Movement of bulk earthworks; and
- Construction activities close to a live highway (SH1).

D3.1.1. Light and heavy vehicle movements

Light vehicle traffic movements during construction are primarily generated by construction workers traveling to and from site, and visitors to site offices. Traffic modelling indicates that the surrounding network will generally operate with low levels of congestion during the forecasted period of the Project’s construction activities. Effects from light vehicle traffic generated by the Project are expected to be no

⁴³ Northland Corridor Model – Base Model Development [Report 10722-PTA-230-TR-RPT-0007]

more than minor effects, as these are temporary and localised to the vicinity of compound access points and at the beginning and end of the working day.

Heavy vehicle movements to and from the site (Proposed Designations) will predominantly comprise truck-and-trailer units associated with pavement and aggregate material delivery. Earthwork movements for the Project will be larger and self-contained (following the delivery of construction plant), with no interaction with the live state highway or local road networks. The estimated heavy vehicle movements for importation of pavement material during the construction period of the Project, per day, are anticipated to be 132 per day for Zone 1, 55 per day for Zone 2, 46 per day for Zone 3 and 45 per day for Zone 4. The numbers of heavy vehicle movements are conservative and in practice, construction traffic volumes are likely to be lower than estimated, particularly during peak periods. On this basis, the assessed effects represent a worst-case scenario, and actual impacts on the local network during construction of the Project are likely to be lower.

Given the proximity of the Project's proposed haul route crossing to SH12, an analysis of the existing SH1/SH12 intersection was undertaken to assess effects during construction works. The assessment concludes that the traffic volumes will be slightly higher in the evening peak period than in morning peak, the intersection will continue to operate satisfactorily in the morning peak with minimal queues and delays along the existing SH1 corridor, and that the intersection is predicted to reach capacity during the evening peak.

D3.1.2. Construction Safety

The crash history of the existing SH1 corridor was examined within Section 4.3.4 of the Assessment of Transport Effects (**Appendix D1** of this Volume) at the indicative SAP locations to assess how additional construction traffic could increase existing safety risks. The assessment found that some safety risks would exist during construction, with the SH1/SH12 Interchange having a high-risk interface due to the frequency and severity of turning crashes recorded in the crash history. Additionally, the indicative SAP locations for Earthworks Zone 2 and Finlayson Brook Road present specific hazards related to both visibility and vehicle control, which align with previous incidents at these locations.

D3.1.3. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

The Assessment of Transport Effects recommends that the construction traffic effects are managed through the preparation and implementation of a Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP), supported by Site-Specific Traffic Management Plans (SSTMPs) where proposed construction activities interface with the live road network. The CTMP would set out the overarching framework for managing construction traffic and temporary traffic management for the Project as a whole, while the SSTMPs would address location-specific interfaces, including tie-ins, realignments, and SAPs. The formation of these plans is generally required by land transport legislation,⁴⁴ and falls within the matters dealt with under the operational and safety powers of the relevant Road Controlling Authorities.

The assessment recommends that the CTMP and SSTMPs are prepared by the contractor and submitted for approval by the relevant Road Controlling Authorities (NZTA, KDC and WDC) prior to the commencement of construction activities for each stage of works.

Subject to the implementation of comprehensive CTMP and SSTMPs, in accordance with the Road Controlling Authorities requirements, any actual or potential construction traffic effects are assessed as minor and can be managed appropriately, with proportionate mitigation applied at SAPs with pre-existing safety risks under the SSTMP framework.

⁴⁴ The Land Transport Rule: Setting of Speed Limits 2024, rule 7.2(1).

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

NZTA has not proposed any specific mitigation in the designation conditions as CTMP and SSTMPs will be prepared by the contractor and submitted for approval by the relevant Road Controlling Authorities (NZTA, KDC and WDC) prior to the commencement of construction activities for each stage of works.

Overall, with the implementation of the CTMP and SSTMP process with the relevant Road Controlling Authorities, construction traffic effects of the Project are expected to be less than minor.

D3.2. Operational Transport Effects

The assessment of operational transport effects indicates that the Project results in overall significant positive effects when compared with the Reference Case Scenario, including improvements to safety, resilience, and corridor performance.

D3.2.1. Traffic volumes

The Project Scenario considers two-way Annual Average Daily Traffic (AADT) along the existing SH1 and the Indicative Alignment. Daily traffic volumes on the existing SH1 corridor between Baldrock Road and Millbrook Road are expected to reduce significantly once the Project is operational, with approximately 3,000 vehicles per day (vpd) in 2054, being a decrease of approximately 84%. Traffic volumes along the Indicative Alignment between Baldrock Road and Millbrook Road are expected to be approximately 19,400 vpd in 2054.

The reduction of traffic on the existing SH1 and other routes surrounding the new Project route, will improve traffic operations along these routes, particularly at intersections where side road traffic delays will reduce due to lower opposing traffic flows.

Freight volumes are expected to increase between Auckland and Northland. Once the Project is operational, it is expected that HCVs will prefer to use the new Project route over the existing SH1 corridor. The reduced travel times, improved geometry, and improved predictable journeys on the Project will be more attractive to HCVs, as their value of time and desire for travel time certainty are higher than for other vehicles.

The assessment finds that numbers of HCVs using the existing SH1 route in 2054 are predicted to be 90% lower in the Project Scenario. Overall, the Project is expected to have a positive impact on the performance and safety of freight.

D3.2.2. Travel times and reliability

Traffic modelling indicates the Project will result in travel time savings on both the existing SH1 corridor and along the Indicative Alignment in 2054. Travel times along the existing SH1 corridor would reduce between 16-26%, and travel times along the Indicative Alignment would be 23-30% lower in the Project Scenario.

The greatest travel time improvements are anticipated to occur in the northbound evening peak between Baldrock Road and Millbrook Road, where travel times will drop from approximately 18 minutes (within the Reference Case Scenario) to 14 minutes (in the Project Scenario).

Once the Project is operational, travel time reliability will significantly improve as the Project will provide a new state highway alignment with higher design speeds and significantly improved geometry, enabling higher, more consistent vehicle speeds and reducing interactions between faster and slower vehicles. These features will support more stable travel times under a range of conditions. The Project will, therefore, enable individuals and businesses to plan their travel with increased certainty and will contribute to a more resilient network that can accommodate minor disruptions without significant variability in travel times.

D3.2.3. Interchanges

The Project's proposed interchanges along the Indicative Alignment are expected to operate satisfactorily in Project Scenario years 2044 and 2054 during the morning, evening and holiday periods. These include at the Project's interchanges proposed at Baldrock Road, SH12 and Waipū (The Braigh) locations. The Signalised and Unsignalised Intersection Design and Research Aid (SIDRA) movement summaries for each intersection are provided in the Assessment of Transport Effects (**Appendix D1** of this Volume).

D3.2.4. Road Safety

In 2054, the AADT along the Indicative Alignment is forecast to be approximately 19,500 vpd. The Project is expected to deliver significantly improved safety performance when compared to the existing SH1 corridor within the Proposed Designation, as it will incorporate a range of safety enhancements that include:

- A four-lane divided motorway with separate northbound and southbound traffic, which will reduce the potential for head on crashes.
- Removing through traffic from the existing SH1 corridor and local road network, including HCVs that contribute to increased crash risk.
- Introducing a grade separated interchange at SH12, which will reduce turning related conflicts and intersection crash risk.
- Improving horizontal and vertical alignment, including gentler gradients and wider curves which reduce the likelihood of loss of control crashes.
- Reducing traffic volumes along the existing SH1 corridor, which will improve safety conditions for the remaining local access movements that continue to use that corridor.
- Classifying the new state highway as 'Limited Access', which restricts direct access points to the Indicative Alignment and removes private property accesses, reducing conflict points along the corridor.

The indicative percentage of reduction in Death and Serious Injury crashes through the use of specific design elements (for example continuous median and roadside barriers, wider sealed shoulders and audio-tactile markings) are provided in the Assessment of Transport Effects (**Appendix D1** of this Volume).

Where the Project alters private property access to the local road network, safe access will be reinstated or alternative arrangements provided to maintain connectivity for landowners.

The introduction of a high-quality alternative route to the existing SH1 alignment is also expected to reduce the impacts of incidents, such as crashes and natural events like slips and flooding, on travel along this section of the transport network. Overall, this will result in improved trip reliability and resilience for those travelling between Auckland and Northland.

Sensitivity testing of the interim tie-ins at Baldrock Road and Waipū has been undertaken using 2054 forecast traffic volumes to understand performance if delivery of the upgrades of the adjacent sections of the Northland Corridor project is delayed. The results of that analysis demonstrate that the interim tie-ins will need to be designed to meet NZTA standards and Safe System outcomes, including appropriate geometry, visibility, speed environment, signage/markings and lighting, with safety confirmed through Detailed Design and road safety audit processes. The SIDRA movement summaries for each interim tie-in are provided in the Assessment of Transport Effects (**Appendix D1** of this Volume).

D3.2.5. Public Transport Network Performance

The Project will have minimal effect on the performance of existing or potential public transport along the existing SH1 corridor and the new state highway.

D3.2.6. Pedestrian and Cycle Network Performance

Pedestrians and cyclists will generally be prohibited from using the mainline carriageway of the Project, consistent with its function as a high-speed motorway. Pedestrian and cyclist connectivity on local roads will be maintained where they intersect with the Project. Grade-separation of impacted local roads will ensure that local community severance is avoided.

With the Project operational, traffic volumes on the existing SH1 are forecast to reduce by approximately 84% (dropping to ~3,000 vpd) in 2054. The reduction in general traffic and heavy vehicle movements is expected to offer a more suitable environment for recreational cycling, supporting active mode connectivity for the local community.

D4. Noise and Vibration

An Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects (contained in **Appendix D2** of this Volume) and an Assessment of Operational Noise Effects (**Appendix D3** of this Volume) provide a detailed analysis of noise and vibration effects from the construction and operation of the Project, including the assessment methodology and assumptions that were followed in preparing each assessment. The following sections provide a summary of the construction and operational noise and vibration effects from the Project.

D4.1. Construction Noise and Vibration Effects

The following construction activities anticipated for the Project have been assessed for their likely noise and vibration effects:

- Earthworks activity, including in the indicative spoil areas;
- Rock excavation and crushing;
- Bored piling (e.g. bridge construction);
- Impact piling (e.g. retaining walls and bridges construction);
- Sheet piling (e.g. culverts installation); and
- Road compaction (e.g. using vibratory roller compaction).

The Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects predicted that the likely construction noise from the above activities on Noise Sensitive Activities (i.e. dwellings), will comply with the noise criteria set out in NZS 6803:1999 “*Acoustics – Construction Noise*” (NZS 6803).⁴⁵ The predicted noise levels are not unreasonable and will be low enough so as to not result in any adverse effect.

In terms of vibration effects, the assessment concludes that the construction vibration criteria, in accordance with the relevant standards⁴⁶ for the protection of buildings will be complied with at all Sensitive Use Buildings. The likely vibration levels are not unreasonable and will be of low magnitude so as to not result in any adverse effect. In addition, there will be no risk of cosmetic building damage to any Sensitive Use Building arising from the Project’s construction activities.

There remains the potential for a small number of Noise Sensitive Activities to receive intermittent non-compliant noise levels and vibration levels above the amenity criterion where construction works are closest unless mitigation is implemented, which is discussed further below.

The assessment recommends that any vibration-inducing construction activities within 3 metres of the existing First Gas pipeline should be monitored to ensure no damage to the pipe occurs.

Construction blasting has not been assessed in terms of specific locations within the Proposed Designation in the Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects. The need for construction

⁴⁵ The standard is referenced in the OKDP - Rule 12.10.15 and the WDP Section NAV-R3.

⁴⁶ German Industry Norm DIN 4150-3 (2016) ‘Structural vibration – Part 3 Effects of vibration on structures’ (DIN 4150-3), which addresses protection of buildings from any damage; and British Standard 5228-2: 2009 ‘Code of practice for noise and vibration control on construction and open sites’, which takes account of people’s amenity.

blasting will be determined at the Detailed Design stage. However, if required, the assessment concludes that blasting can be designed and undertaken to readily comply with the relevant noise and vibration criteria. Should the Indicative Alignment move closer to the Proposed Designation boundary, the assessment confirms blasting should be restricted to areas where there are no Sensitive Use Buildings within 160 metres, or that the blast design should be carried out to ensure the relevant building damage criteria are complied with.

D4.1.1. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialists

The Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects recommends mitigation and management measures through preparation and implementation of a Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP) for construction activities.

Generally, the recommended mitigation measures within the CNVMP for construction noise levels could include providing temporary noise barriers, timing of high noise works to occur when people are not at home, using lower noise and well maintained equipment, and having good site management to avoid unnecessary noise generation. Residual effects can be managed with proactive communication and engagement with affected parties, on-site staff training and noise surveys to verify predictions.

Where infringements of the adopted noise and vibration criteria are predicted, inclusive of applying the general mitigation measures as set out in the CNVMP, the assessment recommends preparation of further Schedules to the CNVMP to set out best-practice responses implemented by the contractor to reduce potential adverse effects.

In relation to vibration, the assessment recommends reduction of these effects via refined construction methodologies, such as avoiding the use of high vibration inducing activities (e.g. using bored piling rather than impact or vibro piling techniques) or choosing smaller equipment (e.g. choosing a 6-8T vibro roller rather than a 10-12T vibro roller). The assessment also recommends engagement with potentially affected Sensitive Use Building occupants, in accordance with the CNVMP, to avoid concern about vibration being felt without warning.

The Project will be constructed in the vicinity of existing network utility services. While most are well beyond the safe distance of 1 metre; a First Gas pipeline will be crossed by construction works. Where high vibration works are proposed within 3 m of the First Gas pipeline, the assessment recommends vibration surveys and observation of construction works are to ensure vibration levels remain either within the relevant criteria, or the construction works do not result in damage to the pipeline.

If blasting is undertaken as part of the Project's construction works, the assessment recommends a prior notification system be established that notifies Protected Premises and Facilities (PPFs) and occupiers within a certain radius via text or email of impending blasts. Except in the case of emergencies, the assessment recommends blasting be undertaken within a specific timeframe (e.g. Monday to Friday, 10am to 3pm), with weekly prior notice, so that residents and occupants in the vicinity have certainty about blast timing and effects.

The assessment concludes the recommended mitigation and management measures will ensure proactive management of any adverse noise or vibration effects. With these mitigation measures in place, the assessment concludes that the Project can be constructed within reasonable noise and vibration levels. The adverse effects of construction noise and vibration cause by the Project are therefore expected to be no more than minor given the limited duration and purpose of the works and with proposed mitigation measures, despite resulting in audible differences in noise at some receivers.

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

To mitigate potential adverse construction noise and vibration effects, NZTA is proposing conditions to:

- Ensure construction works, including blasting if undertaken, comply with the noise standards set out in NZS 6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction Noise (NZS 6803) and the vibration standards set out in

German Industry Norm DIN 4150-3 (2016) 'Structural vibration – Part 3 Effects of vibration on structures' (DIN 4150-3);

- Prepare a Schedule, in consultation with the owners and occupiers of the sites subject to the Schedule, that will set out the Best Practicable Option (BPO) for minimising the noise and/or vibration effects of an activity that cannot comply with the abovementioned criteria;
- Prepare a Schedule, in consultation with Transpower and First Gas, for works in the vicinity of existing network utility services;
- Provide on-site staff training to ensure adherence to the noise and vibration standards during construction;
- Offer of building condition survey to undertake a pre-construction building survey to any buildings that will potentially be affected by the exceedance of vibration standards, and post-construction survey; and
- Implement a 3 m high x 70 m long temporary noise barrier, if noise exceedance is expected at the dwelling located at 4800 SH1 which is located 50 metres away from a fill site (if the fill site cannot be retracted or if property is not purchased).

The above conditions will appropriately manage adverse construction noise and vibration effects of the Project in line with the outcomes identified in the Construction Noise and Vibration Assessment, and the level of effects are therefore expected to be less than minor.

D4.2. Operational Noise Effects

The Assessment of Operational Noise Effects assesses the actual and potential effects arising from the operational traffic noise from the Project, in accordance with the relevant standards and guidelines.⁴⁷ The Project introduces a new noise source into a currently greenfield area. While some of the existing PPFs are already significantly affected by operational traffic noise from the existing SH1 alignment, other PPFs are generally unaffected due to their remote location from existing major roads.

The operational noise effects assessment splits the Proposed Designation into four specific sectors, which are separate to the Project's Earthworks Zones, as follows and shown on Figure 6 below:

- Sector 1 – North of Brynderwyn Hills;
- Sector 2 – Brynderwyn Hills;
- Sector 3 – Southern approach to the Brynderwyn Hills; and
- Sector 4 – Southern area of the Project.

⁴⁷ NZS 6806:2010 Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads (NZ 6806); NZTA Guide to assessing road-traffic noise, V2.0, February 2024; and the UK Planning Guidance.

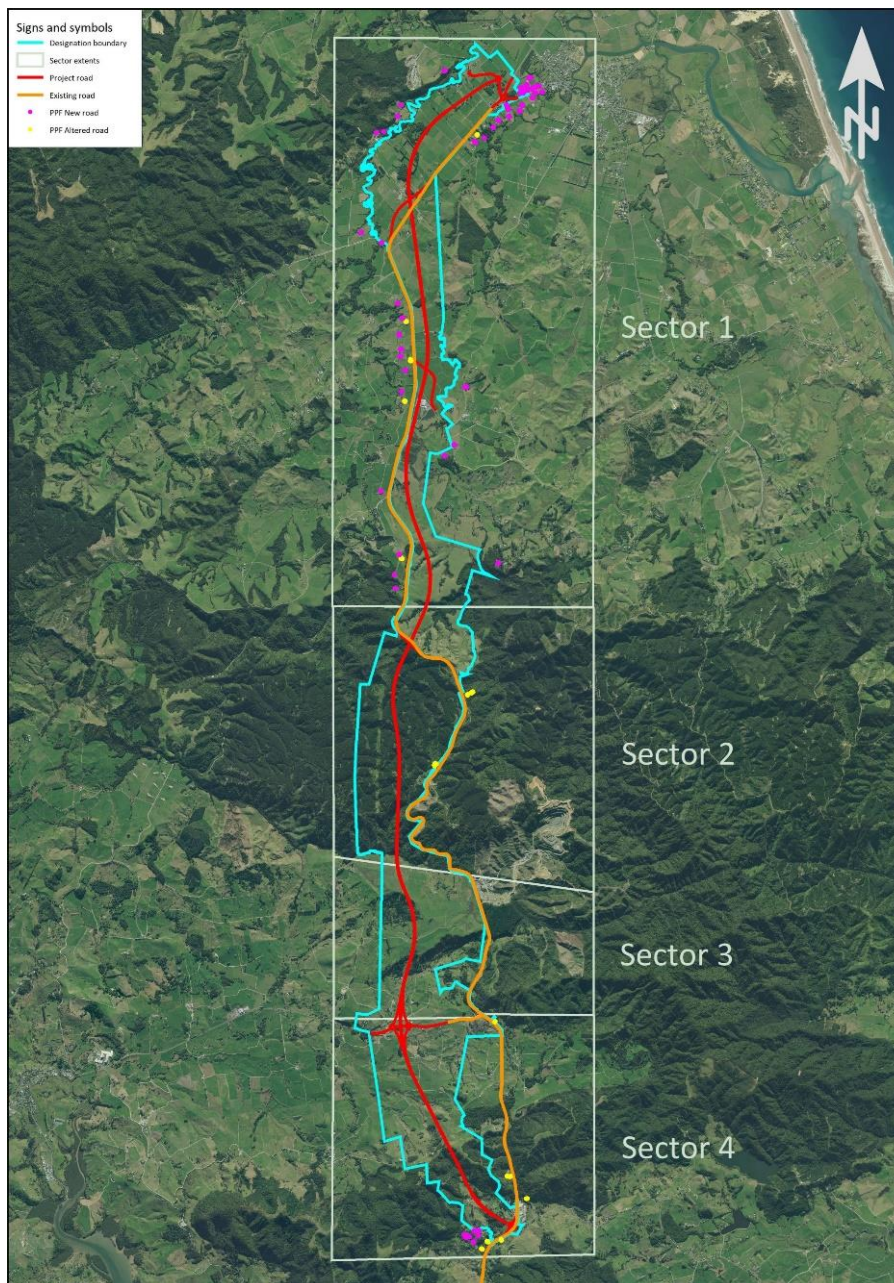


Figure 6: Map of the four sectors along the Indicative Alignment for the Assessment of Operational Noise Effects

Below is a summary of the operational noise effects assessment on each of the above sectors:

- All PPFs assessed under Altered Road criteria of the relevant standards in Sector 1 would receive lower noise levels due to the Indicative Alignment moving further away from PPFs, and the existing SH1 alignment will carry only a fraction of current traffic. Those assessed under New Road criteria would see a range of changes, from significant reductions where the alignment is further away and terrain provides shielding (up to 9dB reduction), to significant increases (up to 9 dB) where it is closer and shielding is lost. Overall, the assessment concludes noise levels would not cause adverse effects on sleep disturbance and generally would be reasonable in an outdoor setting. The assessment recommends mitigation, as discussed below, in specific locations of Sector 1 to address PPFs that experience a noise level increase from the Indicative Alignment.
- PPFs in Sector 2 are predicted to receive noise levels of around 48 to 53 dB $L_{Aeq(24h)}$, 11 to 14 decibels below existing noise levels. Overall, the assessment concludes the Project will have no adverse operational noise impact on Sector 2 PPFs and will in fact have a positive impact on noise levels. As such the assessment does not propose any mitigation in Sector 2.

- Sector 3 contains no PPFs.
- All PPFs in Sector 4 are predicted to receive levels below 57 dB $L_{Aeq(24h)}$. For many Altered Road PPFs, existing levels up to 76 dB $L_{Aeq(24h)}$ would be significantly reduced, benefiting residents who are currently exposed to much higher noise. Overall, the assessment concludes the Project will have no adverse noise impact and as such does not propose any mitigation in Sector 4.

The assessment notes that should the Indicative Alignment move within the Proposed Designation Boundary, the predicted noise levels under the New Road scenario have the potential to change.

D4.2.1. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

The Assessment of Operational Noise Effects recommends that an 'LN3 (EPA7 40 mm)' type of asphalt surface (or similar), which is designed to reduce noise effects, is used for road surfaces / sealing between the following approximate chainages (CH) along the Indicative Alignment, for the mitigation of operational noise effects:

- CH9,400 – CH10,800 (Waipū interim tie to the SH1 overpass south thereof)
- CH13,900 – CH16,900 (Glenmohr Road realignment to the northern approach of the Brynderwyn Hills)

With this recommended mitigation in place, the assessment concludes the actual noise effects on all PPFs will be low, with many PPFs receiving an improvement over existing circumstances as the state highway carriageway and high traffic volumes moving further away from receivers.

Given that the Indicative Alignment may move within the Proposed Designation, the assessment recommends the mitigation measures are confirmed at the time of Detailed Design, to confirm the final extent of low noise road surfaces.

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

NZTA will adopt the recommendations by the Assessment of Operational Noise Effects outlined above and a condition is proposed to that effect. Additionally, NZTA proposes conditions to:

- Ensure the design of the Project, including at the Detailed Design stage, complies with the operational noise criteria categories set out in the relevant standards and guidelines;
- Provide written notice to the affected property owners, if noise mitigation measures outside of the Proposed Designation are required to be undertaken; and
- Provide a report within 12 months of installation of any noise mitigation measures, to ensure compliance with the relevant standards and guidelines. The report will be provided to the relevant local authorities (KDP and WDP) for information.

With the above mitigation measures in place, the actual noise effects of the Project on PPFs will be less than minor.

D5. Landscape, Natural Character and Visual Amenity

The Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (**Appendix D4** of this Volume) provides a detailed analysis of landscape, natural character and visual amenity effects of the Project including the framework and methodology used for the assessment. The assessment considered the actual and potential effects generated by the Indicative Alignment, as well as any future proposed changes to the alignment within the Proposed Designation.

The assessment split the Proposed Designations into six specific landscapes, which are separate to the Project's Earthworks Zones, for the purpose of assessing the actual and potential landscape, natural

character and visual amenity effects of the Project. The locations of these six landscapes are shown on Figure 1 of the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (**Appendix D4** of this Volume).

The assessment also separated the effects assessment into two parts: assessment on landscape and visual amenity (temporary and permanent effects), and assessment on the natural character of wetlands, rivers and their margins. These parts are detailed in the sub-sections below.

D5.1. Temporary Landscape and Visual Amenity Effects

In summary, the assessment concludes the actual and potential temporary landscape and visual effects during construction include:

- Potential effects on the natural character of streams due to erosion and sediment discharge from exposed ground.
- Potential effects on natural values through vegetation clearance to enable construction, beyond that required for the finished road.
- Visual effects because of the greater footprint and raw appearance of bare earth during construction, compared to the finished Project.
- Additional visual effects arising from construction yards and storage sites.

D5.2. Operational Landscape and Visual Amenity Effects

In general, the assessment concludes the Project has the potential to generate adverse visual amenity effects when compared with areas with predominantly farmland character and rural landscape values within the Proposed Designation.

More specifically, the assessment identifies effects across the six landscapes prior to mitigation to include:

- High level adverse effects from the removal or partial removal of stands of distinctive kahikatea / tōtara forest at the gateway of Waipū, and adverse effects on views from three dwellings in the vicinity, which could generate moderate to moderate-high adverse effects. The location of this kahikatea / tōtara forest is shown in Figure 2 of the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (**Appendix D4** of this Volume).
- High-level, localised adverse effects and moderate overall adverse effects on the northern approaches to the Brynderwyn Hills with respect to the loss, or partial loss, of kahikatea / tōtara stands and potentially moderate to moderate-high level effects on views from two surrounding dwellings. The location of these kahikatea / tōtara stands is shown in Figure 3 of the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (**Appendix D4** of this Volume).
- The proposed earthworks footprint area in conjunction with the extent of spoil disposal required in the gullies of the Brynderwyn Hills summit area may cause a moderate-high level of adverse landscape and visual effect, with potential moderate adverse effects with respect to the northern slopes.
- High adverse landscape and visual effects in the southern escarpment to the Brynderwyn Hills landscape area, which includes an ONL, attributed to the clearance of bush, proposed batters, the fill embankment across the Piroa Stream, encroachment into natural streams and the implications of these on ONL values.
- Moderate adverse effects on overall landscape and amenity values on the southern approach to the Brynderwyn Hills landscape area attributed to modification of the landform, clearance of native vegetation, modification to small streams and wetlands and exposed cut and fill batters. In addition, there will be moderate effects on views from one dwelling.
- Moderate-high adverse effect on landscape and visual amenity on the volcanic hills and Pukekaroro Stream valley within the immediate landscape due to landform modification and clearance of native bush; and moderate adverse effects on the views from one dwelling.

D5.3. Effects on Natural Character

In general, the assessment finds that the Project has the potential to generate high-level adverse effects on the natural character of streams and rivers within the Proposed Designation, including but not limited to the Waihoihoi River and Piroa Stream. More specifically, the assessment concludes the actual and potential effects across the six landscape areas prior to mitigation include:

- High localised effects on the natural character at a meander loop of the Waihoihoi River on the northern approach to the Brynderwyn Hills.
- Where there is a combination of fill embankment and extensive spoil disposal in the summit area of the Brynderwyn Hills a potentially moderate-high adverse effect on the natural character of the headwater tributaries of the Ahuroa River, due to the loss of natural watercourses, modification of landform and the loss of native vegetation. Also, potentially moderate adverse effects on the natural character of the headwater tributaries of the Waihoihoi River on the northern slopes.
- Overall, the Project could have a potentially high adverse effects on the natural character of the Piroa Stream and its two tributaries within the 'Brynderwyn Hills and bush margins' ONL caused by fill embankments, culverts, and clearance of native vegetation.
- Moderate adverse effects on the natural character of three streams (and potential wetlands) located in the southern approach to the Brynderwyn Hills landscape area created by the Indicative Alignment occupying part of the stream or wetland, including indicative spoil disposal upstream of the Indicative Alignment and the introduction of prominent infrastructure to a rural setting.
- Substantial modification to the Pukekaroro Stream, resulting in a moderate-high level of effect on the natural character on this section of the Pukekaroro Stream.
- The extent of native bush within the headwater catchment of the Pukekaroro Stream valley will be reduced, detracting from perceptions of natural character as the Indicative Alignment will become the dominant feature of the valley. The indicative spoil disposal site will result in additional bush clearance. It is anticipated that the stream within the headwater valley will be reduced from 'Moderate' to 'Moderate-Low' natural character, resulting in a moderate-high degree of effect on the natural character of the headwater of the Pukekaroro Stream.

D5.4. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

The assessment concludes the Proposed Designation fits the regional landscape pattern in the area, and partly avoids and reduces potential adverse effects through:

- Passing through a landscape that has developed in response to, and in the context of, the existing SH1 corridor. At the same time, the Indicative Alignment is typically offset to avoid the development along the existing highway alignment and is parallel to, and mostly between, the existing highway and the National Grid transmission line.
- Passing inland of Waipū, avoiding the more sensitive connections between Waipū and the coast.
- Following the natural route of the Ahuroa and Waihoihoi Rivers on the northern approaches to the Brynderwyn Hills.
- Climbing the northern flanks of the Brynderwyn Hills by following the leading spur at the head of the valley.
- Crossing the summit of the range at a modified location between the existing SH1 alignment and the National Grid transmission line.
- Passing through the volcanic hills south of the Brynderwyn Hills at a saddle where the hills are relatively low and the native bush cover is at its narrowest.

Where the landscape, visual amenity values and natural character effects (temporary and operational) are assessed in the report as moderate or higher, the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects recommends mitigation measures which are detailed in Table 11 below also provides the pre-mitigation level of effect for contrast.

Table 11: Summary of effects and the recommended mitigations for landscape and visual amenity values and natural character (temporary and operational) effects across the Proposed Designation boundary

Specific Landscape Area	Type and Level of Effects (pre-mitigation)	Recommended Mitigation	Level of effect (post mitigation)	Timescale of mitigation
Waipū Interim Tie-in	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High localised (landscape/visual) Very low (natural character) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Planting kahikatea / tōtara around the interim tie-in. 	Low-moderate or less	Some effects realised incrementally over 10+ years and the balance over 40+ years
Northern approaches to Brynderwyn Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moderate with localised high at kahikatea-totara stands (landscape/visual) Low for Ahuroa, localised effects at Waihoihoi River (natural character) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Revegetating fill batters with native species in certain locations (at the two overpasses and the west facing batters where the state highway is close to the existing SH1). Replacement planting of kahikatea / tōtara stands. Recreating an equivalent meander loop of the Waihoihoi River, restoring natural wetlands and riparian vegetation and configuring native planting to provide a buffer between the river and the road. 	Low-moderate or less	Some effects realised over 2 years and the balance incrementally over 10+ years
Brynderwyn Hills northern slopes and summit section	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moderate northern slopes section (landscape/visual) Moderate Waihoihoi tributaries (natural character) Moderate-high summit section (landscape/visual) Moderate-high Ahuroa tributaries (natural character) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Revegetation of cut and fill batters and spoil disposal sites (including stream diversions associated with spoil disposal). 	Low-moderate or less	Realised incrementally over 10+ years
Brynderwyn Hills southern escarpment (ONL)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High (landscape/visual) High (natural character) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Revegetating disturbed land either side of the road, including cut and fill batters. Replanting a 10 m wide riparian strip on the south side of the Piroa Stream. Naturalising the summit of the Brynderwyn Hills to extend the ONL values over a larger area. 	Low-moderate or less	Some effects realised incrementally over 10+ years and the balance over 40+ years
Southern Approaches to the Brynderwyn Hills	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moderate (landscape/visual) Moderate (natural character) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Revegetating cut and fill batters, stream margins and specific areas with native species. 	Low-moderate or less	Realised incrementally over 10+ years
Volcanic Hills and Pukekaroro Stream	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moderate-high and localised high (landscape/visual) Moderate-high (natural character) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Naturalising the diversions of the Pukekaroro Stream. Revegetating cut batters through the saddle area and within the upper parts of the tributary valley of the Pukekaroro Stream in native species. 	Low-moderate or less	Realised incrementally over 10+ years

Specific Landscape Area	Type and Level of Effects (pre-mitigation)	Recommended Mitigation	Level of effect (post mitigation)	Timescale of mitigation
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Planting with native species to soften the roundabout at the intersection of SH1 and interim link road 		

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

To mitigate the landscape, visual amenity values and natural character effects (temporary and operational) of the Project, NZTA proposes:

- To avoid the northern stand of Kahikatea located adjacent to existing SH1 and The Braigh in Waipū
- Conditions requiring the preparation of LCPs that will be submitted, as part of the Outline Plan(s) for the Project, to the relevant local authorities (KDP and WDP). The LCPs will be prepared by the contractor and will include drawings and descriptions (where appropriate) of the landscape planting to be implemented during the Project works. These include the confirmed extent and location of the proposed replacement of kahikatea / tōtara stands, revegetation of spoil disposal sites and the planting of indigenous riparian vegetation along the meander loop of the Waihoihoi River and the southern side of the Piroa Stream.

The exact extent and location of the proposed revegetation will be confirmed at the Detailed Design stage of the Project, in consultation with other specialists including ecologists.

With the above mitigation undertaken, the actual landscape, visual amenity values and natural character effects of the Project are considered to be minor initially, however as mitigation becomes more established and realised incrementally over time this would reduce to be less than minor.

D6. Heritage and Archaeology

An Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (**Appendix D5** of this Volume) has been prepared and provides a detailed overview and assessment of effects on heritage and archaeological sites that have the potential to be modified or destroyed by the Project. The assessment includes the assessment methodology that was followed, the values of the impacted site(s) and effects on those values, along with recommended mitigation.

A total of 13 recorded archaeological sites are located within the Proposed Designation boundary that have the potential to be modified or destroyed by the Project, subject to the final location of the Indicative Alignment. These sites predominantly comprise a mix of pā, pits and middens, and some European historic sites.

The assessment concludes that all of the land within the Proposed Designation could be comprehensively developed, leading to the possible modification or destruction of identified and potential unidentified archaeological remains. The exception to this is pā sites (there are four known sites identified within the boundary of the Proposed Designation), which will be avoided.

A detailed assessment is included within Volume D of the Substantive Application to support the application for Archaeological Authorities under the HNZPT. This assessment includes an appropriate assessment of effects under the RMA. In summary, the potential adverse effects on archaeology, were assessed as more than minor. An archaeological authority is being obtained for those sites with the potential to be modified or destroyed and a HHMP is proposed as a condition of this authority. Where effects are unavoidable, investigation, documentation, recording and reporting in accordance with accepted archaeological practice will be undertaken via implementation of a HHMP, prior to the commencement of construction activities.

D6.1. Mitigation

NZTA proposes an avoid condition in relation to all pā sites within the Proposed Designation to be located in the NOR conditions (**Section E2** of this Volume).

All other mitigation in relation to heritage and archaeology is located in Volume D.

D7. Ecology

Assessments of actual and potential effects have been prepared for Terrestrial ecology (**Appendix D6** of this Volume), Freshwater ecology (**Appendix D7** of this Volume), and Avifauna ecology (**Appendix D8** of this Volume). The ecological assessments set out the methodology that was followed in preparing each assessment, which include the guidelines⁴⁸ followed to determine the value and overall effect on each ecological subject. The combination of the three assessments provides the overall actual and potential ecological effects generated by the Project.

D7.1. Terrestrial Ecology

Tables 24 to 28 in the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of this Volume) provide a summary of the Project construction and operational effects on vegetation, native lizards, frogs, bats and invertebrates. They include both pre and post mitigation level of effect and recommended mitigation for vegetation, native lizards, frogs, bats and invertebrates.

These findings are summarised in Table 12 below. They include:

- Mitigation for kauri tree loss and compensation at a ratio of 50:1 for kauri trees larger than 50 cm DBH;
- Replacement planting for the loss of any indigenous plant species with 'Very High' or 'High' value, at a ratio of 1:1;
- Three indicative "Mitigation and Release Sites" to increase the area of native forest at the mitigation sites, provide alternative habitat and reduce fragmentation effects;
- Maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting to enable successful establishment; and
- Application of relevant protocols such as bat roost and biosecurity protocols.

⁴⁸ Ecological Impact Assessment. Environment Institute of Australia and New Zealand (EIANZ) guidelines for use in New Zealand: Terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems (2nd Edition).

Table 12: Summary of construction and operational effects of the Project on terrestrial ecology, level of effect and recommended mitigation

Ecological component / Species	Potential construction and/or operational effects from the Project	Unmitigated level of effect	Recommended Mitigation by Specialists	Mitigated Level of Effect
Vegetation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Direct loss of 18 ha of very high value indigenous vegetation, 7 ha of high value vegetation and 4 ha of moderate value vegetation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moderate to Very High 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimisation through Detailed Design and construction methodology Mitigation planting of pasture at the Northern and Southern Mitigation and Release Sites (as detailed in Section D7.1.1 below of this Report) totalling 39.5 ha. Replacement of rotational pine forestry with mitigation planting totalling 103.6 ha. Enhancement of existing vegetation with low to moderate ecological value at all three indicative Mitigation Sites (Northern, Central and Southern as detailed in Section D7.1.1 of this Report) totalling 15.6 ha. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effect on vegetation with very high and high ecological value will be 'High'. Effect on vegetation with moderate ecological value will be 'Low'.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Habitat fragmentation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'Very High' for areas comprising of very high and high value ecological vegetation types. 	Reduce fragmentation and edge effects at the Northern and Southern Mitigation Sites through infill and remediation planting.	High
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Permanent loss of <i>At Risk</i> or <i>Threatened</i> plants. And potential for spread of pathogens 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'Very High' for Kauri. 'Low' for other plant species. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimisation through Detailed Design and construction methodology Compensation planting at a ratio of 50:1 for trees larger than 50 cm Diameter at Breast Height (DBH). Application of Biosecurity Protocols 	Moderate
<p>Lizard Habitat loss and fragmentation</p> <p>Only one indigenous species, copper skink, has been confirmed on site. The effects on species that have not been confirmed on site are not considered.</p>	Direct loss of potential high value (<i>At Risk</i> lizard) habitat.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'High' for Copper skink. 'Very Low' to 'Low' for other species. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimisation through detailed design and construction methodology. Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing native vegetation at the three Mitigation Sites. Reduce fragmentation and edge effects at Northern and Southern Mitigation and Release Sites through stock exclusion, pest control and infill and remediation planting. Creation of habitat at the Central Mitigation and Release Site, providing higher quality connectivity between other habitat within the landscape. Reduce fragmentation and edge effects at North and South Mitigation Sites through stock exclusion, pest control and infill and remediation planting. Creation of habitat at the Central Mitigation site, providing higher quality connectivity between other habitat within the landscape. 	Low

Ecological component / Species	Potential construction and/or operational effects from the Project	Unmitigated level of effect	Recommended Mitigation by Specialists	Mitigated Level of Effect
Frogs The only native frog identified within the Proposed Designation is Hochstetter's Frog, which has a national threat classification of 'At Risk – Declining' and has a 'High' ecological value.	Direct loss of Hochstetter's frog habitat	Very High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimisation through Detailed Design and construction methodology. Mitigation enhancement and protection of existing riparian native vegetation at the Northern and Central Mitigation and Release Sites totalling 14.2 km (direct habitat loss) Mitigation for effects on Hochstetter's frogs are also addressed under the WAA in Volume C of the Substantive Application. 	High
	Habitat fragmentation	Very High	Reduce fragmentation and edge effects at the Northern and Central Mitigation and Release Sites through habitat enhancement totalling 11.7 km additional riparian enhancement.	High
	Indirect habitat loss and reduction in remaining habitat quality due to habitat fragmentation effects and associated edge effects.	High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimisation through habitat enhancement and buffer planting. Minimisation by ensuring spoil site and culvert design does not result in significant hydrological changes downstream of works impacting frog habitat. Mitigation via stormwater and run off management such as incorporating swales and detention ponds in the design. Mitigation by using increased culvert diameters to allow for upstream frog movements in low flow conditions. 	Low
	Injury or death during habitat removal and displacement with increase predation and resource pressure	Very High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Salvage and relocation within appropriate. seasonal constraints and under strict frog hygiene protocols. 	Low
	Indirect construction disturbance such as sedimentation, noise, lighting and vibration.	High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Best practice sediment and erosion control measures are implemented. Continuous water quality monitoring near streams with confirmed frog presence. Under the Wildlife Approval, undertaking the salvage of frogs prior to blasting or heavy vibration in nearby impacted streams where frogs may be adversely impacted by the work. 	Low
	Operational disturbance (noise, vibration, Artificial Light at Night (ALAN)).	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Staging works effectively to reduce ongoing operation disturbance to frogs. Ensuring frog hygiene protocols are strictly followed. 	Low
Bats Long-tailed bats have been identified within the Proposed	Direct loss of high potential bat habitat (roosting, foraging, and commuting)	Moderate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimisation through Detailed Design and construction methodology. Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing native vegetation at the three Mitigation and Release Sites allowed for under vegetation and frog mitigation. 	Low
	Habitat fragmentation.	High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduce fragmentation and edge effects at the Northern and Southern Mitigation and Release Sites through infill and remediation planting. 	Low

Ecological component / Species	Potential construction and/or operational effects from the Project	Unmitigated level of effect	Recommended Mitigation by Specialists	Mitigated Level of Effect
Designation, which are classified as 'Threatened – Nationally Critical' and have 'Very High' ecological value.			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vegetation and foraging habitat allowed for under vegetation and frog mitigation. 	
	Injury or death during vegetation removal.	Very High	Implementation of DOC's Bat Roost Protocol.	Low
	Mortality by vehicle collision.	Moderate	Retain/install bat hop-overs.	Low
	Indirect construction disturbance such as noise, vibration and lighting.	Moderate	Bat roost protocols	Low
	Operational disturbance from noise, vibration and lighting.	High	Restrictions on lighting in proximity to bat roost habitat.	Low
Invertebrate Habitats Invertebrates identified within the Proposed Designation include kauri snail and Amborhytida dunnaie which are classified as 'At Risk – Declining' with 'High' ecological value, and glow worms and Peripatus which are classified as 'Low' with 'Low' ecological value.	Direct loss of potential habitat Kauri snail and <i>A. dunniaie</i> ('High' value), peripatus ('Low' value) and glow worms ('Low' value).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'High' for Kauri snail and <i>A. dunniaie</i>. 'Low' for other notable species. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimisation through Detailed Design and construction methodology. Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing native vegetation at the Northern and Southern Mitigation and Release Sites . 	Low
	Indirect habitat loss and reduction in remaining habitat quality due to habitat fragmentation and associated edge effects.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'High' for Kauri snail and <i>A. dunniaie</i>. 'Low' for other notable species. 	Reduce fragmentation and edge effects at the Northern and Southern Mitigation and Release Sites through stock exclusion, pest control and infill and remediation planting.	Low
	Injury or death during habitat removal and displacement.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'High' for Kauri snail and <i>A. dunniaie</i>. 'Low' for other notable species. 	Salvage and relocation within appropriate seasonal constraints.	Low

D7.1.1. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialists

The Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (**Appendix D6** of this Volume) recommends three indicative sites for integrated terrestrial ecology habitat mitigation (hereinafter referred to as 'Mitigation and Release Sites'), being:

- Northern Mitigation and Release Site (approximately 54.5 ha) located to the north of the Brynderwyn Hills;
- Central Mitigation and Release Site (up to approximately 114 ha) located within the Zentral Forest property; and
- Southern Mitigation and Release Site (approximately 29 ha) located to the south of the Brynderwyn Hills.

The indicative extent and location of these sites are shown on Figure 7, Figure 8 and Figure 9 below. The exact extent and location will be confirmed at the Detailed Design stage of the Project.

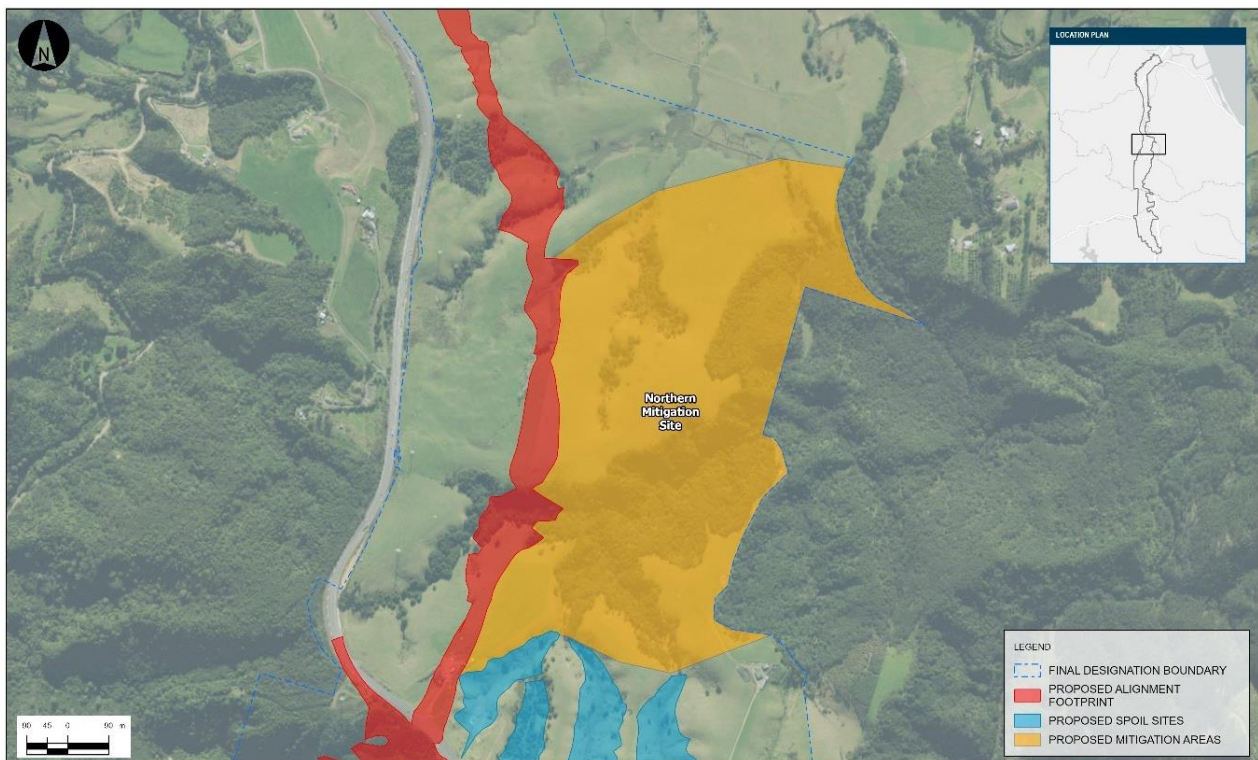


Figure 7: Indicative location of the proposed Northern Mitigation and Release Site

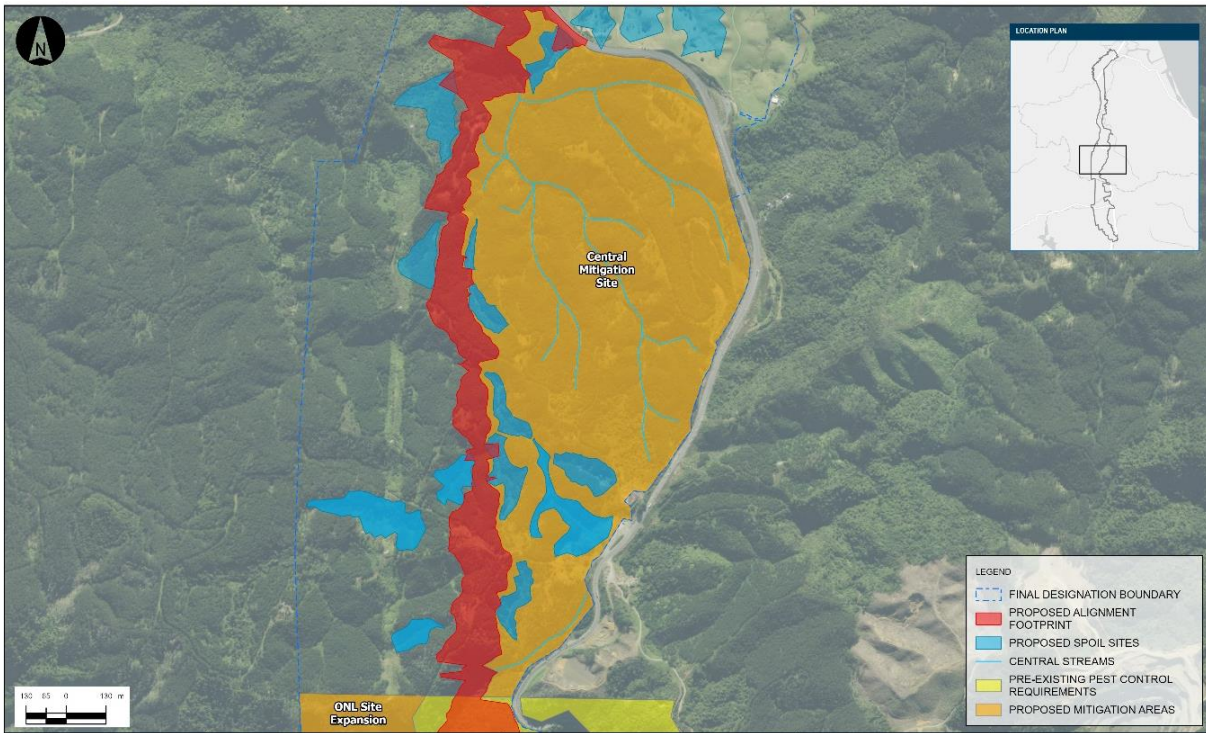


Figure 8: Indicative location of the proposed Central Mitigation and Release Site

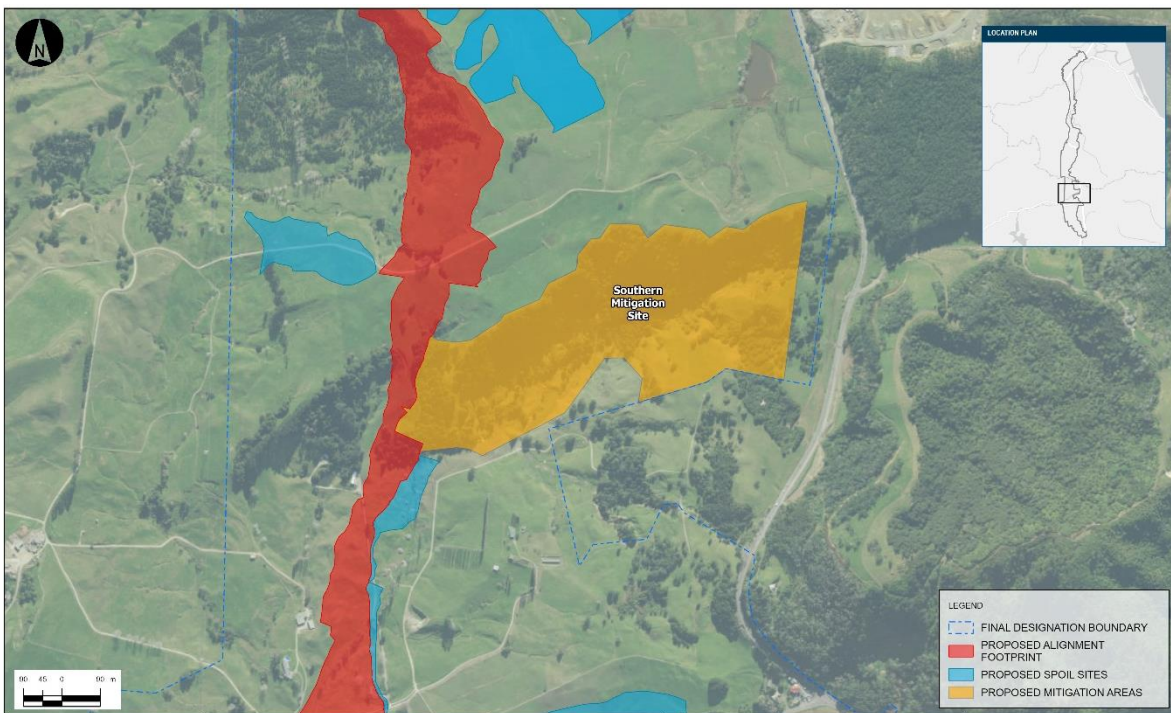


Figure 9: Indicative location of the proposed Southern Mitigation and Release Site

The proposed Mitigation and Release Sites will be managed to mitigate for multiple ecological effects across a range of sensitivities (vegetation, freshwater, wetland, lizards, snails, bats, frogs and birds) and could also act as release sites for salvaged fauna.

In particular, enhancement of the existing native vegetation and the remediation of pasture into native forest will connect the remaining patches of native bush within the mitigation sites. This will:

- Increase the overall extent of native forest.
- Reduce fragmentation and associated edge effects; and

- Enhance the existing habitat through pest control and habitat creation to support the release of salvaged fauna.

A section of the ONL that was identified for pest control following the 2023 Brynderwyn Recovery works will be fragmented by the Indicative Alignment. It is therefore recommended that pest control is undertaken in this area to enhance the remaining habitat, increase its carrying capacity for relocated Hochstetter's frogs, and partially mitigate the effects of the Project on the native forest.

The three indicative Mitigation and Release Sites allows for co-location of several complementary remediation actions, which together, will provide ecological benefits.

A set of mitigation actions within the indicative Mitigation and Release Sites are recommended in the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (**Appendix D6** of this Volume) and outlined in the previous Table 12, including the residual level of effect.

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

NZTA will adopt the specialist recommendations outlined above and conditions are proposed to that effect. These conditions include the following mitigation measures:

- Indigenous Vegetation
 - Minimisation of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss through Detailed Design and construction methodology;
 - Minimisation of kauri tree loss and compensation at a ratio of 50:1 for kauri trees larger than 50 cm DBH;
 - Replacement planting for the loss of any indigenous plant species with 'Very High' or 'High' value, at a ratio of 1:1;
 - Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the three indicative "Mitigation and Release Sites" to increase the area of native forest at the mitigation sites, provide alternative habitat and reduce fragmentation effects; and
 - Maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting to enable successful establishment.
- Bats
 - Vegetation management protocols through Department of Conservation 'Protocols for minimising the risk of felling bat roosts' (Version 4, October 2024)
 - Implement ambient light level restrictions within 10 m of high-risk bat roost habitat.

With the above mitigation measures in place, the adverse effects of the Project on indigenous vegetation and the habitat of indigenous fauna will remain more than minor.

D7.2. Freshwater Ecology

The following section provides a summary of the Project's adverse effects on streams and wetlands arising from the Project's construction works and operational activities as presented in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater (**Appendix D7** of this Volume).

The potential effects on streams and wetlands during the construction of the Project include:

- Stream habitat quality reduction and loss related to:
 - Stream reclamation without replacement (loss)
 - Stream replacement (culverting and associated erosion control) resulting in reduced habitat quality
 - Stream realignment and diversion into a new constructed waterway:
 - New (realigned) streams in natural ground; and

- New streams associated with spoil site reclamation of an original stream.
 - Stream reduction or loss due to groundwater changes from the Project earthworks (e.g. cut faces)
- Wetland reclamation (infill for earthworks, structures and spoil)
- Wetland reduction or loss due to groundwater changes from the Project earthworks
- Contaminant discharges: sediment, concrete, and machinery fuels
- Temporary stream disturbance and fish migration disturbance
- Fish mortality
- Aquatic biosecurity
- The potential operational effects of the Project on streams and wetlands include:
 - Stormwater runoff, hydrological change and water quality.
 - Fish passage and potential wider habitat fragmentation.
 - Lighting.

D7.2.1. Effects on Streams

Impact on Stream Habitat

The assessment states that, where waterways are culverted or realigned, the streams will not be 'lost'.

The assessment finds that approximately 4.5 km of perennial stream and 4 km of intermittent stream are affected by the Indicative Alignment including spoil sites. Most of the impacted streams are smaller headwater streams (46%), and second order stream (26%). Streams affected and the level of effect they experience due to the Project is outlined in Table 13.

Table 13: Level of stream effect based on value and magnitude of the effect

Affected streams	Value	Magnitude of potential stream loss	Level of effect
Pine north	Moderate	Negligible	Very Low
Pine mid	Moderate	Negligible	Very Low
Piroa west tributary	High	Negligible**	Very Low
Piroa main	Moderate	Negligible	Very Low
Waihoihoi main***	High	Negligible	Very Low
Robertsons	Low	Negligible	Very Low
Waipu north	Low	Negligible	Very Low
Waipu south	Moderate	Negligible	Very Low
Mayflower north	Negligible	Negligible	Very Low
Mayflower main	Moderate	Negligible	Very Low
Wairau north	Low	Negligible	Very Low
Pukekaroro tributary	Moderate	Low	Low

Cumulative effects were considered, with the finding that, given the short stream lengths affected as compared to the amount of stream in each catchment, and their condition, there is no accumulation of effects across any one of the four catchments impacted. As a result, the effects remain as defined in Table 13 above.

Impact on Stream extent

The Project will result in stream reclamation and therefore loss of stream extent where a section of impacted stream is not replaced by the same length of realigned stream or culvert. As a result, the total extent of stream loss is calculated to be 554 m. The assessment finds this loss to be a negligible change. However, the final and actual extent of stream loss will depend on the success of stream realignments. On the worst-case scenario that all stream realignments on spoil are unsuccessful then up to 4,984 m of stream extent could be lost.

Impact of realignment on stream values

The assessment considers that realigned streams can be designed to ensure they have the same value as the impacted streams i.e. like for like and should be implemented in the immediate vicinity of the impacted stream. However, should the design requirements not be met in a particular perennial stream, then the assessment concludes that the residual effect will still be less than minor.

Impact of culverting on stream values

The assessment states that the installation of a culvert decreases the habitat value by reducing the habitat quality and changing the benthos. However, the magnitude of the effect can be reduced by employing design measures such as provision of benthic habitat (through in-pipe substrate retention), ensuring the same or similar velocity as the impacted stream under typical flow conditions, and inlet and outlet structures that are accessible for climbing fish species as well as erosion control. With provision of these design features the assessment finds some stream values can be retained, with the proportion of SEV score retained by between 39 and 100% as outlined by Table 16 in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater (**Appendix D7** of this Volume). The installation of a culvert in streams with a higher SEV will experienced reduced SEV by approximately 60%, while streams with a lower SEV will have little or no reduction in the SEV.

If the design criteria recommended cannot be satisfied, then the aquatic habitat value in the culvert will be reduced, such that the culvert length would equate to stream loss. However, even if all culverts cannot satisfy the design recommendations, the level of effect of the stream loss from culverting would remain less than minor in the streams in each of the catchments.

Impact on Fish passage

Effects on fish passage are considered for those catchments where fish passage is necessary, based on Auckland Council guidance⁴⁹.

The assessment finds that fish passage should be provided for the Waihoihoi main stem, the Piroa main stem, the Mayflower tributary main stem, and the Wairau north tributary, and also recommends fish passage in the Pine North tributary, equivalent to the currently available, as there is suitable fish habitat up stream. However, the assessment concludes that the overall effect to these streams, except the Waihoihoi main stem, would be less than minor, even if fish passage was not provided. The effect of not providing fish passage in the Waihoihoi main stem would be high and hence fish passage should be provided.

In other catchments fish passage is not considered necessary as there is little stable or high-quality fish habitat available upstream.

The assessment recommends that, even in the locations where the Auckland Council guidance document indicates fish passage is not required, the stormwater designers should seek to provided NES-F design requirements as follows:

- culverts do not reduce the natural stream width (which would increase water velocity);
- the culvert invert (culvert bed) is set below the natural bed level; and

⁴⁹ Auckland Council's Fish Passage in the Auckland Region (Council, 2009)

- the headwalls and armouring do not impede the wetted width or water depth at the culvert entrance and exit.

Sedimentation effects

The majority of the streams in the Proposed Designation currently experience adverse effects from land use induced sedimentation. In this context, sediment discharges from construction works will commonly have a low impact. NZTA will however implement good practice erosion and sediment control measures during construction of the Project, with the Construction Water Assessment (**Appendix D10** of this Volume) predicting sediment yields in each catchment relative to the scale of earthworks (see Section 6.3 Table 7 of **Appendix D10**).

The Freshwater assessment finds that predicted additional sediment due to the Project entering the Pukekaroro and Waihoihoi catchments are not of concern ecologically, especially given the existing environments.

Sediment discharge into the pine forest tributaries of the Ahuroa catchment streams with good macroinvertebrate communities, although raised is not anticipated to have long term impacts on the significant macroinvertebrate (and fish) communities.

A more significant increase in sediment (16%) from Project construction, is predicted for the Wairau catchment. The assessments finds that this could result in degradation to downstream instream fauna and habitat. As a result, a monitoring programme is recommended to determine the amount of suspended sediment discharged and an appropriate trigger level for further assessment to determine effects on the benthic communities.

D7.2.2. Natural Inland Wetlands

The area of natural inland wetland within each catchment affected by the Indicative Alignment is presented in Table 14 below.

Table 14: Natural inland wetland areas (m²) impacted by works associated with the Indicative Alignment

Wetland impacted by Indicative Alignment	Wetland impacted in Ahuroa catchment	Wetland impacted in Waihoihoi catchment	Wetland impacted in Wairau catchment	Effect as a Proportion (%) of known wetlands in catchment
2		2500		3.0%
3		600		0.71%
4		2700		3.2%
11		2000		2.4%
12		3600		4.3%
13		2700		3.2%
14		5000		5.9%
20	400		100	0.28%
21			100	0.28%
23			298	0.83%
24			10500	29.4%
Total sum affected (m ²)	400	19100	10998	
Sum of known natural inland wetlands in catchment	51717	84326	35715	
Proportion of natural inland wetlands in catchment affected	0.8%	22.6%	30.7%	

Based on the ecosystem health and value of each wetland, and the proportion of the wetland affected in each catchment, the assessed impacts of the Project on each natural inland wetland is indicated in Table 15.

Table 15: Level of effect of wetland change based on value and magnitude of change

Wetland #	Condition	Value	Magnitude of effect	Level of effect
Waihoihoi				
2	Poor (exotic)	Low	Low	Very Low
3	Poor (exotic)	Negligible	Negligible	Very Low
4	Poor (exotic)	Negligible	Low	Very Low
11	Poor (exotic)	Negligible	Low	Very Low
12	Poor (exotic)	Low	Low	Very Low
13	Poor (exotic)	Low	Low	Very Low
14	Poor (exotic)	Negligible	Low	Very Low
Wairau				
20	Poor (exotic)	Low	Negligible	Very Low
21	Poor (mixed)	Low	Low	Very Low
23	Poor (exotic)	Negligible	Negligible	Very Low
24	Fair	High	High	High

The assessment finds that Wetland 24 (in Wairau south, a raupō and willow wetland) is the only feature of notable size and representativeness impacted by the Indicative Alignment, with approximately 1 ha impacted while 2/3 of the wetland is not impacted. The level of effect is high and requires effects management. The assessment does not anticipate impacts due to changes in any nutrient flows to the wetland.

The assessment finds that all other natural inland wetlands affected by the Project are of negligible or low ecological value and the level of effect is very low.

Cumulative effects of impacts on natural inland wetlands across the three catchments were considered and found to be very low to low at the Ecological District level.

D7.2.3. Potential groundwater drawdown effects on streams and wetlands

The assessment finds a risk that large scale earthwork cuts at Pukekaroro ridge, the Brynderwyn Hills and the Mayflower ridge could alter groundwater levels and potentially decrease groundwater seepage to connected natural inland wetlands and streams nearby. This could result in perennial stream reaches becoming intermittent, intermittent stream reaches taking on the characteristics of ephemeral flow paths and reduced wetland areas.

- The assessment has considered potential impacts at those areas through groundwater modelling done as part of the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater (**Appendix D12** of this Volume). A summary of the findings are: *Piroa tributary*: although the groundwater model predicts high drawdown in areas, the assessment finds little impact from the perennial reaches becoming more intermittent and intermittent sections becoming more ephemeral, other than some potential loss in abundance of some macroinvertebrate taxa.
- *Pine South tributary*: it is unlikely that a measurable change in macroinvertebrate assemblage will occur.
- *Pine stream mid sections*: the modelling predicts moderate drawdown over the perennial stream and intermittent headwaters. Given the extent of the predicted draw down and the existing state of the stream, the assessment concludes this will be a low to minor effect, however monitoring is recommended.
- *Mayflower North tributary and the westerns arms of Wetland Q08/066*: drawdown may be up to very high. There is the potential that wet pasture rushland and sedges of Q08/066 will revert to pasture dominated species, but there will still be substantive wetland present, and that effect would be minor at the wetland-only scale.
- *Pukekaroro tributary and Wetland 24*: the predicted drawdown at the upper end of the Pukekaroro tributary is negligible and the remaining areas of Wetland 24 (outside the Indicative Alignment) are not affected.

Overall, the assessment finds there is a potential that groundwater drawdown arising from large cuts will result in habitat loss, however, given the existing values of the impacted streams and wetlands, the effect will be less than minor.

D7.2.4. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialists

The Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (**Appendix D7** of this Volume) anticipates that standard measures such as erosion and sediment controls, avoiding discharge of contaminants to water, and fish salvage prior to diversion and dewatering are employed to mitigate adverse construction related impacts on streams and wetland.

Table 16 below sets out the recommended mitigation measures in response to potential operational effects of the Project on streams and wetlands.

Table 16: Recommended mitigation measures for the Project's operational effects on streams and wetlands

Effects	Recommended mitigation measures
Stream Reclamation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Stream loss from the Indicative Alignment is calculated to be, a negligible effect, no mitigation required, assuming the spoil realignments are successful.
Stream realignment at spoil sites	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Stream realignments should provide a “like for like” replacement of the original stream by meeting the following design requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The same channel morphology, depths, and wetted width potentials (i.e. the same bed and bank dimensions); ▪ Similar surface flows and depths; ▪ The same or similar velocity profile; ▪ A similar riparian condition; and ▪ A similar substrate <p>Stream realignments be located at the edge of any spoil site such that the bed and one side at least are on natural ground.</p> <p>Undertake a ‘trial’ stream realignment at one spoil site and monitor the realignment to gauge the level of success (i.e. monitor physical parameters and hydrology to demonstrate aquatic habitat has been created).</p> <p>Where that is successful then the Projects impact on stream extent will be near zero. If the trial is not successful, then stream offsetting or compensation be implemented based on SEV equivalent offset based on enhancement of existing waterways with an ECR between 2 and 4 to 1 alternatively compensation maybe considered.</p>
Stream realignment at natural ground	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Stream realignments should provide a “like for like” replacement of the original stream by meeting the following design requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The same channel morphology, depths, and wetted width potentials (i.e. the same bed and bank dimensions); • Similar surface flows and depths; • The same or similar velocity profile; • A similar riparian condition; and • A similar substrate. ▪ If stream realignments are constructed to mimic the stream they replace, no other mitigation is required. Even if this cannot be achieved, the assessment considers the residual effects to be no more than minor, therefore requiring no management.
Culverts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Where practicable, culverts should be designed to provide: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benthic habitat (through in-pipe substrate retention); • The same or similar velocity as the impacted stream under typical flow conditions; and • Accessible inlet and outlet structures for climbing fish species. ▪ Impacts of culverting in each catchment will be less than minor (very low in most cases and low in Pukekaroro). Additional effect management is not necessary.
Natural inland wetlands 8,16,24	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Avoid impacting Wetlands 8, 16 and 24 in the Wairau catchment by the alignment if practicable; ▪ Residual adverse effects on Wetland 24 (and Wetlands 8 and 16, if these are impacted by the final alignment) should be addressed through ecological offsetting; ▪ For Wetland 24, by establishing a new wetland area (preferably in the Wairau catchment), focus should be on returning a largely raupō swamp of at least 2 hectares . ▪ Create a range of wetland assemblages including replacement habitat to create a 2.44 ha wetland to satisfy the avian offset requirement (Section 5.2 of the Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology in Appendix D8 of this Volume). ▪ It is recommended that the offset wetland(s) is/are designed to meet the following requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - A mix of wetland hydrology with a majority of shallow water suitable for raupo; - At least 1 ha of raupo in large and solid stands; - At least 1 ha of edges of Carex sedgeland and rushland; - At least 20 m wide inland of dry land riparian buffer; - Fenced against stock access; - Established in a wetland weed and pest free area and maintained to be wetland weed and pest limited until well established; and

Effects	Recommended mitigation measures
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Established following a wetland creation management plan prepared by a suitably qualified person and certified by the relevant consent authority. ▪ If Wetlands 24, 8 and/or 16 cannot be avoided, wetland creation should be undertaken in accordance with the design requirements set out above at the following ratios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 1:2 ratio, provided established within 2-5 years of impact; - 1:1.5 ratio, provided established within 1 year of impact; and - 1:1 ratio, if established >3 years in advance of impact.
Potential groundwater drawdown effects	Ground water in the three west wetland arms of Wetland Q08/696 should be monitored to test whether there are any impacts, and the scale of effect on surface water. If monitoring demonstrates an effect, the amount of wetland loss from groundwater drawdown should be offset at a ratio of 1:1.

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

Streams

To mitigate the potential adverse effects associated with stream loss as a result of the Project, NZTA accepts the expert’s mitigation proposal outlined above, and proposes additional mitigation through riparian planting and fencing for the extent of any perennial watercourse that is not realigned or culverted to achieve the design specifications outlined above (including perennial watercourses that are reclaimed or experience loss as a result of dewatering).

Wetlands

To mitigate the potential adverse effects associated with wetland loss as a result of the Project, NZTA proposes to adopt the recommendations set out above.

D7.3. Avifauna Ecology

The following provides a summary of the Project’s adverse effects (direct and indirect) on avifauna species from proposed construction and operational activities as outlined in the Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology (**Appendix D8** of this Volume). 41 avifauna species have been recorded within the Proposed Designation, of which 25 species were within the Indicative Alignment. Rather than undertaking an assessment of potential effects on all 41 avifauna species that have been recorded within the Indicative Alignment and / or Proposed Designation, the assessment focus on native species for which their primary habitat may be impacted by the Project.

The potential temporary effects on avifauna species during the Project’s construction are:

- Direct habitat loss, with approximately 370 ha of landcover lost during the construction phase of the Project. A total of 2.44 ha of wetland vegetation and ~39 ha of indigenous terrestrial vegetation which may provide habitat for *Threatened* or *At Risk* species will be lost under the current proposed Indicative Alignment;
- Injuries and/or mortalities, which are likely to confine to birds that may be breeding, are flightless or are reluctant flyers; and
- Disturbance and/or displacement that may result in short- or long-term displacement, decreased feeding rates and unattended nests.

The potential operational effects on avifauna species are:

- Injuries and/or mortalities such as increased vehicle collisions and road kills;
- Disturbance and/or displacement whereby an area adjacent to the new road is not, or is to a lesser extent utilised leading to loss of habitat; and

- Artificial lighting, due to increased risks of vehicle collisions for birds attracted to artificial light sources.

Table 17 below provides a summary of the construction and operational adverse effects identified in the Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology (**Appendix D8** of this Volume) on avifauna species of ‘Moderate’, ‘High’ and ‘Very High’ ecological values, prior to mitigation measures being applied. The table also outlines the residual level of effect following implementation of the mitigation measures recommended in the assessment, which are detailed in the following sub-sections.

Table 17: Summary of potential temporary and operational effects of the Project on avifauna species of ‘Moderate’, ‘High’ and ‘Very High’ ecological values

Species	Ecological value	Potential construction and/or operational effects from the Project	Unmitigated Level of Effect	Residual Level of Effect
Australasian bittern / Matuku-hūrepo	Very High	Habitat loss, injury/mortality during construction works and vehicle collisions, disturbance/displacement	High	Low
North Island fernbird / Mātātā	High	Habitat loss, injury/mortality during construction works, disturbance/displacement	High	Very Low
NZ pipit / Pīhoihoi	High	Habitat loss, injury/mortality during construction works, potential vehicle collisions, disturbance/displacement	High	Very Low
Spotless crane / Pūweto	High	Habitat loss, injury/mortality during construction works, disturbance/displacement	High	Very Low
North Island Kākā	Moderate	Habitat loss, injury/mortality during construction works, disturbance/displacement	Moderate	Very Low

D7.3.1. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialists

The Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology (**Appendix D8** of this Volume) has recommended the following mitigation measures based on the potential effects of the Project on avifauna:

- Minimising habitat loss as far as practically possible through design, and through adoption of efficient construction methodologies.
- Preparation of an Avifauna Management Plan, which outlines measures to avoid direct and indirect impacts and to manage nesting avifauna, and implementation of those measures during both the establishment and main construction works.
- Replace at a ratio of 1:1 any wetland features that may be utilised by cryptic marshbirds (e.g. Wetlands 11, 12, 13, 14 and 24) and which are directly impacted by the Project. Two potential wetland mitigation locations have been identified:
 - A site located at the corner of existing SH1 and SH12, which is approximately 4 ha in a lower bowl, into which a 2.44 ha wetland could be created; or
 - The Brynderwyn Farm Pond SNA (Q08/066) could be enhanced / extended through the planting of 2.44 ha wetland vegetation at that location.
- With regards to the loss of indigenous terrestrial vegetation, mitigation planting as suggested in the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B of the Substantive Application) is accepted/recommended.
- Operational lighting associated with the Project should be kept to a minimum necessary to ensure the safe functioning of the road, be hooded and orientated downwards to reduce light spill in order to avoid attracting seabirds.

The Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology concludes that, following the above mitigation, the level of effects of the Project to avifauna species will be low or very low.

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

NZTA will adopt the recommendations outlined above and has proposed conditions to that effect. These conditions include the following mitigation measures:

- Minimising habitat loss as far as practically possible through design, and through adoption of efficient construction methodologies;
- Preparation and implementation of an Avifauna Management Plan (AMP) during construction works, to outline the measures to manage adverse effects on indigenous bird species. The plan will include methods for undertaking pre-construction surveys before clearing vegetation during the bird breeding season (August to February inclusive), an incidental discovery protocol, exclusion zones around any active nests identified and methods to monitor active nests identified. The AMP will be prepared by a suitably qualified person and submitted to the relevant local authorities (KDP and WDP) as part of the Outline Plan(s) for the Project; and
- Replace, at a ratio of 1:1, any wetland features that may be utilised by cryptic marshbirds that include those located within Wetlands 13, 14, 15, 16 and 26 and which are directly impacted by the Project.

With the above mitigation measures in place, the adverse effects of the Project on avifauna ecology will be less than minor.

D8. Cultural Values

As described at Section D3.2 of Volume A of this Application, NZTA has engaged with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau throughout the development of the Project through monthly working group hui and design share workshops with the intention to identify and maintain (where practicable) cultural values.

Specifically, NZTA has been actively working with hapū on inputs to alternative assessments, draft conditions and specific aspects of resource consents, archaeological and wildlife authorities.

Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau have all been invited to prepare CIAs. At the time of writing, CIAs have been received by NZTA from Te Uri o Hau and Patuharakeke.

The following subsections (D8.1 – D8.3) provide a preliminary summary of NZTA's understanding of cultural values and effects of importance to each hapū, which have been identified through Project engagement to date, including in the absence of a CIA from Te Parawhau. This engagement has included numerous hui, involvement in alternatives assessment processes, involvement in geotechnical and ecological field investigations and in written material received (e.g., letters and email communications) in response to draft technical reports / assessments and draft conditions. NZTA appreciates the considerable efforts of hapū in connection with the Project to date.

D8.1. Te Uri o Hau

Te Uri o Hau is a hapū of Ngāti Whātua whose area of interest is in the northern Kaipara region; between the Mangawhai and Kaipara Harbour and coastal marine areas.

Te Uri o Hau have provided a CIA report to NZTA for the purpose of informing the Project on Te Uri o Hau cultural values, and actual and potential adverse effects of the Project on those values. The CIA further outlines the adverse effects of the Project on Te Uri o Hau rangatiratanga and their ability to exercise mana whakahaere. NZTA has engaged with Te Uri o Hau to identify waterways, taonga species and sites of significance, and maintaining and enhancing the mauri of these are acknowledged as being central to Te Uri o Hau as kaitiaki.

A copy of the CIA is included at **Appendix H** of Volume A.

Te Uri o Hau's CIA has identified four principle cultural values that have been used to define impacts of the Project on the cultural landscape. These include:

- *Wāhi tapu: Te Uri o Hau have many wāhi tapu sites and wāhi taonga in the rohe between the coastlines of the Kaipara and Mangawhai Harbour. Wāhi tapu (sites of significance) described by the CIA are treasured places that hold spiritual and cultural significance. They connect Te Uri o Hau to whakapapa and reaffirm identity as kaitiaki. Any disturbance of these sites risks severing these connections and diminishing the integrity of cultural heritage. The CIA outlines a number of archaeological sites and outstanding natural landscape areas of significant cultural value, including the Brynderwyn Hills.*
- *Wairua and tikanga:*
 - *Spiritual values are deeply embedded within the landscape and waterways of catchments crossed by the Project. The landscapes crossed by the Project retain the spiritual imprint of generations, particularly carried by water which requires a high degree of protection.*
 - *The Ahuroa River, Piroa Stream and Pukekaroro River waterways within the wider Ōtamatea River system have traditionally supported a wide range of cultural practices, including fish passage and mahinga kai, waka travel, and domestic use (including drinking, cooking, watering kai crops, and preserving food).*
- *Whakapapa, mana and rangatiratanga: Integral to mana whenua and kaitiakitanga, including mutual benefit, protection, and continued recognition.*
- *Kaitiakitanga and mauri: Within the cultural landscape for Te Uri o Hau, the Brynderwyns, Pukearenga, Pukekaroro and Pukepōhatu shape the physical environment which includes rivers, streams and bush - associated ecosystems which taonga species should thrive in. The Project area contains a diverse range of environments and ecosystems that are of significance. In addition, there is an abundance of taonga species on the Brynderwyns that are classified as nationally critical and threatened species. Of particular importance are Kauri, ti kōuka and Harakeke, kauri snails, kererū and kākā, Pekapeka (bats) and tuna (eels).*

Table 19 below summarises the actual and potential effects of the Project against each of the cultural value groups described in Pages 52-54 of the CIA and reflects the magnitude of the relevant effect identified by Te Uri o Hau. A range of recommendations have been made in Pages 55-70 of the CIA to address the adverse cultural effects identified by Te Uri o Hau, including the loss and fragmentation of land, reduced integrity of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga, ongoing disconnection to ancestral relationships with the whenua, and cumulative effects on the exercise of kaitiakitanga.

Te Uri o Hau's CIA reflects the ongoing engagement between the hapū and NZTA and is acknowledged as being a living document. NZTA is committed to working with Te Uri o Hau on the management of cultural effects through the continued involvement of hapū in the Project.

Table 18: Te Uri o Hau cultural effects assessment and magnitude of effect summaries

Cultural values	Effects	Magnitude of Effect
The mauri of the whenua as a living system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For Te Uri o Hau, the whenua is not a series of separate elements but a single interconnected living system. The maunga, awa, ngāhere, wetlands, valleys, and coastal edges are bound together through whakapapa, forming a cultural and ecological network that sustains life. The mauri of each of these places is interdependent: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When the awa is disturbed, the mauri of the ngāhere and coastal areas are affected; - When the maunga is cut, scarred, or fragmented, the flow of wairua through the wider cultural landscape is interrupted; - When the whenua is excavated or stripped bare, the mauri of all connected systems weakens. ▪ This relationship means that a single disruption creates multiple ripples across the cultural landscape. Cause and effect are not linear but cyclical and interwoven. The impact from this activity cannot be considered in isolation. 	Very High
Fragmentation of the cultural landscape	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The cultural landscape that once connected Te Uri o Hau to our maunga, awa, ngāhere, and our coastlines has been progressively fragmented through these activities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Roading infrastructure and widening corridors, - Forestry clearance and earthworks on steep slopes, - Quarrying and industrial activity, - Repeated land loss and changes to land tenure, - Sedimentation and stormwater effects on downstream waterways. - And other activities such as farming, horticulture and agriculture practices ▪ Each activities impact has removed pieces of a once-continuous system, severing relationships between people and place. The cultural pathways that linked Te Ika a Ranganui, Pukearenga, Pukekaroro, Pukepōhatu, Piroa, the harbour edge, and kai gathering areas has been weakened or blocked entirely. With each loss, the ability of Te Uri o Hau to enact kaitiakitanga is further constrained. 	Very High
Areas of highest value for Te Uri o Hau rangatiratanga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Certain parts of the landscape hold particular importance to Te Uri o Hau due to their whakapapa, mahinga kai value, and spiritual significance. These include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Te Ika a Ranganui whenua, which holds deep ancestral whakapapa and carries the stories of generations; - Our maunga, which serve as our ancestors and guardians; - Piroa Stream and associated tributaries, as corridors of life, mauri, and cultural practice; - Remaining pockets of native ngāhere, as repositories of rongoā, habitat for taonga species, and markers of ancestral time; - Ancestral travel routes, which connected marae, kāinga, mahinga kai, and coastal areas. ▪ These places are not interchangeable or easily restored once damaged; their significance is embedded in our whakapapa. 	Very High
Severance of cultural connections	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Where roading, forestry, and quarrying have cut through ridgelines, diverted waterways, or removed native forests, the cultural connections between key sites have been severed. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The relationship between Te Ika a Ranganui and surrounding lands is affected when the whenua is reshaped or carved into. - The mauri that flows from the maunga to the awa is disrupted when watercourses are diverted or culverted without cultural consideration. 	Very High

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The ability to access or travel traditional routes is compromised when slopes are destabilised, access points are closed, or landforms are altered. ▪ These severances impact not just the physical environment but the spiritual, emotional, and cultural wellbeing of Te Uri o Hau. 	
Intergenerational wellbeing and hapū aspirations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The wellbeing of future generations is closely tied to the integrity of the cultural landscape. When the mauri of the whenua is compromised, so too is the wellbeing of our people. ▪ Intergenerational healing requires: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The restoration of damaged landscapes, • Reconnection of fragmented cultural pathways, • Continued access to mahinga kai and ancestral sites, • Opportunities for rangatahi to learn whakapapa and tikanga in place. ▪ Long-term aspirations for Te Uri o Hau include restoring mauri, replanting native ecosystems, re-establishing cultural connections, and ensuring that this activity does not permanently hinder the ability of future generations to live as kaitiaki. 	Very High
Lasting effects of ongoing disruption	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Years of infrastructure work, forestry operations, quarrying, land loss, and increased development pressures have cumulative effects on Te Uri o Hau and all communities living near these sites. ▪ These effects are compounded over time. The cultural toll is not limited to the duration of this activity; it will extend for generations of Te Uri o Hau people. 	Very High

D8.2. Patuharakeke

Patuharakeke have provided a CIA which outlines the actual and potential effects of the Project on Patuharakeke hapū. The CIA identifies those actual and potential effects which can be avoided, remedied, mitigated, offset and compensated, if required. The CIA has been written by Patuharakeke in the context of an understanding of the Project and the relationship between Te Pou Taiao o Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust and NZTA since 2017, and reflects the kōrero, values and whakaaro of Patuharakeke Hapū.

A copy of the CIA is included at **Appendix G** of Volume A.

Patuharakeke have a long traditional relationship with the area and surrounds encompassed by the Proposed Designation. This status is determined by the tenets of Māori land and sea tikanga, including gifting, long-term occupation and use, whakapapa, and conquest, as described by the CIA in Section 3. Figures 3.1 and 3.2 of the CIA define the location of the Project and areas of importance to Patuharakeke within their traditional takiwa and rohe.

Patuharakeke's CIA has identified four cultural value groups that have been used as the framework of the cultural impact analysis. These are:

- *Mana Motuhake: This value reflects Patuharakeke's position as mana whenua within their rohe and right to exercise authority over lands, waters, and taonga. It further encompasses the strategic goal to support economic initiatives (Pou Whaioranga) and uphold the hapū's vision for people and environment through governance (Pou Kāwanatanga).*
- *Mauri: This value concerns the 'life force' and health of the natural environment. This value focuses on Patuharakeke's stated responsibility to minimise environmental impacts and find ways to enhance the health of te taiao.*
- *Whakapapa: This value relates to the protection and preservation of significant sites to Patuharakeke for the resilience of future generations.*
- *Climate resilience: A value grouping which evaluates the Project against the 'Patuharakeke Climate Rangatiratanga Framework'.*

As described at Section 3 of the CIA, there is overlap between each of these values due to the interconnectedness of all elements within te ao Māori.

Table 20 below summarises the actual and potential effects of the Project against each of the cultural value groups described in detail within Subsections 6.1 – 6.4 of the CIA and reflects the magnitude of the relevant effect identified by Patuharakeke. The table further provides the overall magnitude of effects of the Project on Patuharakeke cultural values.

The CIA received from Patuharakeke is a reflection of the ongoing engagement NZTA has had with Patuharakeke. NZTA is committed to working with Patuharakeke on the management of cultural effects through the continued involvement of hapū in the Project and identifying associated outcomes.

Table 19: Patuharakeke cultural effects assessment and magnitude of effect summaries

Value Group	Cultural Value associated with Value Group	Effects	Magnitude of Effect
Mana motuhake	We continue to build positive relationships through design, construction and ongoing operation that provide for our ways of working and our tikanga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Further degradation of the natural environment and Papatūānuku 	High
	Our mana motuhake and right to exercise authority over our lands, waters and taonga as mana whenua.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Project will have significant, permanent effects on our lands, waters and taonga. 	High
	We can access traditional places and resources, which enables knowledge retention, revival and transfer including our customs and practices, knowledge of tohu and the maramataka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The physical footprint of the Project may sever access to culturally important sites – especially where awa are proposed to be culverted or diverted, ngahere will be removed and where wetlands are proposed to be filled or drained. The Project will create positive opportunities to access parts of the Patuharakeke rohe which have been disconnected due to being in private ownership. 	Moderate
Mauri	Our awa flow with mauri ora.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Earthworks and sediment release to waterways even when best practice sediment erosion control measures are in place. Large scale earthworks required for the Project and associated sediment release will negatively affect the mauri of wai. Physical habitat destruction – Installation of culverts and diversion of streams within natural waterways will destroy and diminish freshwater taonga species habitat. Hydrological disruption – The Assessment of Effects on Groundwater indicates up to 17km of stream reach will be subject to moderate-very high levels of hydrological change primarily due to groundwater depletion/drawdown during dewatering. This will result in reduction and complete loss of baseflow from awa. Stormwater discharges – The Project will provide for heavy and sustained traffic volumes. Large volumes of stormwater will be generated containing rubbish and plastics, heavy metals, sediments and hydrocarbons. 	Very High
	Our repo are functioning, protected and enhanced.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Physical habitat destruction – The Proposed Designation area contains multiple natural inland wetlands and other wetland habitats of varying typologies. There will be direct wetland loss via draining, filling and reclamation to accommodate the Indicative Alignment. Incidental effects – Wetlands located outside the Indicative Alignment may be drained or dry out due to groundwater drawdown during earthworks. Deep cuts – particularly in the Brynderwyn Hills – will extend below the water table. Permanent drainage systems will be installed to lower the groundwater level and keep the pavement dry. This will lower the water table and reduce, or stop, natural groundwater seepage that feeds wetlands during dry periods. Wetlands located at elevations higher than the road cuts (hanging wetlands) are at high risk. Water quality effects – Wetland species are also often sensitive to changes in water quality. Construction activities may introduce sediment into wetland features and drain some repo to a level that promotes eutrophication. Changes in water quality and/or hydrology will have an impact on wetland flora and fauna species. Construction works may also result in a loss of habitat for taonga species. 	Very High

Value Group	Cultural Value associated with Value Group	Effects	Magnitude of Effect
	Our ngahere is healthy and supports our rongoa and taonga species.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cumulative effects of vegetation removal – Vegetation removal within the Proposed Designation will degrade habitat connectivity and foraging grounds for various manu, mokomoko, pepeketua, pekapeka and other terrestrial fauna. ▪ Taonga species destruction – Kauri, tōtara and Kahikatea forests, including kaumātaua (old growth) rākau may be lost. ▪ Introduction of edge effects, weeds, diseases and pests – Extensive clearance within existing ngahere opens that ngahere to edge effects, weeds, pests and potential pathogens such as kauri dieback. 	Very High
	Our manu are protected and their habitats are restored.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Habitat fragmentation and reduction of stepping stones – The clearance of vegetation and wetlands and operation of the Project will fragment habitat and reduce stepping stones using by manu to move about the landscape. ▪ Noise, car lights and the risk of bird strike – Operation of the Project may reduce the quality of the ngahere and repo habitats, resulting in nest abandonment and mortality during breeding season. 	Very High
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Our pepeketua and mokomoko are abundant ▪ Safe roosting and foraging places are available throughout the landscape for our pekapeka. ▪ The importance of our ngārara and tuaiwi-kore is recognised. ▪ Ika can access traditional habitats that are protected and enhanced. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Risk of mortality – Construction of the Project may result in the mortality of Hochstetter’s Frog, mokomoko individuals, ika and tuna (during works within waterways) and pekapeka individuals. There is also a risk of crushing of individuals during earthworks and vegetation clearance for ngārara and tuaiwi-kore. ▪ Destruction of habitat – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Vegetation clearance, earthworks, wetland and stream drainage, dewatering and stream works may have a significant impact on Hochstetter’s frog habitat. - Occurrence of effects on mokomoko when vegetation and grassland areas are cleared and when rocky habitats are disturbed. - Occurrence of effects when pekapeka habitat and roosting trees are cleared. ▪ Habitat fragmentation – Where habitat is retained, habitat will be fragmented risking collapse of local populations into the future. This includes key roost trees for Pekapeka, or culverts exceeding passable lengths for ika and tuna. Stepping stones could be removed, making access to other habitats challenging. Where habitat is retained for ngārara and tuaiwi-kore, habitat will be fragmented risking collapse of local populations. ▪ Vibration, light and noise – Operation of the Project will potentially impact pepeketua, mokomoko and pekapeka foraging and roosting behaviour, and behaviour of ngārara and tuaiwi-kore through vibration, light and noise-related disturbance. 	Very High
Whakapapa	The footprints of our tūpuna are recognised, protected and enhanced.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Disturbing known archaeological sites – Five pā, and numerous middens and pits are located within the Proposed Designation. ▪ Accidental discoveries of tūpuna and taonga tūturu – Due to settlement and movement patterns, there may be undiscovered wāhi tapu in the Project area. 	High
	The recovery of our Waipu Mātaitai is supported and there is no further degradation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Sediment discharges contribute to cumulative effects on taonga – The Waipu Mātaitai is downstream of the Project. Any sediment control device failure during the construction period will settle in the estuary, smothering pipi and cockle beds and degrading the food basket of the hapū, adding to cumulative effects. ▪ Stormwater discharges contribute to cumulative effects on taonga – Heavy metals introduced via migration to this ecosystem may contaminate pipi and cockle beds and degrade the food basket of hapū, adding to cumulative effects. 	Moderate

Value Group	Cultural Value associated with Value Group	Effects	Magnitude of Effect
	Effects on Te Paritu Pā are avoided.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Impacts on Te Paritu pā – Te Paritu is a wāhi tapu of immense spiritual significance. It was a key pā for our tūpuna and the site of a massacre, which means there are likely significant artefacts in a wide area surrounding the site. Encroachment by the designation on the pā, or construction vibration/dust effects, would be a severe breach of tapu and cause grievance. 	High
	Piroa is protected and enhanced and the significance of this area as the gateway to Te Tai Tokerau is elevated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spiritual and cultural effects on Piroa – Piroa is a physical and spiritual gateway to Te Tai Tokerau. It is the ‘gunwale’ of our waka. It also provides a connection between the east and west coasts of Te Tai Tokerau. There is a risk that the significance of Piroa as a pathway of our tūpuna and connector of localities is lost in the development of the Project. Impacts on the unique ecologies of Piroa – Piroa is also an area of immense ecological and spiritual significance. The maunga and awa are home to many taonga species and their mauri must be protected and enhanced. Visual, amenity and natural character effects on Piroa – Large cuts and batters will scar the maunga visually and physically, while the removal of vegetation will significantly alter the appearance of this culturally significant landscape. 	Very High
	Our urupā are respected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Risks of disturbing our ancestors’ burial sites – There is a risk urupā and kōiwi could be discovered due to the extent of earthworks required for the proposal. 	Very High
	The rākau rangatira within our ngahere is maintained.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disruption of the wairuatanga of our ngahere and have a lasting impact on the realm of Tāne Mahuta. 	High
	The provenance of gravel within our rohe is maintained.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Impacts on the provenance of gravel – Where gravel is taken from one location and shipped to a site that is not within the same catchment, geological area or rohe, provenance ties can be lost, which has an impact on Papatūānuku, and our spiritual and cultural values. 	Moderate
Climate resilience	All developments within our rohe work to achieve net-zero carbon emissions by 2050.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Project will incur embodied emissions during construction and maintenance, and transport emissions from the vehicle use of the alignment. Without strategies to minimise embodied emissions through construction methodologies and transport emissions via active and public transport initiatives, emissions will be significant and uncontrolled. 	High
	Our resilience is enhanced through strengthening our communities and natural defences.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The capacity of our communities to withstand and recover from climate change is diminishing with increased occurrence of climate related disasters. It is critical our infrastructure decision making avoids increasing risk, such as flood risk, and plans for future climate change. Installation of infrastructure within waterways such as culverts and bridges can cause flooding upstream and downstream (flood levels and velocity). Construction of road embankments can prevent overland flow pathways from functioning while displacing floodwaters with concrete surfaces. 	High

Value Group	Cultural Value associated with Value Group	Effects	Magnitude of Effect
	<p>Our climate sovereignty is protected to steer us through the climate crisis.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Clearance of ngahere, repo and awa directly depletes the natural infrastructure needed for climate sovereignty. This diminishes our capacity for Rangatira Wai (water) and Rangatira Kai (food) sovereignty, such as flood regulation, soil health, and mahinga kai habitat. ▪ The proposed offsetting regimes may have adverse effects on climate sovereignty by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Allowing highly specific habitat values to be replaced with different, lower-value, or easier-to-create habitats. This means the unique habitats will not truly be replaced, but simply swapped for something else, resulting in a net loss of biodiversity. - Not accounting for the time-scales of ecological restoration. A 1-2:1 ratio does not account for the immediate loss of biodiversity and the temporal lag before the offset provides equivalent ecological function. - The offsetting ratios do not incentivise avoiding high-value, irreplaceable ecosystems. - The proposed offset formulas and low ratios reduce the pressure to follow the mitigation hierarchy (avoid, minimise, remediate) in the first instance. ▪ The project also represents a significant intervention in the rohe that could limit managed retreat pathways by occupying higher ground and creating a physical barrier to inland areas. In addition, the highway will reduce the capacity of our rohe to hold floodwaters, and will displace those floodwaters in an unknown distribution, which will also affect managed retreat pathways. 	<p>Very High</p>

D8.3. Te Parawhau

Through engagement with Te Parawhau NZTA has identified the following principal cultural matters of importance and potential effects or concerns in response to the Project's design have been identified by the hapū:

- Concerns regarding the volume of earthworks, particularly within the Brynderwyn Hills area. In addition, Te Parawhau had raised concerns with the use of material haul route and expressed a preference for use of local roads for the transport of material between Earthworks Zones.
- Impacts of the Project on undisturbed / natural sites, terrestrial and freshwater environments within the Brynderwyn Hills area and a preference for the Project following the existing / developed alignment.
- A desire to avoid the use of culverts and stream realignments, with particular regard to impacts on, and loss of habitat for, indigenous freshwater fauna.
- Concerns regarding the impact on sites of cultural and historical significance.
- Avoidance of all rakau rangatira sites, with particular avoidance of existing Kahikatea stands near the entry to Waipū.

D8.4. Summary

NZTA wishes to integrate cultural, environmental and spiritual values into the Project where appropriate. With this objective in mind, NZTA has brought Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau into the Northland Corridor project. Engagement with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau has been a central and ongoing component of the Project to date, reflecting NZTA's commitment to meaningful collaboration with the hapū. Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau have been involved with the Project from the early stages and throughout the process to date, with engagement including regular hui, workshops, site inspections, and participation in the assessment process for route selection. Where possible hapū have been provided with early drafts of the environmental effect assessments. Hapū input has shaped the Project's alignment and design, particularly with respect to cultural values, avoidance of wāhi tapu and culturally significant sites, and the development of mitigation measures.

The process of working with hapū through Project development up to the point of lodgement of the Application has allowed cultural and spiritual values to be integrated into the development of the design of the Project, and the design of processes for managing the effects associated with its construction. NZTA's approach emphasises ongoing dialogue, so that hapū are involved not only in the design phase, but also in the development of management plans and during the construction phase. NZTA is committed to continued meaningful engagement with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau and to acting reasonably, honourably and in good faith as the Project moves through the consenting phase and into the Detailed Design, construction and delivery stages.

D9. Land Contamination

The Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects (**Appendix D9** of this Volume) provides an analysis of actual and potential land contamination within the Proposed Designation boundary. The report is to be considered as a Preliminary Site Investigation (PSI) as per the Ministry for the Environment's (MfE) Contaminated Land Management Guidelines No. 1 – Reporting on contaminated sites in New Zealand.

The assessment objective is to establish whether it is more likely than not that any activity or industry described in the MfE's HAIL is being, or has been, undertaken within the Proposed Designation boundary and to determine the potential risk to human health as a result of soil disturbance, development or land-use changes.

The assessment finds that as the Proposed Designation predominantly traverses rural and residential land uses, with the potential for HAIL sites to be present considered low. Of the five HAIL sites identified within the Proposed Designation boundary, two are characterised as low risk, due to the likely limited volume of

contamination, and another two would be low if the contaminated area is not disturbed during the Project's construction. Given these four sites are located away from the Indicative Alignment, it is unlikely that these areas will be disturbed by the Project, meaning there are no resulting adverse effects to human health and the environment posed by these sites. Should the location of the Indicative Alignment change during the Detailed Design process such that it impacts these sites, then further assessment in the form of DSI would need to take place to determine the extent of human health risk and any remediation requirements.

The remaining HAIL site within the Proposed Designation boundary is classified as moderate-risk, being the Plant Nursery and Market Garden site at 36 Glenmohr Road, Waipū. The Indicative Alignment intersects with this site. Soil sampling results showed that concentration of pesticides, herbicides, fungicides and organo-chlorine pesticides were not detected above the laboratory detection limits.

The assessment identifies two additional contaminated sites that it concludes warrant further consideration: the potentially contaminated soils discovered at BH2B_1160 (located at 2471 Twin Coast Discovery Highway), and the Absolute Concrete site.

At BH2B_1160, the wide range of hydrocarbons and heavy metal levels in samples are below human health guideline criteria for future commercial or industrial use, making the in-situ material suitable for road land use. However, arsenic, copper, and zinc concentrations exceed sediment quality standards, and arsenic, copper, lead, and zinc concentrations exceed predicted background concentrations. This material does not meet national clean fill criteria and must be disposed of at a certified landfill or contained onsite. Additionally, concentrations of total petroleum hydrocarbons and benzene exceed the waste acceptance criteria for WasteMINZ Class 2, 3 and 4 Landfills, and concentrations of toluene and ethylbenzene exceed the acceptance criteria for Envirofill South.

The Absolute Concrete site is located approximately 50 m from the Proposed Designation boundary. Should, following Detailed Design, the Project's earthworks footprint extend within the site, further investigation into potential contaminant migration from the Absolute Concrete site would be required.

In summary, the Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects concludes that further investigation and delineation are required on two moderate-risk contaminated sites within the Proposed Designation boundary and intersected by the Indicative Alignment, being the Plant Nursery and Market Garden and BH2B_1160 sites, before actual or potential effects on the environment can be confirmed. This conclusion also applies to the Absolute Concrete site should the Project's earthworks extend within the site.

D9.1. Mitigation

D9.1.1. Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

The Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects recommends that, as it is not possible for any PSI to guarantee complete identification of all HAIL activities, all soil disturbance operations should be conducted in accordance with a protocol for the unexpected discovery of contaminated soils.

The unexpected discovery protocol will include requirements for assessment and reporting if an unexpected discovery occurs, which it recommends include:

- Engaging a Suitably Qualified and Experienced Person (SQEP) if unexpected, contaminated soil is discovered;
- Delineating the extent of the soil contaminated to be disturbed; and
- SQEP to develop a CSMP and/or a RAP to manage the associated risk to human health and/or the environment.

Four identified HAIL sites located within the Proposed Designation are avoided by the Indicative Alignment, and therefore, the assessment concludes the actual or potential adverse effects of contaminated land disturbance on these sites on human health and the environment are less than minor.

The assessment concludes the two remaining medium-risk HAIL sites (Plant Nursery and Market Garden and BH2B_1160) are likely to require further investigation following Detailed Design. The assessment recommends, prior to any soil disturbance within these sites, NZTA should:

- Engage a SQEP to review the area of the HAIL site to be disturbed and if they determine that potentially contaminated soil is to be disturbed, then a DSI is to be undertaken; and
- If the DSI identifies the presence of soil contamination (i.e. concentrations above background), the SQEP is to develop a CSMP and/or a RAP to manage risk.

With the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures, the Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects concludes the actual or potential adverse effects of contaminated land disturbance on these two HAIL sites on human health and the environment are Minor and will be appropriately managed.

D9.1.2. Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

[Placeholder - To mitigate potential adverse (permanent) effects to human health and the environment relating to land contamination, NZTA proposes conditions requiring it to:

- Undertake a DSI.
- Prepare a CSMP for any medium risk sites impacted and for the accidental discovery at BH2B_1160 and a RAP, if the CSMP identifies contaminated soils requiring remediation.
- Prepare a Site Validation Report following the completion of a RAP (if required).
- Specify management of soil (reuse framework) and groundwater, with possible groundwater treatment measures required for area impacted at BH2B_1160.]

D10. Construction Water

The Construction Water Assessment (CWA) (**Appendix D10** of this Volume) provides an analysis of the actual and potential construction water effects on the receiving environment, following suggested design and best practice erosion and sediment control (ESC) methods during construction of the Project.

The extent of earthworks, land disturbance and stream works required to carry out the Project's construction activities, and the existing physical environment that the Project will be carried out in, are detailed in Parts B and C of Volume A of the Substantive Application. In summary the Project earthworks relate to:

- Bulk earthworks, general cut to fill and cut to waste earthworks including spoil sites;
- Services installation, general trenching activities and the installation of permanent stormwater treatment devices;
- Streamwork activities; and
- Bridge construction including any associated retaining wall and abutment excavations associated with the new bridge structures.

Earthworks (including cut and fill and spoil) for the Project total approximately 299.2 ha, comprised as outlined in Table 20:

Table 20: Earthworks Areas across Earthworks Zones

Zone	Cut/Fill Earthworks (ha)	Spoil (ha)
Zone 1	62.4	11.4
Zone 2	50.1	20.8
Zone 3	37.3	25.2
Zone 4	40	52.0
Totals	189.80	109.40

It is expected that the Project bulk earthworks will be completed over a 4-year programme.

The existing environment in relation to erosion and sedimentation risks is further described in the CWA. Likewise, the CWA outlines the approach to ESC adopted and suggested management measures, as well as the methodology employed for assessing sediment yield by catchment due to the Project.

The assessment finds that the earthworks for the Project have the potential to result in changes to water quality during the construction phase as a result of discharges of:

- sediment to surface water from earthworks during both rain and flood events;
- sediment from in-stream activities and changes to flow; and
- other contaminants (such as oils, fuels and cement).

The assessment anticipates that sediment yield due to earthwork and stream work operations is likely to be the main driver of changes to surface water quality during Project construction. Key activities with the potential to impact water quality are works located within and adjacent to watercourses and wetlands (e.g. culvert placement, stream diversions and bridge works); cut and fill operations in steep areas; major cut and fill activities; and spoil site establishment and operation.

To obtain a more thorough understanding of the quantum of specific changes to water quality a sediment yield⁵⁰ analysis, based on previous project monitoring results, has been undertaken (Appendix A of the CWA - **Appendix D10** of this Volume). This analysis has allowed for comparison of predicted sediment yield by catchment relative to land use, terrain types (Flat and Hill Country) and the anticipated construction works.

The assessment provides the averaged open earthwork areas (including spoil sites) for each Earthworks Zone per year and from that, sediment yield for each catchment. Table 21 below provides a summary of the sediment yield per catchment for each year of construction.

Table 21: Summary of Project Sediment Yield Analysis

Tonnes Sediment per year	Waihoihoi	Ahuroa	Wairau	Pukekororo
1	148.7	375.7	300.4	47.7
2	297.3	751.5	471.1	47.7
3	297.3	751.5	471.1	47.7
4	199.2	503.5	358.4	47.7

When these sediment yields are assessed in the context of the wider catchment areas and background sediment yields, the percentage contribution from the Project to the wider catchment can be determined for the full six-year construction period, provided in Table 22 below.

Table 22: Project catchment sediment contribution to overall catchment sediment

Catchment	Catchment Area (ha)	Catchment Wide Sediment Yield (tonnes) Without Project	Catchment Wide Sediment Yield (tonnes) with Project	Project Sediment Yield Contribution (%)
Waihoihoi	6521	19,563	20,505.50	4.60
Ahuroa	8505	25,515	27,897.20	8.54
Wairau	2731	8,193	9,797.10	16.35
Pukekaroro	3773	11,309	11,509.90	1.66

The assessment confirms the sediment yields estimated from the Project earthworks for the 4-year bulk earthworks period are of a low percentage of full catchment area sediment yield for the Waihoihoi, Ahuroa and Pukekaroro catchments. As a result, the assessment finds that there is no need for earthworks open area limitation for the Project within these catchments. However, the importance of progressive stabilisation and ensuring that effective structural and non-structural ESC are implemented remains a key consideration. In particular, the assessment recommends that a 14-day maximum period be applied over the full Project whereby earthworks not subject to daily operating earthworks activity for more than a 14-day period will require full stabilisation.

⁵⁰ The amount of sediment leaving the sediment control device assuming the full area of earthworks is open at any one time (refer Table 6 CWA - **Appendix D10** of this Volume)

For the Wairau Catchment the sediment yield contribution from the Project earthworks for the 4-year bulk earthworks period for the catchment is 16%. This higher percentage yield is due to the smaller overall catchment area and the relatively large area of spoil sites that are required within this location.

The impact of sedimentation on the freshwater environment in these catchments is discussed in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (**Appendix D7** of this Volume). The impact of sedimentation on the freshwater environment in these catchments is discussed in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (**Appendix D7** of this Volume).

The CWA also finds that:

- Works associated with the steep topography of the Project are of a higher risk and need careful and pro-active management and monitoring to ensure that the construction effects are minor.
- The Project will rely on CESCPS to be submitted at a later date, before any construction activity takes place, to allow for contractor input.
- A continuous improvement monitoring programme will be implemented which will allow for ongoing continuous improvement of the construction water methodologies.

The CWA concludes that if the ESC mitigation and monitoring measures recommended in the CWA, and summarised below in Section D10.1, are designed, implemented and maintained as best practice, sediment yields resulting from the earthworks and construction activities can be managed with minor effects.

D10.1. Mitigation

D10.1.1. Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

The CWA recommends the following mitigation measures:

- **Preparation of an Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP)** outlining the overall approach to water management during construction.
- **Preparation of Construction Stage Erosion and Sediment Control Plans (CESCPs)** providing the Detailed Design, specific ESC measure location, staging and sequencing of works for that location and will be developed prior to works commencing in these locations.
- **Construction staging and sequencing** implemented as necessary to achieve the progressive stabilisation on an ongoing basis.
- **Device location and discharges** - All ESC devices should be located outside the 20 year ARI flood level unless no other viable alternative exists.
- **Non-Structural Measures** - Proactive monitoring and reporting programme; Risk identification and management; Progressive stabilisation as works progress; Staging and sequencing of specific work/activity programmes; Weather response; Winter works restrictions.
- **Progressive stabilisation** for erosion and dust management purposes and a maximum period of 14 days whereby exposed areas (with no works occurring) can remain open.
- **Stream works** undertaken in a manner that recognises and responds to this risk. Where practical, stream work activities and any associated works within these environments will be undertaken in an 'offline' dry environment. All stream works will also be undertaken with consideration of fish spawning and migration periods.
- **A continuous improvement programme** to provide confirmation of the actual water quality outcomes from construction activities which will feed into the ongoing continuous improvement of all ESC aspects.

Further detail on the above recommendations is contained in Section 5 of the CWA.

D10.1.2. Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

NZTA propose to mitigate potential construction water effects as recommended in the CWA through conditions requiring the following:

- Prepare a CЕСP and Site-Specific CЕСP addressing matters such as:
 - ESC design measures and devices.
 - Open area limits over time and season.
- Prepare a Chemical Treatment Management Plan.
- Prepare a Continuous Improvement Monitoring Programme to plan for continuous improvement to the effectiveness of the ESC measures employed for the Project.

D11. Operational Stormwater and Flooding

An Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (**Appendix D11** of this Volume) has been prepared for the Project which provides an analysis of the actual and potential effects in relation to operational stormwater and flooding and the assessment methodology that was followed for each.

D11.1. Operational Stormwater

Key design principles, derived from the relevant statutory framework and current best-practice guidance,⁵¹ have been used to inform an indicative operational stormwater design for the Indicative Alignment, incorporating currently accepted best stormwater practice. The assessment of the Project's operational stormwater effects is based on those measures being in place and considers the following key areas of effects; water quantity; water quality; ecological effects; stormwater related effects on water users and residual effects as outlined in more detail in the following sections.

The specific device locations, configurations, areas and dimensions may change as a result of final design of the Project; however the actual and potential effects of the final design will be no greater than those described.

D11.1.1. Effects on water quantity and quality

The Project introduces new impervious surfaces that will increase stormwater runoff volumes and peak flows. Without appropriate mitigation, this could result in increased flood levels within downstream water courses and increased risk of erosion. The proposed stormwater design for the Project incorporates a number of best practice measures to manage stormwater flows and erosion, and subject to the implementation of these measures, the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects concludes the effects from increased stormwater runoff (flow and scour-related effects) as a result of the Project will be negligible.

Stormwater runoff from the road corridor may contain contaminants such as sediment, heavy metals (zinc, copper), and hydrocarbons. The stormwater design incorporates a number of measures for managing stormwater-borne contaminants to ensure effective treatment of stormwater prior to discharge. Without appropriate mitigation stormwater from trafficked areas could result in effects detrimental to the health of ecology, agriculture and watercourses by smothering, increased turbidity and introducing elements toxic to life.

The Project will involve the large-scale transfer of traffic from an untreated highway corridor to a treated highway, generating an overall net benefit. The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects therefore concludes the effects of the Project on water quality will be negligible, and largely positive following implementation.

⁵¹ Refer to Assessment Methodology, Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects, Appendix D11, Northland Corridor – Substantive Application under the FTAA - Volume B.

D11.1.2. Ecological effects

The Project intersects multiple streams and watercourses that require culverts and stream diversions that could impact freshwater ecology. The proposed stormwater design incorporates measures for managing operational stormwater impacts on ecology, and the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects concludes that with the implementation thereof, stormwater-generated ecological effects on the environment are expected to be appropriately managed. This conclusion is addressed further in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology attached as **Appendix D7** of this Volume.

D11.1.3. Stormwater related effects on water users

The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects concludes that beyond the Proposed Designation boundary, the Project has the potential to affect farm water supply quantity and quality if unmanaged principally through diminished base-flows, increased peak flows, erosion, or discharge of contaminants. However, the assessment concludes that, with best practice stormwater design measures in place, the Project is not expected to adversely affect existing water users.

Groundwater and potable water matters are addressed separately in Assessment of Effects on Groundwater (**Appendix D12** of this Volume).

D11.1.4. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

No specific mitigation measures are recommended to manage operational stormwater effects of the Project as the existing design, and any future design, will implement industry leading stormwater design, which will:

- Be in accordance with NZTA, regional and national best practice industry guidelines and requirements.
- Include measures, where necessary and appropriate, to prevent increased stream erosion, to facilitate fish passage and to provide new habitat in lieu of habitat unavoidably lost.
- Represent optimal whole-of-life value.

Where the Project's final design may differ from the Indicative Alignment, further stormwater analysis will be carried out to ensure the new stormwater design meets best practice, thereby ensuring any residual effects remain less than minor

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

To mitigate the potential adverse effects associated with operational stormwater of the Project, NZTA proposes to adopt the recommendations set out above.

D11.2. Flooding

The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects uses flood modelling to predict flood effects generated *with* the Project (Design Scenario) when compared to existing flooding conditions *without* the Project (Existing Scenario). The assessment provides an analysis of the actual and potential effects of the Project in areas outside of the Proposed Designation in relation to flooding.

The flood model was run for four design rainfall durations⁵² each for two design storm events.⁵³

Changes in flood risk inside the Proposed Designation boundary were excluded from the flood assessment as these effects are either internal to the Project and acceptable, or engineering solutions will be designed to mitigate them in the Detailed Design stage. Building flood risk inside the Proposed

⁵² Design rainfall durations – 1-hour, 6-hour, 12-hour and 24-hour, Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects, Appendix D11, Northland Corridor – Substantive Application under the FTAA - Volume B.

⁵³ Design storm events for flood modelling – 10% AEP with CC (RCP6.0, 2110) and 1% AEP with CC (RCP6.0, 2110), Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects, Appendix D11, Northland Corridor – Substantive Application under the FTAA - Volume B.

Designation was also not considered in the flood assessment as all habitable buildings within the Proposed Designation have been assumed to be removed and/or acquired by NZTA.

D11.2.1. Effects outside the Proposed Designation

The following locations were modelled for flood effects outside of the Proposed Designation:

- Waipū Interim Tie-In
- SH1 south of Glenmohr Road intersection
- SH12 Brynderwyn Interchange
- Pukekaroro Stream

A high-level summary of the flooding effects across the above locations as determined through the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects, is as follows:

- One habitable building within the Waipū Interim Tie-In location (Robert Bruce Place) has a predicted increase in the maximum flood level including during the 1% AEP event by approximately 13 mm. However aerial photography shows this building was removed to make way for formation of a new street (as of August 2024) and associated subdivision. It is assumed that future buildings in the subdivision in this area will be constructed with sufficient freeboard and as a result the assessment concludes the impact of the increase flood level at this location will be minor.
- A marginal increase in the flood level of up to 125 mm and 135 mm for the 1% and 10% AEP storm events at the southern end of the Project within the Pukekaroro Stream location. The increase dissipates within a short distance and can potentially be addressed during future Detailed Design.
- Flood level increases to existing roads and assets outside the Proposed Designation as follows:
 - Waipū Interim Tie-In location – A flood increase south of The Braigh of 10 mm and up to 61 mm in the 1% AEP storm event. Upstream of Millbrook Road an increase in maximum flood level up to 25 mm in the 10% AEP storm event impacting SH1 but less than 10mm.
 - SH1 south of Glenmohr Road intersection location – Increased flood levels alongside the Indicative Alignment between CH14800 and CH15100 of up to 70 mm during the 1% AEP storm event just beyond the western edge of the Proposed Designation creating a minor increase in flood plain extent toward the existing SH1, however will not encroach onto the carriageway.
 - Pukekaroro Stream location – There is a localised increase in predicted maximum flood levels of up to 125 mm and 135 mm for the 1% AEP and 10% AEP events respectively at the southern end of the Project within Pukekaroro Stream. The model results show an increase in predicted flood level of up to 15 mm within the flood plain extent of the stream outside of the Proposed Designation which dissipates approximately 2.3 km along the stream and affects part of SH1.

D11.2.2. Mitigation

Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

In relation to flooding, the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects recommends that any changes at the Detailed Design stage for the Project should be tested with a suitable hydrologic/hydraulic model to confirm the following:

- That design of the Project does not result in increased flooding for events up to and including the 100-year ARI event in either of the following situations:
 - An increase in flood levels greater than 100 mm vertically outside the Proposed Designation (unless that increase is wholly contained within the banks of an existing watercourse, wetland or river flood plain); or
 - An increase in flooding above floor level to any habitable building outside the Proposed Designation.

- That the headwater ponding upstream of any Project culvert in the 100-year ARI event is contained within either:
 - Land within the Proposed Designation at the time of construction; or
 - An existing stream channel, wetland or floodplain.

Where the above standards cannot be met following updated modelling, the assessment recommends that the design should be amended with, for example, larger culverts, additional diversion drains or non-structural alternatives such as property buy-out or compensation.

Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

To mitigate the potential adverse operational (permanent) flooding effects of the Project, NZTA proposes to adopt the recommendations set out above.

D12. Groundwater and Settlement

The Assessment of Effects on Groundwater (**Appendix D12** of this Volume) provides an analysis of actual and potential hydrogeological effects generated by the Project.

Section 2 of the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater sets out the assessment methodology applied in preparing the assessment. Section 4 of the assessment provides an assessment of actual and potential hydrogeological effects on of the Project. These effects are summarised in order as follows.

D12.1. Effects of construction dewatering and depressurisation (construction phase)

To enable construction activities, short and medium-term dewatering will be required. Short-term dewatering would likely occur for periods spanning several days or weeks (but not longer timeframes) at each site, for the purpose of supporting the installation of culverts, pipelines, and stormwater retention basins. Medium-term dewatering taking several weeks or months will be generally required for the installation of bridge piers in valley areas where groundwater is known to seep into streams and wetlands.

Based on the anticipated activities required to construct the Indicative Alignment, the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater concludes the impacts of these dewatering activities are expected to be small-scale, localised and temporary.

D12.2. Effects on baseflow to wetlands and streams from permanent dewatering (operational phase)

The Assessment of Effects on Groundwater concludes that groundwater drawdown and accompanying potential adverse effects on baseflows to wetland and streams may occur where the Indicative Alignment will be cut at depths below the shallow groundwater table / profile. Drainage systems will be installed to remove stormwater and collect groundwater seepage from the cuts and adjacent embankments and will permanently draw groundwater levels down adjacent to the cuts. Rainfall on sealed road surfaces will no longer infiltrate to groundwater but will be captured and diverted via channels along the road to lower areas where it will flow out into stormwater treatment facilities and then discharge in lower-lying streams and wetlands.

The seepage of groundwater into the cut area is high initially and gradually decreases over time, hence the change in groundwater level adjacent to the cut will change rapidly initially and then more gradually. The Assessment of Effects on Groundwater finds that the groundwater drawdown and baseflow reduction effects will not noticeably change after an approximate period of five years.

Most of the streams and wetlands in the Proposed Designation and surrounding area receive water from both rainfall runoff and groundwater seepage. In the summer period (when rain is less common) wetlands and streams become drier where groundwater does not support the near surface or surface flows. Where

it does, the groundwater base flow drives the retention of a range of species or the feature itself through the dry period.

As noted within the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater, a reduction in groundwater levels near streams and wetlands affected by the Project can result in the reduction or even cessation of groundwater flows to these features, thereby having consequential impacts on their ecological values. The effect will be greater on streams and wetlands that are closer to large cuts, and on streams and wetlands that are above the cut level (for example, creating hanging streams or wetlands). This greater effect is caused by the depression of groundwater by the deep cuts and because the drainage water cannot be diverted to those wetlands under gravity. The effect is that streams would have lower water flows, where perennial streams becoming intermittent and intermittent streams becoming ephemeral, and wetlands could be diminished.

As outlined in the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater, to determine the magnitude of adverse effects, nine cross sections were modelled to consider the impact of drawdown. In summary, the results of the modelling show that groundwater drainage rate from the permanent road drainage is expected to be up to 1,596 m³/day initially across all the Brynderwyn Hills section, when the cuts have been excavated. This rate will gradually reduce to about 580 m³/day after five years. Following this period, the groundwater drainage rate is expected to stabilise.

The mapped wetlands are positioned near the margins of the drawdown zones and fall within areas of negligible to low baseflow reduction. As a result, the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater concludes direct effects of the Project on these wetlands will be low, despite some stream depletion effects on the feeder streams.

D12.3. Potential effects of reduction in groundwater drainage for realigned streams on top of spoil sites

Filling stream valleys with spoil from large road cuts can reduce baseflows in groundwater fed streams. Spoil sites will include drainage systems at their base to divert existing stream water and prevent spoil washout. Where possible, streams will be realigned alongside the spoil piles to maintain some contact with natural valley sides. If a stream is reinstated on top of the fill material, groundwater seepage into the realigned stream would decrease and be mostly reliant on upstream surface flow, with the extent of reduction depending on groundwater levels and the design of the realigned stream. These hydrological factors may mean stream realignments cannot be successfully established at spoil sites such that intermittent streams may become ephemeral and perennial may become intermittent, resulting in habitat loss. Ecological effects of these changes are addressed in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (**Appendix D7** of this Volume). Quantifying changes in stream flow is not possible until detailed stream realignment designs are completed. The Assessment of Effects on Groundwater concludes that in areas where groundwater levels remain higher than the spoil surface, some groundwater seepage will continue, however, at reduced rates.

D12.4. Potential effects on neighbouring groundwater users

There is very limited information available on the existing water supply wells within an approximate 1 km distance from the Indicative Alignment and hence it is not possible to confirm risks to nearby wells.

The Assessment of Effects on Groundwater has therefore adopted a conservative approach in respect of potential effects on existing water supply wells. Specifically, if drawdown effects are larger than the seasonal fluctuation, the well is assumed to be affected. The results of the well interference effects assessment are listed in the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater and indicate one water supply well and one surface water take will be potentially impacted by the Project.

D12.5. Potential settlement effects on nearby structures due to groundwater drawdown

The proposed deep cuts along the Proposed Designation in the Brynderwyn Hills are expected to intersect the groundwater table and require drainage, potentially altering the long-term groundwater flow regime and associated surface-water features connected to it. To assess the potential surface settlement resulting from dewatering, analytical calculations were undertaken.

Three locations were modelled in relation to settlement effects from dewatering inclusive of the cut on pylons in the Waipapa Geology Region (CH 15,800-20,500); the cut on pylons in the Northland Allochthon Geology Region (CH 20,600-24,500); and the cut on First Gas Pipeline in Earthworks Zone 4. In summary, the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater concluded that settlement effects on nearby structures from dewatering will be negligible to minimal with settlement on structures estimated to range from approximately 20 mm to 50 mm.

D12.6. Potential effects on groundwater quality

Groundwater samples were collected from four boreholes at the BH2B 1160 unexpected contamination site and analysed for metals. The results were compared against relevant freshwater guidelines,⁵⁴ using 80% species protection levels, except for benzene which used the 95% protection value. All sampled results met the relevant guideline criteria. Further assessment is still recommended, as outlined in the Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects (**Appendix D9** of this Volume).

D12.7. Mitigation

D12.7.1. Mitigation Recommended by Specialist

In summary, section 5 of the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater recommends the following mitigation and management measures:

- Mitigation Options for baseflow reduction (construction phase) - Groundwater and rainfall runoff that is captured on the road surface or by construction dewatering can be temporarily diverted to nearby potentially affected wetlands to minimise impacts.
- Mitigation Options for baseflow reduction (operational phase) - There is an opportunity to divert some or all of the rainfall that falls on the road surface and groundwater captured by the road drainage into affected wetlands and streams that are situated at a lower elevation than the nearest point of the Indicative Alignment, thus augmenting their flow. This means that the lower-lying streams and wetlands near the Project will continue to receive the water that would have previously flowed in via groundwater seepage. Stormwater and drainage water treatment prior to discharge to the wetlands is recommended. However, this augmentation of flows may not fully mitigate all stream depletion effects. The filling of stream valleys with spoil from the large road cuts is likely to lead to a reduction in baseflows to streams.
- Alternative water supply for affected water takes (construction phase) - Any localised and temporary impacts to water takes can be alleviated by temporarily providing an alternative water supply by water carting.
- Alternative water supply for affected water takes (operational phase) - If any water supply wells of surface water takes are affected long term alternative water supply such as the following could be provided:
 - A new and deeper water supply well installed at a different location, with a pump installed deeper, both of which would increase the reliability of the groundwater take.
 - A surface water take with onsite storage capacity.

⁵⁴ Australian and New Zealand Guidelines for Fresh and Marine Water Quality, Volume 1 (ANZECC 2000).

- Long-term water carting with onsite storage capacity.
- Mitigation options for land settlement – settlement effects are minimal to negligible; settlement should be reviewed if Major Cut intercept the groundwater table by more than 2 m.
- Detailed groundwater remodelling to confirm actual and potential effects at the time of detailed design.
- Ground water quality effects - No specific mitigation required.

Monitoring Requirements

Refer to the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (**Appendix D7** of this Volume) for details on ecological monitoring.

D12.7.2. Mitigation Proposed by NZTA

NZTA proposes the following mitigation to address any potential groundwater and settlement effects as recommended by the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater:

- Ensure the Project does not result in groundwater drawdown of individuals' ground and surface water takes, and provision of alternative water supplies.
- Detailed groundwater remodelling to confirm actual and potential effects at the time of detailed design.

D13. Construction Air Quality and Dust

The Project will involve extensive earthworks, which will require a significant number of truck movements per day within the Proposed Designation. The most common and frequent sources likely to affect air quality include loading and off-loading of vehicles with spoil, substrate, and aggregate, and resuspension of dust from exposed surfaces. More irregular or one-off sources may include blasting and rock crushing.

The four Earthworks Zones within the Proposed Designation (as detailed in Volume A), have a varying number of highly sensitive receptor (HSRs) within 200 m of the Proposed Designation boundary. No sensitive ecological receptors have been identified within 200 m of the Proposed Designation boundary. A summary of the key dust producing activities for each Earthworks Zone is as follows:

- **Earthworks Zone 1 (Northern Lowland):** Construction of the proposed Waipū Interim Tie-in is anticipated to have dust impacts on nearby residential receptors. There are, however, fewer than 50 HSRs and fewer than 50 outward truck movements anticipated per day.
- **Earthworks Zone 2 (Brynderwyn Hills):** This zone accommodates roughly half of the proposed spoil sites for the Project and therefore significant movement of earthworks materials and trucks are expected. However, this zone has fewer HSRs identified and outward truck movements anticipated than in Earthworks Zone 1.
- **Earthworks Zone 3 (Brynderwyn Hills to SH12):** Extensive earthworks are required in this zone due to the terrain. However, only four dwellings have been identified as HSRs within the Proposed Designation boundary and within 200 m of the boundary, and a total of six outward truck movements anticipated per day.
- **Earthworks Zone 4 (SH12 to Pukekaroro):** Construction of the proposed SH12 interchange will contribute the most construction dust in this zone. However, few outward truck movements are anticipated per day and few HSRs have been identified in this zone that will be affected by the dust.

D13.1. Mitigation

To mitigate dust effects from the Project during construction, NZTA is proposing a condition requiring preparation and implementation of a DMP, following the completion of the construction methodology, including information on the location and extent of construction activities, at the Detailed Design stage. The DMP will manage dust throughout all stages of the Project's construction activities.

Other mitigation measures and controls are expected to be included in the DMP for specific activities, such as machinery use and blasting. These mitigation measures and controls will be dependent on the magnitude of the activity and their distance from any identified HSRs, which will be confirmed at the Detailed Design stage.

Continuous instrumental monitoring at the Proposed Designation boundary is not considered to be necessary for the Project. Instead, visual monitoring by on-site contractors is recommended where there is a potential risk of impact to HSRs beyond the Proposed Designation boundary, to monitor weather conditions and implement dust control measures as necessary.

With the implementation of a DMP, it is considered that the potential dust effects of the Project will be adequately managed and are no more than minor.

D14. Highly Productive Land

In a district context, the direct loss of approximately 97 ha of HPL from permanent features and potential compaction effects on 362 ha within the Proposed Designation is minor when considering there is 33,229 ha of HPL in the Kaipara District and 29,878 ha in the Whangārei District. This total direct loss of HPL is calculated as 0.57% of the HPL in the Kaipara and Whangārei Districts.

Potential reduction in productive capacity can occur through fragmentation or reduction in the size of property titles. It is considered that opportunities for primary production will remain for property titles that are severed by the Proposed Designation, however the scale and type of land use may change as a result of small parcel sizes. It is recommended that the Project seek to minimise the extent of fragmentation as far as reasonably practicable, including through maintaining appropriate access between HPL areas within a property. Options for landowners include changes to existing land uses, amalgamating adjoining properties or leasing.

Construction activities on areas that are not under the footprint of permanent features can result in structural changes to the soil from compaction and degradation of topsoil characteristics. Excessive compaction can result in reduction of productive capacity of land. Mitigation measures include minimising the footprint of potential compaction areas and minimise stripping and stockpiling topsoil.

D14.1. Mitigation

Mitigation through avoidance is the most effective approach in reducing the impact of HPL loss. When focusing on minimising direct loss, NZTA proposes careful alignment planning to reduce the footprint of permanent features on HPL, thereby preserving as much land as possible for primary production. By prioritising avoidance, Project design seeks to maintain the existing productive capacity and limit fragmentation of HPL parcels.

An important supplementary measure involves limiting construction activities to locations situated outside the HPL area.

Part E – Proposed Conditions

E1. Proposed Conditions

Based on the recommended mitigation, management and monitoring measures to manage actual and potential adverse effects summarised above, draft Proposed Conditions have been developed for both the NoR and suite of resource consents to ensure that potential adverse effects that may arise from the Detailed Design and construction/operation of the Project will be adequately managed.

Part F – Conclusion

F1. Approval under Section 85

As demonstrated in this report the Project meets the purpose of and satisfies the statutory requirements of the FTAA (see **Section C5** of Volume A). The Project is broadly consistent with the policy framework of the relevant planning documents and with the purpose and principles of the RMA (see Part C of this Volume). The Project is also deemed an eligible activity (see Section A5.1 of Volume A) under the FTAA and is consistent with the obligations arising under existing Treaty settlements.

NZTA's draft Proposed Conditions (**Appendix E** of this Volume) will ensure the actual and potential adverse impacts of the Project are appropriately managed. Any residual adverse impacts are not sufficiently significant as to be out of proportion to the significant national and regional benefits of the Project (see Section C5 of Volume A).

In summary, the Project meets the purpose of and satisfies the statutory requirements of the FTAA. It has significant national and regional benefits which, subject to the mitigation proposed by NZTA in the Proposed Conditions, outweigh any residual adverse impacts. Therefore, there are no barriers to granting the approvals being sought pursuant to the FTAA.

Part G – Appendices

APPENDICES



Appendix A

FTAA Checklists A (Resource Consents) and C (Designations)

CHECKLIST A – Resource consent, change to or cancellation of a resource consent

Checklist A must be completed if you are applying for an approval under section 42(4)(a) (resource consent) and/or section 42(4)(b) (change or cancellation of resource consent condition). The substantive application must comply with these requirements. The checklist is designed to assist you in providing all the relevant information. If an application does not comply with all requirements, then the EPA must return it to the person who lodged it.

This checklist, and checklist A1 and A2, set out the requirements in clauses 5 – 9 of Schedule 5, unless they have already been addressed in the substantive form.

If the application is for a subdivision or reclamation, in addition to checklist A, checklist A1 must also be completed.

If the application includes a standard freshwater fisheries activity, checklist A2 must be completed.

If this checklist is being completed for an approval for a change or cancellation of a resource consent, clause 10 of Schedule 5 provides that the application include the information required in clauses 5-9 of Schedule 5, and those clauses apply as if reference to a resource consent were to the change or cancellation of a condition and an activity were to the effects of the change or cancellation of the condition.

Clause, Schedule 5	Information required for an approval described in section 42(4)(a) (resource consent) and/or section 42(4)(b) (change or cancellation of resource consent), Clauses 5-8 of Schedule 5	Application Reference (Name of document, section and page)
5(1)(a)	A description of the proposed activity	Volume A, Part C, pp. 27-50
5(1)(b)	A description and map of the site at which the activity is to occur, including whether the site is within or adjacent to— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) a statutory area (as defined in the relevant Treaty settlement Act); or (ii) ngā rohe moana o ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou (as defined in section 11 of the Ngā Rohe Moana o Ngā Hapū o Ngāti Porou Act 2019); or (iii) a protected customary rights area under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 	Volume A, Part B, pp. 13-26 Volume A, Appendix D
5(1)(c)	Confirmation that the consent application complies with section 46(2)(a), (b), and (d); being: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • section 42; and 	Volume A, Section A2, pp.1-2 Volume A, Section A5.4, pp. 5 Volume A, Section A7, pp. 7-9

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sections 43 and 44; and • relates solely to a listed project or a referred project; and • any fee, charge, or levy payable under regulations in respect of the application is paid. <p><i>Guidance note: Section 46 provides for the EPA to decide whether the substantive application is complete and within scope. The EPA will need to be satisfied that the application complies with these requirements. These matters are addressed throughout the substantive application form and relevant checklist.</i></p>	
5(1)(d) and 5(6)	<p>The full name and address of—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) each owner of the site and of land adjacent to the site; and (ii) each occupier of the site and of land adjacent to the site whom the applicant is unable to identify after reasonable inquiry; <p>If the applicant is not able to supply the name and address of the owner and each occupier of the site and of land adjacent to the site because the land is Māori land in multiple ownership, the applicant must include a statement to that effect (clause 5(6)).</p>	<p>Volume A, Section D5, p. 60 Volume A, Appendix D Volume B, Appendices F and G</p>
5(1)(e)	<p>A description of any other activities that are part of the proposal to which the consent application relates</p>	<p>Volume A, Part C, pp. 27-50</p>
5(1)(f)	<p>A description of any other resource consents, notices of requirement for designations, or alterations to designations required for the project to which the consent application relates</p>	<p>Volume A, Section A6, pp. 5-6</p>
5(1)(g)	<p>An assessment of the activity against sections 5, 6 and 7 of the Resource Management Act 1991</p>	<p>Volume B, Section C7, pp. 35-37</p>
5(1)(h) (and also clauses 5(2) and 5(3))	<p>An assessment of the activity against any relevant provisions in any of the following documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a national environmental standard; • other regulations made under the Resource Management Act 1991; • a national policy statement; • a New Zealand coastal policy statement; 	<p>Volume B, Section C2, pp. 10-21 Volume B, Section C3, pp. 21-23 Volume B, Appendix C</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a regional policy statement or proposed regional policy statement: • a plan or proposed plan: • a planning document recognised by a relevant iwi authority and lodged with a local authority. <p>This assessment must include an assessment of the activity against the requirements set out in clause 5(3) of Schedule 5 being:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • any relevant objectives, policies or rules in the documents listed; and • any requirement, condition, or permission in any rules in any of those documents; and • any other requirements in any of those documents. 	
5(1)(i)	<p>Information about any Treaty settlements that apply in the area covered by the consent application, including—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) identification of the relevant provisions in those Treaty settlements; and (ii) a summary of any redress provided by those settlements that affects natural and physical resources relevant to the project or project area 	Volume A, Section D7, pp.62-63
5(1)(j)	<p>A list of any relevant customary marine title groups, protected customary rights groups, ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou (where an application is within, adjacent to or directly affecting ngā rohe moana o ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou), or applicants under the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011;</p>	Volume A, Section A5.1, pp. 4 Volume A, Section D6.2, pp. 62
5(1)(k)	<p>Any conditions that the applicant proposes for the resource consent.</p>	Volume B, Part E3 Volume B, Appendix E
5(1)(l)	<p>if a notice under section 30(3)(b) or (5) has been received,—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) a copy of that notice showing that it was received within the time frame specified in section 30(6)(b); and (ii) if a notice has been received under section 30(5), any more up-to-date information that the applicant is aware of about the existing resource consent referred to in the notice. 	Volume A, Section B2, pp. 13 Volume A, Appendix C

5(4)(a)	<p>An assessment of the activity's effects on the environment that includes the information required by clause 6.</p> <p><i>Guidance note: See rows below for requirements in clause 6.</i></p>	<p>Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84 and the appended technical assessments (Appendices D1 to D12)</p>
5(4)(b)	<p>An assessment of the activity's effects on the environment that covers the matters specified in clause 7.</p> <p><i>Guidance note: See rows below for requirements in clause 7.</i></p>	<p>Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84 and the appended technical assessments (Appendices D1 to D12)</p>
6	<p>(1) The assessment of an activity's effects on the environment must include the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) an assessment of the actual or potential effects on the environment: (b) if the activity includes the use of hazardous installations, an assessment of any risks to the environment that are likely to arise from such use: (c) if the activity includes the discharge of any contaminant, a description of— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) the nature of the discharge and the sensitivity of the receiving environment to adverse effects; and (ii) any possible alternative methods of discharge, including discharge into any other receiving environment: (d) a description of the mitigation measures (including safeguards and contingency plans where relevant) to be undertaken to help prevent or reduce the actual or potential effect of the activity: (e) identification of persons who may be affected by the activity and any response to the views of any persons consulted, including the views of iwi or hapū that have been consulted in relation to the proposal: (f) if iwi or hapū elect not to respond when consulted on the proposal, any reasons that they have specified for that decision: (g) if the scale and significance of the activity's effects are such that monitoring is required, a description 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a), (c) and (d): Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84. (b): N/A (c): Volume B, Sections D10 and D11.1, pp. 65-70 (d): Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84. (e): Volume A, Part D, pp. 52-63 Volume A, Appendix E (f): Volume A, Part D, pp. 52-63 Volume A, Appendix E (g): Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84. (h): N/A

	<p>of how the effects will be monitored and by whom, if the activity is approved:</p> <p>(h) an assessment of any effects of the activity on the exercise of a protected customary right.</p> <p><i>Guidance note: Clause 6(2) provides that a consent application need not include any additional information specified in a relevant policy statement or plan that would be required in an assessment of environmental effects under clause 6(2) or 7(2) of Schedule 4 of the Resource Management Act.</i></p>	
7	<p>The assessment of an activity's effects on the environment must cover the following matters:</p> <p>(a) any effect on the people in the neighbourhood and, if relevant, the wider community, including any social, economic, or cultural effects:</p> <p>(b) any physical effect on the locality, including landscape and visual effects:</p> <p>(c) any effect on ecosystems, including effects on plants or animals and physical disturbance of habitats in the vicinity:</p> <p>(d) any effect on natural and physical resources that have aesthetic, recreational, scientific, historical, spiritual, or cultural value, or other special value, for present or future generations:</p> <p>(e) any discharge of contaminants into the environment and options for the treatment and disposal of contaminants:</p> <p>(f) any unreasonable emission of noise:</p> <p>(g) any risk to the neighbourhood, the wider community, or the environment through natural hazards or hazardous installations.</p>	<p>a): Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84. (b): Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84, and in particular, Section D5, pp. 47-50 and Appendix D4. (c): Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84, and in particular, Section D7, pp. 51-62. (d): Volume B, Sections D5 and D6, pp. 47-51, and in particular, (e): Volume B, Sections D10 and D11.1, pp. 65-70, and Appendices D10 and D11. (f): Volume B, Section D4, pp. 44-47, and Appendices D2 and D3. (g): Volume B, Section D11.2, pp. 70-72 and Appendix D11.</p>
5(5)(a)	<p>If a permitted activity is part of the proposal to which the consent application relates, a description that demonstrates that the activity complies with the requirements, conditions, and permissions for the permitted activity (so that a resource consent is not</p>	<p>Volume B, Section B3, pp. 6-9. Volume B, Appendix B</p>

	required for that activity under section 87A(1) of the Resource Management Act 1991)	
5(5)(b)	If the activity is to occur in an area that is within the scope of a planning document prepared by a customary marine title group under section 85 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 or the environmental covenant prepared by ngā hapū o Ngāti Porou under section 19 of the Ngā Rohe Moana o Ngā Hapū o Ngāti Porou Act 2019, an assessment of the activity against any resource management matters set out in that document	N/A
5(5)(c)	If the activity is to occur in an area that is taiāpure-local fishery, a mātaihai reserve, or an area that is subject to bylaws made under Part 9 of the Fisheries Act 1996, an assessment of the effects of the activity on the use or management of the area.	N/A

CHECKLIST C – Designation or alteration of existing designation

This checklist must be completed if you are applying for an approval under section 42(4)(d) (designation or alteration of existing designation). The substantive application must comply with these requirements. The checklist is designed to assist you in providing all the relevant information. If an application does not comply with all requirements, then the EPA must return it to the person who lodged it.

This checklist sets out the requirements in clause 12 of Schedule 5, unless they have already been addressed in the substantive form.

Clause, Schedule 5	Information required for an approval described in section 42(4)(d) of the Act, Clause 12 of Schedule 5	Application Reference (Name of document, section and page)
12(1)(a)	a description and map of the site to which the notice of requirement applies, including whether the site is within or adjacent to a statutory area (as defined in a relevant Treaty settlement Act)	Volume B, Section B3, pp. 6-9. Volume B, Appendix B
12(1)(b)	information on the effects of the proposed project or work on the environment, together with a description of how any adverse effects will be mitigated	Volume B, Section C5.1, pp. 24 Volume B, Part D, pp. 38-84 and the appended technical assessments (Appendices D1 to D12)
12(1)(c)	confirmation that the notice of requirement complies with section 46(2)(a), (b), and (d), being; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • section 42; and • sections 43 and 44; and • relates solely to a listed project or a referred project; • any fee, charge, or levy payable under regulations in respect of the application is paid. <p><i>Guidance note: Section 46 provides for the EPA deciding whether the substantive application is complete and within scope. The EPA will need to be satisfied that the application complies with these requirements. These matters are addressed throughout the substantive application form and relevant checklist.</i></p>	Volume A, Section A2, pp.1-2 Volume A, Section A5.4, pp. 5 Volume A, Section A7, pp. 7-9
12(1)(d) (i)	an assessment of the project or work against sections 5, 6, and 7 of the Resource Management Act 1991	Volume B, Section C7, pp. 35-37
12(1)(d) (ii) and 12(2)	an assessment of the project or work against any relevant provisions in any of the documents listed in subclause (2) being: <p>(a) a national policy statement:</p>	Volume B, Section C2, pp. 10-21 Volume B, Section C3, pp. 21-23 Volume B, Appendix C

	<p>(b) a New Zealand coastal policy statement:</p> <p>(c) a regional policy statement or proposed regional policy statement:</p> <p>(d) a plan or proposed plan:</p> <p>(e) a planning document recognised by a relevant iwi authority and lodged with a local authority.</p>	
12(1)(e)	<p>information about any Treaty settlements that apply in the area to which the substantive application relates, including—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) identification of the relevant provisions in those Treaty settlements; and (ii) a summary of any redress provided by those settlements that affects natural and physical resources relevant to the area to which the substantive application relates 	Volume A, Section D7, pp.62-63
12(1)(f), 12(3) and 12(4)	<p>the full name and address of—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) each owner of the land to which the notice of requirement relates and of the land adjacent to that land; and (ii) each occupier of the land to which the notice of requirement relates and of land adjacent to that land whom the requiring authority is able to identify after reasonable inquiry; and <p>If the applicant is not able to supply the name and address of the owner and each occupier of the site and of land adjacent to the site because the land is Māori land in multiple ownership, the applicant must include a statement to that effect (clause 12(3)).</p> <p><i>Guidance note: If the substantive application is lodged by more than 1 authorised person, the reference to the applicant in subclause (3) must be read as a reference to the authorised person who is to be identified in the application as the proposed holder of the notice of requirement (clause 12(4)).</i></p>	Volume A, Section D5, pp. 60 Volume A, Appendix D Volume B, Appendices F and G

12(1)(g)	an assessment of whether the project or work and the designation sought are reasonably necessary for achieving the objectives of the requiring authority	Volume B, Section C5.3, pp. 31-3
12(1)(h)	any consideration of alternative sites, routes, or methods of undertaking the project or work	Volume B, Section C5.2, pp. 24-31
12(1)(i)	a list of the resource consents needed for the project or work and whether they have been applied for	Volume B, Section B3, pp. 6-9. Volume B, Appendix B
12(1)(j)	a description of any consultation undertaken with parties likely to be affected by the project or work and the designation	Volume A, Part D, pp. 52-63 Volume A, Appendix E
12(1)(k)	any conditions that the requiring authority proposes for the designation.	Volume B, Section E2 Volume B, Appendix E

Appendix B

Rules Assessment

Appendix B – Comprehensive Rule Assessment

1. Introduction

Section 3 comprises a comprehensive rule assessment of the Project against statutory documents for which resource consent(s) may be required to facilitate the Project. The assessment has been structured in the following order:

- **National Environmental Standards:**
 - Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulation 2004 (**NES-AQ**);
 - Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Sources for Human Drinking Water) Regulation 2007 (**NES-DW**);
 - Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011 (**NES-CS**); and
 - Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 (**NES-F**).
- **Regional Authority Plans:**
 - Regional Plan for Northland (**RPN**) 2026;

2. Summary of Consents Required

The resource consents required for the Project are summarised in Table 1.

Table 1: Summary of resource consents required and associated activity status for the Project

Section	Reference	Activity	Activity Status
Resource consent required under the Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to protect Human Health) Regulations 2011 (Clause 11)			
s9(1)	Regulation 11	This regulation applies to an activity described in any of regulation 5(2) to 6 on a piece of land described in regulation 5(7) or (8) that is not a permitted activity, controlled activity, or restricted discretionary activity.	Discretionary Activity
Resource consents required under the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 (Clauses 45, 57 and 71)			
s9(2) and s14(2)	Regulation 45	Earthworks and vegetation clearance within 10m of a natural wetland	Discretionary Activity
s9(2) and s14(2)	Regulation 57	Riverbed reclamation	Discretionary Activity
s9(2) and s14(2)	Regulation 71	The installation, modification, expansion, or rebuilding of a culvert located in, on, above, or below a riverbed	Discretionary Activity
Resource consents required under the Regional Plan for Northland (2026)			
s13(1) and 14(2)	Rule C.2.1.11	Activities in, on, or under the bed of a river that include constructing or installing structures, disturbing the riverbed, introducing plants, depositing substances, or reclaiming/draining the bed of a river that are not subject to any other rule in the Plan	Discretionary Activity
s13(1) and 14(2)	Rule C.2.1.13	The placement of Regionally Significant Infrastructure that is located in, on, under or over the bed of a lake or river, that is part of a significant wetland, and any associated temporary damming, taking or diversion of water around the activity site, and any associated bed disturbance or deposition of a substance in, on, or under the bed, that is not subject to any other rule in <i>C.2.1 Activities in the beds of lakes and rivers</i> of this Plan	Discretionary Activity
s9(2) and 14(2) 13(1)	Rule C.2.2.4	Removing vegetation, constructing or modifying structures, and disturbing or installing structures in natural or constructed wetland areas	Discretionary Activity
s9(2) and 14(2) 13(1)	Rule C.2.2.6	Activities in a significant wetland that include the disturbance or removal of vegetation and the placement of structure	Non-Complying Activity
s13(1) and 14(2)	Rule C.3.1.7	River channel diversion, and any associated disturbance of the bed or deposition of material on the bed, that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan, provided it is not a significant wetland	Discretionary Activity
s14(2)	Rule C.3.1.8	Damming or diverting water in a river or natural wetland, any associated disturbance of the bed of a river and deposition of material on the bed, and the associated damming and diversion of water that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan	Discretionary Activity
s14(2)	Rule C.3.1.9	Obstructions that divert water onto another property	Discretionary Activity
s14(2)	Rule C.3.1.10	Damming or diversion of water in a significant wetland or significant area	Non-Complying Activity
s14(2)	Rule C.5.1.12	Other water takes that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan	Discretionary Activity
s15(1)	Rule C.6.4.6	Discharge or diversion of stormwater onto or into contaminated land or from high-risk industrial or trade premises	Discretionary Activity
s15(1) and s15(2A)	Rule C.6.8.5	Discharge of a contaminant from contaminated land that is not subject to any other rule in <i>C.6.8 Contaminated land</i> of this Plan	Discretionary Activity
S9(2), 14(2) and 15(1)	Rule C.8.3.4	Earthworks outside the bed of a river or lake, a wetland, or the coastal marine area, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, that are not subject to any other rule in <i>C.8.3 Earthworks</i> of this Plan	Discretionary Activity

Section	Reference	Activity	Activity Status
S9(2), 14(2) and 15(1)	Rule C.8.4.3	Vegetation clearance within 10 metres of a natural wetland, or within 10 metres of the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, that is not subject to any other rule in C.8.4 Vegetation clearance in riparian areas and foreshore management area of this Plan	Discretionary Activity

Overall, the activity status of the Project is assessed as:

- A **Discretionary Activity** under the NES-CS;
- A **Discretionary Activity** under the NES-F; and
- A **Non-Complying Activity** under the RPN.

No resource consents are required under the NES-AQ and NES-DW.

Detailed rule assessments of the relevant national environmental standards and the RPN are provided in the following sections.

3. Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004

The NES-AQ sets standards for air quality to provide a guaranteed minimum level of health protection. An assessment is contained within Table 2.

Table 2: Assessment of the Project against the relevant rules under the NES-AQ

Reference	Rule	Comment
Ambient Air Quality Standards for Contaminants		
Regulation 13	<p>(1) The ambient air quality standard for a contaminant specified in the first column of the table in Schedule 1 is that the contaminant must not exceed its threshold concentration in an airshed unless the exceedance is a permissible exceedance.</p> <p>(2) The ambient air quality standard for a contaminant is breached if the contaminant exceeds its threshold concentration in an airshed and the exceedance is not a permissible exceedance.</p> <p>(3) In these regulations,—</p> <p>exceedance, for a contaminant, means an instance where the contaminant exceeds its threshold concentration in an airshed</p> <p>permissible exceedance, for a contaminant, means 1 of the number of exceedances allowed for the contaminant in an airshed as specified in the third column of the table in Schedule 1</p> <p>threshold concentration, for a contaminant, means the concentration of the contaminant specified in the second column of the table in Schedule 1 calculated as a mean for the time period specified in that column.</p>	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>Based on the number of truck movements forecast for the Project, it is unlikely that construction vehicle emissions will be significant, as such no further assessment against the NES-AQ has been completed.</p> <p>The Project will, therefore, comply with the ambient air quality standards.</p>

4. Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Sources of Human Drinking Water) Regulation 2007

The NES-DW sets out how to protect human drinking water from sources of contaminants, ensuring that water supplied to communities is safe for consumption. The Project is assessed to be a **Permitted Activity** under these regulations as all conditions will be met. **Error! Reference source not found.** below provides the relevant clauses and interpretation on requirements and expected compliance status.

Table 3: Assessment of the Project against the relevant rules under the NES-DW

Water and discharge permits in respect of activities with potential to affect certain drinking-water supplies		
Regulation 6 Permitted Activities	<p><i>Type of activity to which regulations 7 and 8 apply</i></p> <p>Regulations 7 and 8 only apply to an activity that has the potential to affect a registered drinking-water supply that provides no fewer than 501 people with drinking water for not less than 60 days each calendar year.</p>	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>The Project will not impact a registered drinking-water supply. Regulations 7 and 8, which relate to the requirements to apply for a water permit or a discharge permit, are therefore not applicable.</p> <p>As such, the Project complies with this regulation as a permitted activity.</p>

5. Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011

The Project will trigger the NES-CS as a **Discretionary Activity** overall as it involves disturbance of land for a particular purpose¹, and the land involved includes HAIL activities and is likely to include HAIL activities.² Due to the scale of the Project, Detail Site Investigations (DSIs) have not been undertaken for its entirety and limited soil sampling has been undertaken at sites of interest, therefore the 'land not covered' exception in the NES-CS does not apply to the Project.³ Table 4 below provides the relevant clauses and interpretation on requirements and expected compliance status.

Table 4: Assessment of the Project against the relevant rules under the NES-CS

Reference	Rule	Comment
Regulation 8 Permitted Activities	<p><i>Disturbing soil</i></p> <p>(3) Disturbing the soil of the piece of land is a permitted activity while the following requirements are met:</p> <p>(a) controls to minimise the exposure of humans to mobilised contaminants must—</p> <p>(i) be in place when the activity begins:</p> <p>(ii) be effective while the activity is done:</p> <p>(iii) be effective until the soil is reinstated to an erosion-resistant state:</p> <p>(b) the soil must be reinstated to an erosion-resistant state within 1 month after the serving of the purpose for which the activity was done:</p> <p>(c) the volume of the disturbance of the soil of the piece of land must be no more than 25 m³ per 500 m²:</p> <p>(d) soil must not be taken away in the course of the activity, except that,—</p> <p>(i) for the purpose of laboratory analysis, any amount of soil may be taken away as samples:</p> <p>(ii) for all other purposes combined, a maximum of 5 m³ per 500 m² of soil may be taken away per year:</p> <p>(e) soil taken away in the course of the activity must be disposed of at a facility authorised to receive soil of that kind:</p> <p>(f) the duration of the activity must be no longer than 2 months:</p> <p>(g) the integrity of a structure designed to contain contaminated soil or other contaminated materials must not be compromised.</p>	<p><i>Does not comply</i></p> <p>The Project will involve the disturbance of soil of the piece of land that exceeds the permitted threshold and placing cut soil into on-site spoil areas that exceeds the maximum permitted volumes per year. The Project's earthworks duration will also be longer than 2 months.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Regulation 8 standards cannot be achieved.</p>
Regulation 9 Controlled Activities	<p>Removing or replacing fuel storage system, sampling soil, or disturbing soil</p> <p>(1) If a requirement described in any of regulation 8(1) to (3) is not met, the activity is a controlled activity while the following requirements are met:</p> <p>(a) a detailed site investigation of the piece of land must exist:</p> <p>(b) the report on the detailed site investigation must state that the soil contamination does not exceed the applicable standard in regulation 7:</p> <p>(c) the consent authority must have the report:</p> <p>(d) conditions arising from the application of subclause (2), if there are any, must be complied with.</p>	<p><i>Does not comply</i></p> <p>Due to the scale of the Project, a Detailed Site Investigation (DSI) has not been carried out for its entirety, therefore the Project will not comply with the requirement under Regulation 9(1)(a).</p> <p>As such, compliance with Regulation 9 standards cannot be achieved.</p>
Regulation 10 Restricted Discretionary Activities	<p>(1) This regulation applies to an activity described in any of regulation 5(2) to (6) on a piece of land described in regulation 5(7) or (8) that is not a permitted activity or a controlled activity.</p> <p>(2) The activity is a restricted discretionary activity while the following requirements are met:</p> <p>(a) a detailed site investigation of the piece of land must exist:</p> <p>(b) the report on the detailed site investigation must state that the soil contamination exceeds the applicable standard in regulation 7:</p> <p>(c) the consent authority must have the report:</p> <p>(d) conditions arising from the application of subclause (3), if there are any, must be complied with.</p>	<p><i>Does not comply</i></p> <p>Due to the scale of the Project, a DSI has not been carried out for its entirety, therefore the Project does not meet the requirement under Regulation 10(2)(a).</p> <p>As such, compliance with Regulation 10 standards cannot be achieved.</p>
Regulation 11 Discretionary Activities	<p>(1) This regulation applies to an activity described in any of regulation 5(2) to (6) on a piece of land described in regulation 5(7) or (8) that is not a permitted activity, controlled activity, or restricted discretionary activity.</p> <p>(2) The activity is a discretionary activity.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>As the Project is not a permitted activity, controlled activity or restricted discretionary activity, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Regulation 11.</p>

¹ Regulation 5, subclause (4)(a), NES-CS 2011.

² Regulation 5, subclause (7), NES-CS 2011.

³ Regulation 5, subclause (9), NES-CS 2011

6. Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020

The NES-F oversees activities impacting freshwater quality and ecology, with subparts covering specific activity types.

- Part 2 of the Act relates to standards for farming activities and are *not* relevant to the Project.
- Part 3 of the Act sets out standards for other activities that relate to freshwater.
 - Subpart 1 relates to natural inland wetlands;
 - Subpart 2 relates to reclamation of rivers; and
 - Subpart 3 relates to the passage of fish affected by structures.

All subparts of Part 3 of the NES-F are relevant to the Project. Overall, the Project is assessed to be a **Discretionary Activity** under the NES-F. The relevant NES-F standards are assessed in Table 5 below.

Table 5: Assessment of the Project against the relevant rules under the NES-F

Reference	Rule	Comment
Part 3 - Standards for other activities that relate to freshwater		
Subpart 1—Natural inland wetlands - Construction of Specified Infrastructure		
<i>The Project is considered “specified infrastructure” under the definition of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management because the Project is regionally significant infrastructure that delivers a service operated by NZTA, a lifeline utility (entity that provides a road network as defined under the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002).</i>		
Regulation 45 Discretionary Activities	(1) Vegetation clearance within, or within a 10 m setback from, a natural inland wetland is a discretionary activity if it is for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure. (2) Earthworks or land disturbance within, or within a 10 m setback from, a natural inland wetland is a discretionary activity if it is for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure. (3) Earthworks or land disturbance outside a 10 m, but within a 100 m, setback from a natural inland wetland is a discretionary activity if it— (a) is for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure; and (b) results, or is likely to result, in the complete or partial drainage of all or part of the natural inland wetland. (4) The taking, use, damming, diversion, or discharge of water within, or within a 100 m setback from, a natural inland wetland is a discretionary activity if— (a) the activity is for the purpose of constructing or upgrading specified infrastructure; and (b) there is a hydrological connection between the taking, use, damming, or diversion and the wetland; and (c) the taking, use, damming, or diversion will change, or is likely to change, the water level range or hydrological function of the wetland. (5) The discharge of water into water within, or within a 100 m setback from, a natural inland wetland is a discretionary activity if— (a) the discharge is for the purpose of constructing or upgrading specified infrastructure; and (b) there is a hydrological connection between the discharge and the wetland; and (c) the discharge will enter the wetland; and (d) the discharge will change, or is likely to change, the water level range or hydrological function of the wetland. (6) A resource consent for a discretionary activity under this regulation must not be granted unless the consent authority has first— (a) satisfied itself that the specified infrastructure will provide significant national or regional benefits; and (b) satisfied itself that there is a functional need for the specified infrastructure in that location; and (c) applied the effects management hierarchy.	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project’s works involves activities within, or within a 10 m and/or within 100m from, natural inland wetland for the purpose of constructing specified infrastructure that include: vegetation clearance; earthworks or land disturbance; temporary damming and diversion; taking or use of water; and discharge of water that will enter the wetland and will change, or likely to change, the water level range or hydrological function of the wetland.</p> <p>Consequently, consent is required pursuant to Regulation 45 of the NES-F.</p>
Subpart 2—Reclamation of rivers		
Regulation 57 Discretionary Activities	(1) Reclamation of the bed of any river is a discretionary activity. (2) A resource consent for a discretionary activity under this regulation must not be granted unless the consent authority has first— (a) satisfied itself that there is a functional need for the reclamation of the riverbed in that location; and (b) applied the effects management hierarchy	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project will involve reclamation of the bed of a river where a section of impacted stream is not replaced by the same length of realigned stream, resulting in a reclamation.</p> <p>Therefore, resource consent is required pursuant to Regulation 57 of the NES-F.</p>
Subpart 3—Passage of fish affected by structures		
Regulation 70 Culverts – Permitted Activities	(1) The placement, use, alteration, extension, or reconstruction of a culvert in, on, over, or under the bed of any river or connected area is a permitted activity if it complies with the conditions. <i>Conditions</i> (2) The conditions are that—	<p><i>Does not comply</i></p> <p>The Project involves the placement, use, alteration, extension or reconstruction of culverts in, on, over, or under the bed of</p>

Reference	Rule	Comment
Part 3 - Standards for other activities that relate to freshwater		
	<p>(a) the culvert must provide for the same passage of fish upstream and downstream as would exist without the culvert, except as required to carry out the works to place, alter, extend, or reconstruct the culvert; and</p> <p>(b) the culvert must be laid parallel to the slope of the bed of the river or connected area; and</p> <p>(c) the mean cross-sectional water velocity in the culvert must be no greater than that in all immediately adjoining river reaches; and</p> <p>(d) the culvert's width where it intersects with the bed of the river or connected area (s) and the width of the bed at that location (w), both measured in metres, must compare as follows:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) where $w \leq 3$, $s \geq 1.3 \times w$;</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) where $w > 3$, $s \geq (1.2 \times w) + 0.6$; and</p> <p>(e) the culvert must be open-bottomed or its invert must be placed so that at least 25% of the culvert's diameter is below the level of the bed; and</p> <p>(f) the bed substrate must be present over the full length of the culvert and stable at the flow rate at or below which the water flows for 80% of the time; and</p> <p>(g) the culvert provides for continuity of geomorphic processes (such as the movement of sediment and debris).</p> <p><i>Information requirements</i></p> <p>(3) See also regulations 62 and 63 for information requirements that apply to the permitted activity (unless the activity is use).</p>	<p>rivers that does not comply with conditions 70(2)(a), (b), (c), (d) (e) and (f).</p> <p>As such, compliance with Regulation 70 standards cannot be achieved.</p>
Regulation 71 Culverts – Discretionary Activities	<p>(1) The placement, use, alteration, extension, or reconstruction of a culvert in, on, over, or under the bed of a river is a discretionary activity if it does not comply with any of the conditions in regulation 70(2).</p> <p><i>Conditions required in resource consent</i></p> <p>(2) A resource consent granted for the discretionary activity must impose the conditions required by—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) regulations 62 and 63 (information about structures and passage of fish and about culverts), unless the activity is use; and</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) regulation 69 (monitoring and maintenance).</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project involves the placement, use, alteration, extension or reconstruction of culverts in, on, over, or under the bed of rivers and does not comply with the conditions of 70(2).</p> <p>Therefore, resource consent is required pursuant to Regulation 71 of the NES-F.</p>

7. Regional Plan for Northland 2026

This section evaluates the Project works against the relevant provisions of the RPN. Overall, the Project is assessed to be a **Non-Complying Activity** under the RPN.

A detailed assessment of the relevant RPN rules are outlined in **Error! Reference source not found.** These tables include assessment of the permitted activities under the RPN as well as those that require resource consent.

Table 6 Detailed assessment of the Project against the relevant rules under the RPN

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
Section C.2 – Activities in the Beds of Lakes and Rivers and in Wetlands		
Section C.2.1 – Activities in the beds of lakes and river		
C.2.1.1 Introduction or planting of plants in rivers and lakes – Permitted Activity	<p>The introduction or planting of any plant in a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake is a permitted activity, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the activity does not involve the introduction or planting of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) a pest organism, or b) an exotic aquatic plant except watercress (<i>Rorippa nasturtium-aquaticum</i>), or c) black alder (<i>Alnus glutinosa</i>), or d) the following willow species or hybrids involving: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. crack willow (<i>Salix fragilis</i>), or ii. grey willow (<i>Salix caprea</i>), or iii. weeping willow (<i>Salix babylonica</i>), and 2) the bed of the water body is not disturbed to a depth or extent greater than that required to undertake the activity, and 3) any indigenous vegetation damage, destruction, disturbance or removal is limited to the minimum extent necessary, and 4) the planted species do not create an obstruction to the free flow of water or spread to other properties, and 5) there is no more than minor bed or bank erosion, scouring or undercutting immediately upstream or downstream as a result of the planting, and 6) the activity must not dam or divert water in a way that causes flooding or ponding on any other property, and 	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>Where the Project proposes planting into wetlands and riparian margins for mitigation purposes, these plantings will be designed to comply with all relevant conditions set out in C.2.1.1. The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.</p>

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
	7) the planting does not affect the functional integrity of a drainage district or flood control scheme, or impede access required for maintenance purposes, and 8) the activity does not involve planting exotic trees in a mapped Outstanding Natural Character Area or an Outstanding Freshwater Body, and 9) the activity is not in a mapped Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua.	
C.2.1.3 Maintenance of the free flow of water in rivers and mitigating bank erosion – Permitted Activity	The disturbance of the bed of a river for the purpose of removing the accumulated material and vegetation to maintain the free flow of water or mitigating bank erosion, and any associated diversion of water, are permitted activities, provided: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the Regional Council's Compliance Manager is notified (in writing or by email) of the date of the commencement of any works, at least five working days prior to the work starting, and 2) the activities do not exacerbate flood hazard risk on any other property, and 3) the activities do not impede existing legal public access to the river, and 4) any removal of material or vegetation is limited to that required to maintain the free flow of water or mitigate bank erosion, and 5) no refuelling or maintenance of equipment takes place on any area of the bed of a river, and 6) the activities do not result in deepening of the channel by more than 5 percent or widening of the channel by more than 20 percent, so long as any widening or deepening is not beyond the original cross-section and gradient of the channel, and 7) any diversion of water, or realignment of the bed of the river is restricted to within the bank full edge of the riverbed, and 8) there is no damage to, or restriction of the use of, authorised structures as a result of the activity, and 9) good management practice erosion and sediment control measures, equivalent to those set out in the Erosion and Sediment Control Guidelines for Land Disturbing Activities in the Auckland Region 2016 (Auckland Council Guideline Document GD2016/005), are implemented, including where practicable temporary diversion of normal channel flow around the activity site, to minimise any discharge of sediment, and 10) no material or vegetation removed from the bed is allowed to re-enter, or is placed in a position where it could re-enter, a water body. 	Permitted Activity – Complies Operation of the Project may require removal of accumulated material and vegetation to maintain the free flow of water or mitigating bank erosion near project structures, which will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.2.1.3. The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.
C.2.1.4 Existing structures – Permitted Structures	The use, repair, replacement, maintenance or reconstruction of a structure in, on, under or over the bed of a lake or river, any associated temporary damming, taking or diversion of water around the activity site, and any associated bed disturbance or deposition of a substance in, on, or under the bed, are permitted activities, provided: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) either: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the use of the structure was authorised before 1 September 2017, or b) the erection, reconstruction, placement, or any alteration or extension of the structure, was authorised under a rule in C.2.1 Activities in the beds of lakes and rivers of this Plan, or c) the structure was one of the following and existed at 1 September 2017: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. a boat ramp or concrete slipway that is less than 15 metres in length and three metres in width, or ii. a structure for the launching, retrieval or mooring of vessels in, on, under or over the bed of a river or lake is no greater than 10 square metres in area, and 2) the use of the structure is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan, and 3) if the structure existed before 1 September 2017 and was not authorised, the structure owner can provide clear and convincing evidence that the structure existed at 1 September 2017 if requested by the Regional Council, and 4) the activities comply with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions, and 5) upon completion of the activities there is no increase to the structure's footprint, other than that resulting from routine maintenance or repair activities. 	Permitted Activity – Complies The Project may require the repair, replacement, maintenance or reconstruction of an existing structure within the Proposed Designation, such as existing culverts, that will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.2.1.4. The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.
C.2.1.7 Demolition or removal of existing structures – Permitted Activity	The removal or demolition of an existing structure in, on, under, or over the bed of a lake or river, and any associated bed disturbance, are permitted activities, provided: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the bed is restored to a profile that does not inhibit water flow or prevent the upstream and downstream passage of fish, and 2) remaining parts of the structure are not a hazard to public access, navigation or health and safety, and 3) prior to demolition, impounded sediment is removed from behind the structure, as far as is reasonably practicable, and 4) the activities comply with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions, and 5) where the activities will result in improved fish passage, before the start of works, the person doing the activity obtains written advice from the Regional Council or the Department of Conservation that there are no known populations of indigenous fish upstream, that would be vulnerable if the obstacle to fish passage is removed. 	Permitted Activity – Complies The Project may require the remove of structures in or on the bed of a lake, river or wetland, such as weir, that will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.2.1.7. The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.
C.2.1.8 Construction and installation of structures – Permitted Activity	The erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, or extension of a structure in, on, under or over the bed of a lake or river, any associated temporary damming, taking or diversion of water around the activity site, and any associated bed disturbance or deposition of a substance in, on, or under the bed, are permitted activities, provided: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the activities, including any temporary damming and diversions around work sites, comply with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions, and 	Does not Comply The Project involves the construction of a road with culvert crossings, requiring the placement of structures in, on, under, or over the bed of a river, where the length of the structure parallel to river flow exceeds 25m. At specific locations

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
	<p>2) the activities are not associated with the launching, retrieval, mooring, maintenance or repair of vessels, and</p> <p>3) for culvert crossings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the contributing catchment is less than 300 hectares, and (b) the culvert length under the crossing parallel to river flow must not exceed 25 metres when necessary for a road or railway line, otherwise it must not exceed 10 metres, and (c) the culvert is designed such that flow velocity will not impede fish passage during normal flow conditions, and (d) culvert approaches and fill placed on the river or lake bed must be free of organic matter, and (e) the total height of the crossing crest must be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. no more than 3.5 metres above the invert level of the culvert inlet, and ii. within the manufacturer's maximum height specifications for the culvert, and iii. below the riverbank level unless it is necessary for a road, and (f) the culvert must be either open bottomed or installed so that the base is set a minimum of 25 percent and a maximum of 50 percent of the culvert diameter below the stream bed, and (g) on request by the Regional Council, records of structure design and flow calculations must be made available within 10 working days of the request, and h) the culvert is not in a significant wetland, an Outstanding Freshwater Body or mapped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Outstanding Natural Character Area, or ii. Outstanding Natural Feature, or iii. Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, and <p>4) for single span bridges:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) piles are not located in, on or under the bed of a water body, and (b) the bridge, its abutments and foundations, are located so as to not decrease the bed width by more than 10 percent, and (c) the bridge abutments and foundations are constructed parallel to the river, and (d) on request by the Regional Council, records of structure design and flow calculations must be provided within 10 working days of the request, and (e) the bridge is not in a significant wetland, an Outstanding Freshwater Body or mapped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Outstanding Natural Character Area, or ii. Outstanding Natural Feature, or iii. Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, and <p>5) for ford crossings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the width of the ford crossing parallel to river flow does not exceed 10 metres, and (b) the activity must not result in discontinuity in the flow of water under any flow conditions, and (c) the ford is not in a significant wetland, an Outstanding Freshwater Body or mapped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Outstanding Natural Character Area, or ii. Outstanding Natural Feature, or iii. Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, and <p>6) for maimai / game bird shooting shelter structures:</p> <p>7) the structure does not exceed 10 square metres, and</p> <p>8) for cables, electricity and telecommunication lines and pipelines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the cable, line or pipeline, including site related structures that enable the cable, line or pipeline to function, does not cause diversion or blockage of any river, and (b) the activities do not disturb a significant wetland, an Outstanding Freshwater Body, or the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake in a mapped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Outstanding Natural Character Area, or ii. Outstanding Natural Feature, or iii. Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, and (c) for any wastewater pipeline to be erected or placed on, in, over, or under the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake, the person doing the activities must notify the Regional Council's Compliance Manager (in writing or by email) at least 10 working days before the start of works in the bed of the water body. The notification must include: 	<p>where a drop inlet serves as the primary inlet for the culvert (such as spoil sites or at 'hanging valleys'), no fish passage is provided due to the steep topography. Therefore, the Project does <i>not</i> comply with the relevant Condition C.2.1.8(3)(b) and (c) of Rule C.2.1.8.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.2.1.8 cannot be achieved.</p>

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. the name, address, and phone number of the person responsible for the works, and ii. the location of the structure, and iii. the waste products to be piped. 	
C.2.1.9 Minor riverbank protection works – Permitted Activity	<p>The:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) placement, or alteration (including maintenance or repair) of a riverbank protection structure in or on the bed of a river, or 2) deposition of material in or on the bed of a river for the purposes of bank protection or reinstatement, and 3) any associated bed disturbance and temporary damming, taking or diversion of water around the activity site, are permitted activities, provided: 4) the activities comply with all relevant conditions of <i>C.2.3 General conditions</i>, and 5) the Regional Council's Compliance Manager is notified (in writing or by email) of the date of the commencement of any works, at least 10 working days prior to the work starting, and 6) the activities do not take place in an Outstanding Freshwater Body, and 7) the structure, or the material deposited, does not extend beyond the natural alignment of the riverbank, and 8) concrete rubble, tyres and vehicles, or erodible material are not used for the purposes of bank protection or reinstatement, and 9) the person doing the activities uses good practice erosion and sediment control measures, including where practicable temporary diversion of water flow around the activity site, to minimise any discharge of sediment, and 10) diversion of water is restricted to within the bank full edge of the river, and 11) the length of the bank protection works is not more than 50 metres in length cumulatively over any 200 metre stretch of the riverbank, and 12) the works are not in a mapped Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua. 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will include the realignment of streams and placement of culverts which will require the deposition of material (riprap) on the bed the river for the purposes of bank, inlet and outlet protection.</p> <p>At localised culvert sites, the length of the riverbank protection will exceed 50 m in length cumulatively over a 200 m stretch of the riverbank.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.2.1.9(11) cannot be achieved.</p>
C.2.1.10 Freshwater structures – Controlled Activity	<p>The erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, or extension of a structure in, on, under, or over the bed of a lake or river, any associated temporary damming, taking or diversion of water around the activity site, and any associated bed disturbance or deposition of a substance in, on, or under the bed, that is not permitted by C.2.1.8 Construction and installation of structures – permitted activity are controlled activities, provided:</p> <p>... <i>some text has been left out because it is not relevant here.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the activities are not in a significant wetland, an Outstanding Freshwater Body or a mapped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Outstanding Natural Character Area, or (b) Outstanding Natural Feature, or (c) Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, unless necessary for the purpose of meeting C.8.1.2(5) Access of livestock (and where specified, sheep) to the bed of a waterbody or continually flowing artificial watercourse – permitted activity, and 2) the length of a culvert does not exceed 25 metres unless it passes under a local authority road, and 3) the structure does not prevent indigenous fish or trout passage, and 4) the activities do not impede existing legal public access to the river. 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project involves the placement of a structure in, on, under or over the bed of a river for culvert crossings that exceed 25 m in length. Additionally, no fish passage is provided in some of the newly installed culverts at specific locations, where a drop inlet serves as the primary inlet for the culvert (such as spoil sites or at 'hanging valleys') due to the steep topography. Therefore, the Project does <i>not</i> comply with the conditions 3 and 4.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.2.1.10 cannot be achieved.</p>
C.2.1.11 Activities in the beds of lakes and rivers – Discretionary Activity	<p>The following activities that are not the subject of any other rule in this Plan are discretionary activities:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) use, erect, reconstruct, place, alter, extend, remove, or demolish any structure or part of any structure in, on, under, or over the bed of a lake or river, or 2) disturb the bed of a lake or river, or 3) introduce or plant any plant or any part of any plant (whether exotic or indigenous) in, on, or under the bed of a lake or river, or 4) deposit any substance in, on, or under the bed of a lake or river, or 5) reclaim or drain the bed of a lake or river. <p>That are not the subject of any other rule in this Plan are discretionary activities.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project involves the placement of culverts in, on, under or over the bed of a river, for a road, that are not the subject of any other rule in the RNP.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.2.1.11.</p>
C.2.1.13 Regionally Significant Infrastructure structures outside the coastal environment and in a significant	<p>The use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, or extension of a structure forming part of Regionally Significant Infrastructure, that is located in, on, under or over the bed of a lake or river, that is part of a significant wetland or an Outstanding Freshwater Body, or mapped:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Outstanding Natural Feature, or (2) Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, 	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project is located outside of the coastal environment.</p> <p>The Project will require the placement of a new culvert, forming part of Regionally Significant Infrastructure, that is located in, on, under or over the bed of a river that is part of a significant wetland. The total length of stream impacted</p>

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
area – Discretionary Activity	but is located outside the coastal environment, and any associated temporary damming, taking or diversion of water around the activity site, and any associated bed disturbance or deposition of a substance in, on, or under the bed, that is not a permitted, controlled or restricted discretionary activity in C.2.1 Activities in the beds of lakes and rivers of this Plan, are discretionary activities.	by the Project in the Wairau South tributary, which is part of a significant wetland (Wetland 24), is approximately 1.06 km. As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.2.1.13.
C.2.2 Activities affecting wetlands		
C.2.2.1 Natural wetland maintenance and enhancement – permitted activity	The damage, destruction, disturbance, or removal of vegetation in a natural wetland or deliberate introduction of a plant in a natural wetland for the purpose of wetland maintenance or wetland enhancement are permitted activities, provided: (1) the damage, destruction, disturbance, or removal of plants is limited to exotic plants or pest species, and (2) any introduced plant is not a pest species, and (3) the activity is not for the purposes of extracting kauri from the wetland, and (4) the activities comply with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions, and (5) if the activities are in a significant wetland: a) planting must be limited to indigenous species that are endemic to the area, and b) the Regional Council's Compliance Manager must be notified (in writing or by email) at least 10 working days prior to works commencing, with the timing and extent of the activities and contact details of the person responsible.	Permitted Activity – Complies The Project may involve the enhancement of natural wetlands for mitigation, which if required will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.2.2.1 including the use of endemic indigenous plants for wetland offsetting purpose. The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.
C.2.2.2 Structures in wetlands – permitted activity	In a wetland: 1) the use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, extension, demolition or removal of any fence, wetland interpretive signage, bird-watching hide, maimai or game bird shooting shelter, or boardwalk structure, and 2) the use and maintenance (a form of alteration) of a structure forming part of Regionally Significant Infrastructure or Core Local Infrastructure, are permitted activities, provided: 3) in a significant wetland: a) any bird-watching hide, maimai, or game bird shooting structures do not exceed 10 square metres in area, and b) boardwalk structures are no wider than 1.8 metres and cumulatively are no longer than 40 metres per wetland, and c) any damage, destruction, disturbance or removal of a plant or any part of a plant necessary for the use and maintenance of Core Local or Regionally Significant Infrastructure is limited to an area less than 200 square metres, and d) any other structure does not exceed five square metres in area, and e) the Regional Council's Compliance Manager is notified (in writing or by email) at least 10 working days prior to works commencing, with the timing and extent of the activities and contact details of the person responsible, and the activities comply with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions.	Permitted Activity – Complies The Project may require the construction of a fence, or boardwalk structure in a wetland for mitigation. If required, these activities will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.2.2.2. The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.
C.2.2.3 Constructed wetland alteration – permitted activity	The damage, destruction, disturbance, or removal of vegetation, deliberate introduction of a plant or disturbance of the bed of a constructed wetland, and the use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, extension, removal or demolition of a structure in a constructed wetland or to form a constructed wetland, are permitted activities provided: 1) the activities comply with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions, and 2) do not cause flooding or ponding on any other property, and 3) if the wetland is reduced in size by more than 500 square metres, the Regional Council's Compliance Manager is notified (in writing or by email) at least 10 working days before the start of works with the timing, location and extent of the activities.	Permitted Activity – Complies The operation of the Project may require disturbance, or removal of vegetation within a constructed wetland. If required, this activity will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.2.2.3. The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.
C.2.2.4 Activities in natural and constructed wetlands – Discretionary Activity	Except as regulated by Rule C.2.2.3 in relation to constructed wetland alteration, any: 1) damage, destruction, disturbance, or removal of a plant in a wetland or deliberate introduction of a plant in a wetland for wetland maintenance or wetland enhancement, or 2) use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, extension, removal, or demolition of any structure in a wetland, or 3) disturbance of the bed of a constructed wetland and construction or installation of a structure in a constructed wetland, in natural or constructed wetlands that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan are discretionary activities, provided the activities are not undertaken in a significant wetland.	Discretionary Activity - Resource consent required The Project involves the placement of structures, such as roads and culverts, in natural wetlands. As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.2.2.4.
C.2.2.6 Activities in significant wetlands – Non-Complying Activities	Except as regulated by Rule C.2.2.5 in relation to National Grid activities in significant wetlands, the: 1) damage, destruction, disturbance, or removal of vegetation in a significant wetland or deliberate introduction of a plant in a significant wetland for wetland maintenance or wetland enhancement, or 2) use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, extension, removal, or demolition of any structure in a significant wetland, that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan, is a non-complying activity.	Non-complying Activity – Resource consent required The Project involves the placement of structures, such as roads and culverts, in significant wetland (Wetland 24). The extent of the proposed Indicative Alignment road and culvert in a significant wetland (Wetland 24) is shown on Figure 9 in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D8 of Volume B).

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
		As such, resource consent is required as a Non-Complying Activity under Rule C.2.2.6.
C.3 Damming and diverting water - C.3.1 Damming and diverting water		
C.3.1.1 Off-stream damming and diversion – Permitted Activity	<p>The damming or diversion of rainfall runoff, including in sediment ponds and stormwater detention structures, or water in an artificial watercourse are permitted activities, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the activities do not dam or divert water in a continually or intermittently flowing river, natural wetland or lake, and 2) the activities do not adversely affect the reliability of water supply of an authorised water take, and 3) a one percent annual exceedance probability flood event must be accommodated by the dam or an overland flow path without increasing flood levels upstream or downstream of the structure beyond the land or structures owned or controlled by the person undertaking the activities, and 4) the dammed or diverted water does not raise sub-surface or surface water levels to the extent that drainage of other property is adversely impeded, and 5) the activities must not cause change to the seasonal or annual range in water level of any natural wetland, and 6) the level of a lake or downstream flow in a continually or intermittently flowing river is not reduced below a minimum flow or minimum level, and 7) the structure must be maintained in a sound condition, and functioning for the purpose it was designed for, and at all times be capable of withstanding a one percent annual exceedance probability flood without structural failure or risk to people or other property, and 8) if the maximum reservoir capacity of the dam is more than 20,000 cubic metres, the person doing the activity must notify the Regional Council's Compliance Manager (in writing or by email) prior to the activities occurring with: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the name, address, and phone number of the person undertaking works, and b) the location of the dam, and c) the reservoir capacity and dam structure height. 	<p><i>Does not comply</i></p> <p>In relation to off-stream damming and diversion of rainfall runoff (i.e diverting overland flowpaths and constructing cut off drain to avoid clean water entering the construction site), the Project will not comply as it may intercept overland flowpaths to wetlands and streams.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.3.1.1 cannot be achieved.</p>
C.3.1.2 Small dam – Permitted Activity	<p>The use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration or extension of a dam in a lake, river or natural wetland, any associated disturbance of the bed of a river or lake and deposition of material on the bed, and damming and diversion of water are permitted activities, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the activities are necessary for: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the creation or enhancement of a wetland, or b) hydrological monitoring, or c) stock drinking where livestock are excluded from entering the lake, continually or intermittently flowing river or wetland, and 2) the activities are not in a significant wetland or an Outstanding Freshwater Body or mapped (refer I Maps Ngā mahere matawhenua): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) Outstanding Natural Character Area, or b) Outstanding Natural Feature, or c) Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, and 3) the width of a continually or intermittently flowing river bed where the dam is located does not exceed three metres, and 4) the dam height does not exceed 600 millimetres above the natural bed level of the water body, and 5) a hydrological monitoring dam must not be in place longer than 14 days in any two-month period, and 6) the level of a lake or downstream flow in a continually or intermittently flowing river is not reduced below a minimum flow or minimum level as a result of the dam, and 7) the person undertaking the activities must notify the Regional Council's Compliance Manager (in writing or by email) at least 10 working days before the start of works in the bed of the water body, with: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) timing, location and extent of the activities, and b) a description of measures to avoid erosion, structure failure and obstruction of fish passage, and c) for wetland enhancement, the values being enhanced, and 8) the activities comply with all relevant conditions of <i>C.2.3 General conditions</i>. 	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>The Project may involve the use, reconstruction, or extension of structure in a river or natural wetland for wetland mitigation that will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.3.1.2.</p> <p>The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity</p>
C.3.1.3 Existing in-stream dam – Permitted activity	<p>The use of an existing dam in a lake, river or natural wetland and any associated damming and diversion of water are permitted activities, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the damming or diversion is authorised, and 2) the reservoir capacity is: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) less than 20,000 cubic metres, and the dam height is less than four metres, or 	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>The Project may involve the use of an existing in-stream dam for wetland mitigation that will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.3.1.3.</p>

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
	<p>b) necessary for maintaining the wetland's natural ecosystem and not associated with any consented water take, and</p> <p>3) the level of a lake or downstream flow in a continually or intermittently flowing river is not reduced below a minimum flow or minimum level as a result of the dam, and</p> <p>4) the dam is not in an Outstanding Freshwater Body, and</p> <p>5) the dam structure complies with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions.</p>	<p>The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.</p>
<p>C.3.1.4 Dam maintenance – Permitted activity</p>	<p>The maintenance and repair of an authorised dam (including excavation of accumulated material retained behind the dam), any associated disturbance of the bed of a river or lake and deposition of material in, on, or under the bed, and the associated damming and diversion of water are permitted activities, provided:</p> <p>1) the activities do not increase the authorised reservoir capacity, scale or extent of the dam, and</p> <p>2) the extraction of accumulated material and the disturbance of the bed is limited to the area directly impounded by the dam, and</p> <p>3) the activities comply with all relevant conditions of C.2.3 General conditions.</p>	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>The operation of the Project may involve the maintenance of a dam constructed for stormwater or other purposes (in the event any constructed stormwater ponds or wetlands trigger the dam regulations). If required, the activity will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.3.1.4.</p> <p>The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.</p>
<p>C.3.1.7 River channel diversion – Discretionary Activity</p>	<p>The diversion of water in a river and any associated disturbance of the bed or deposition of material on the bed, that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan are discretionary activities, provided it is not in a significant wetland, an Outstanding Freshwater Body, or a mapped:</p> <p>1) Outstanding Natural Character Area, or</p> <p>2) Outstanding Natural Feature, or</p> <p>3) Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project is for the construction of a road which involves the installation of culverts in a river and associated stream diversion. Stream diversions will range in scale, from reconfiguration of farm drains to diversion of the Waihoihoi Stream, as detailed in Table 15 of the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D8 of this Volume).</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.3.1.7.</p>
<p>C.3.1.8 Damming or diverting water – Discretionary Activity</p>	<p>The use, erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration or extension of a dam in the bed of a river, lake or natural wetland, any associated disturbance of the bed of a river or lake and deposition of material on the bed, and the associated damming and diversion of water that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan are discretionary activities.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>Construction of the Project will require temporary damming and diversion of water within rivers, and the associated disturbance of the bed of rivers, when structures such as culverts are being installed.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.3.1.8.</p>
<p>C.3.1.9 Obstructions that divert water onto other property – Discretionary Activity</p>	<p>The placement of an obstruction (including a structure) in a flood hazard area (including a high-risk flood hazard area), an overland flow path, a river or an artificial watercourse that will, or is likely to, divert water onto other property, is a discretionary activity.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project involves the placement of obstructions, including road surface, bridges and culvert structures, in a flood hazard area, an overland flow path and a river that will divert water, which may increase the flood levels on properties outside of the Proposed Designation by up to 100 mm, as detailed in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.3.1.9.</p>
<p>C.3.1.10 Damming or diversion of water in a significant wetland or significant area – Non-Complying Activity</p>	<p>The damming or diversion of water in a significant wetland, an Outstanding Freshwater Body or mapped:</p> <p>1) Outstanding Natural Character Area, or</p> <p>2) Outstanding Natural Feature, or</p> <p>3) Site or Area of Significance to Tāngata Whenua, and</p> <p>that is not a permitted activity in C.3.1 Damming and diverting water of this Plan is a non-complying activity.</p>	<p>Non-Complying Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project will require temporary damming and diversion of water within the bed of a river (Wairau South tributary) that is part of a significant wetland (Wetland 24). The location of impacted significant wetland (Wetland 24) within the Proposed Designation is shown in Figure 9 in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D8 of this Volume).</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Non-Complying Activity under Rule C.3.1.10.</p>
<p>C.5.1 Taking and using water</p>		

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment																		
C.5.1.6 Water take associated with bore development, bore testing or dewatering – Permitted Activity	<p>The taking and use of groundwater associated with bore development, bore testing, or dewatering by pumping is a permitted activity, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) if the take is from a Coastal Aquifer: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the site of the bore or ground dewatering does not occur within 200 metres of mean high water springs, and b) the daily volume of the water taken does not exceed 100 cubic metres per day, and c) the activity is completed within seven days of its commencement, or 2) if the take is from the Aupōuri Aquifer management unit: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the activity is completed within seven days of its commencement for takes up to 1000 cubic metres per day, or b) the activity is completed within three days of its commencement for takes up to 2500 cubic metres per day, or 3) if the take is in another area, the activity is completed within seven days of its commencement and the average rate of take does not exceed 1000 cubic metres per day, or 4) if the activity is dewatering for construction, installation or maintenance of underground equipment or foundations where the sides of the excavation are sheet piled or boxed to stem the lateral flow, the activity is completed within 10 days of its commencement, and 5) the activity does not adversely affect the reliability of water supply of an authorised water take, and 6) the activity is not in a natural wetland or does not cause any permanent change to water levels in any natural wetland, and 7) any resulting ground settlement or reduction in groundwater levels does not cause adverse effects on buildings, structures, underground infrastructure or services. 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will require ground dewatering during construction, which will be longer than 7 days and may exceed 100 m³ (100,000 litres) per day.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.5.1.6 cannot be achieved.</p>																		
C.5.1.12 Other water takes – Discretionary Activity	<p>The taking and use of water, or the taking and use of heat or energy from water or heat or energy from the material surrounding geothermal water, that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan is a discretionary activity.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project will require ground dewatering, during construction, that is not the subject of any other rule in the RPN.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.5.1.12.</p>																		
C.6 Discharges to land and water - C.6.4 Stormwater discharges																				
C.6.4.1 Stormwater discharges from a public stormwater network – Permitted Activity	<p>The diversion and discharge of stormwater from a public stormwater network into water or onto or into land where it may enter water is a permitted activity, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the discharge is not from a public stormwater network servicing an urban area listed in Table 10: Urban areas, and 2) the diversion and discharge does not cause permanent scouring or erosion of the bed of a water body at the point of discharge, and 3) the discharge is not within 100 metres of a geothermal surface feature, and 4) the discharge does not contain contaminants used, stored or generated in trade or industrial premises, and 5) the discharge does not contain more than 15 milligrams per litre of total petroleum hydrocarbons, and 6) the discharge does not cause any of the following effects in the receiving waters beyond the zone of reasonable mixing: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, of floatable or suspended materials, or b) a conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity, or c) an emission of objectionable odour, or d) the rendering of freshwater unsuitable for consumption by farm animals, or e) the rendering of freshwater taken from a mapped Priority Drinking Water Abstraction Point unsuitable for human consumption after existing treatment. <p>Table 10: Urban areas</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Far North District</th> <th>Whangārei District</th> <th>Kaipara District</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Kaitaia</td> <td>One Tree Point - Marsden Cove</td> <td>Dargaville</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Kaikohe</td> <td>Ruakākā</td> <td>Mangawhai - Mangawhai Heads</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Kerikeri</td> <td>Waipū</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paihia</td> <td>Whangārei City</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Waipapa - Haruru</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Far North District	Whangārei District	Kaipara District	Kaitaia	One Tree Point - Marsden Cove	Dargaville	Kaikohe	Ruakākā	Mangawhai - Mangawhai Heads	Kerikeri	Waipū		Paihia	Whangārei City		Waipapa - Haruru			<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will tie into local roads, where it will discharge stormwater into existing local roadside drains and swales (public stormwater network). This also includes tie-ins into the local road network in the Waipū urban area that is listed in <i>Table 10: Urban areas</i> in Rule C.6.4.1.</p> <p>As such compliance with Rule C.6.4.1.(1) cannot be achieved.</p>
Far North District	Whangārei District	Kaipara District																		
Kaitaia	One Tree Point - Marsden Cove	Dargaville																		
Kaikohe	Ruakākā	Mangawhai - Mangawhai Heads																		
Kerikeri	Waipū																			
Paihia	Whangārei City																			
Waipapa - Haruru																				

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
C.6.4.2 Other stormwater discharges – Permitted Activity	<p>The diversion and discharge of stormwater into water or onto or into land where it may enter water from an impervious area or by way of a stormwater collection system, is a permitted activity, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the discharge or diversion is not from: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) a public stormwater network, or b) a high-risk industrial or trade premises, and 2) the diversion and discharge does not cause or increase flooding of land on another property in a storm event of up to and including a 10 percent annual exceedance probability, or flooding of buildings on another property in a storm event of up to and including a one percent annual exceedance probability, and 3) where the diversion or discharge is from a hazardous substance storage or handling area: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the stormwater collection system is designed and operated to prevent hazardous substances stored or used on the site from entering the stormwater system, or b) there is a secondary containment system in place to intercept any spillage of hazardous substances and either discharges that spillage to a trade waste system or stores it for removal and treatment, or c) if the stormwater contains oil contaminants, the stormwater is passed through a stormwater treatment system designed in accordance with the Environmental Guidelines for Water Discharges from Petroleum Industry Sites in New Zealand (Ministry for the Environment, 1998) prior to discharge, and 4) where the diversion or discharge is from an industrial or trade premises: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the stormwater collection system is designed and operated to prevent any contaminants stored or used on the site, other than those already controlled by condition 3) above, from entering stormwater unless the stormwater is discharged through a stormwater treatment system, and b) any process water or liquid waste stream on the site is bunded, or otherwise contained, within an area of sufficient capacity to provide secondary containment equivalent to 100 percent of the quantity of any process water or liquid waste that has the potential to spill into a stormwater collection system, in order to prevent trade waste entering the stormwater collection system, and 5) the diversion or discharge is not into potentially contaminated land, or onto potentially contaminated land that is not covered by an impervious area, and 6) the diversion and discharge does not cause permanent scouring or erosion of the bed of a water body at the point of discharge, and 7) the discharge does not contain more than 15 milligrams per litre of total petroleum hydrocarbons, and 8) the discharge does not cause any of the following effects in the receiving waters beyond the zone of reasonable mixing: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, of floatable or suspended materials, or b) a conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity, or c) an emission of objectionable odour, or d) the rendering of freshwater unsuitable for consumption by farm animals, or e) the rendering of freshwater taken from a mapped priority drinking water abstraction point 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will require the diversion and discharge of stormwater into or onto land, where it may enter water from an impervious area or by way of a stormwater collection system, where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the diversion or discharge cause or increase flooding of land on another property, in a storm event, outside of the Proposed Designation; <p>As such compliance with Rule C.6.4.2.(2) cannot be achieved.</p>
C.6.4.3 Stormwater discharges – Controlled Activity	<p>The diversion and discharge of stormwater into water or onto or into land where it may enter water that is not a permitted activity or discretionary activity in C.6.4 Stormwater discharges of this Plan is a controlled activity. Matters of control:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The maximum concentration or load of contaminants in the discharge. 2) The size of the zone of reasonable mixing. 3) The adequacy of measures to minimise erosion. 4) The adequacy of measures to minimise flooding caused by the stormwater network. 5) The design and operation of the stormwater system and any staging of works. 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will require the diversion and discharge of stormwater onto or into land or water that is a discretionary activity in C.6.4.6 Stormwater discharges in the RPN As such, compliance with Rule C.6.4.3 of this rule does not apply.</p>
C.6.4.6 Stormwater discharges onto or into contaminated land or from high-risk industrial or trade premises – Discretionary Activity	<p>The diversion and discharge of stormwater:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) into water or onto land where it may enter water from a high-risk industrial or trade premises, or 2) into contaminated land, or 3) onto contaminated land that is not covered by an impervious area is a discretionary activity. <p>is a discretionary activity.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project may require the diversion and discharge of stormwater into or onto contaminated land.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.6.4.6.</p>
C.6.8 Contaminated land		
C.6.8.1 Investigating potentially contaminated land – Permitted Activity	<p>The disturbance of land for a site investigation to assess the concentration of hazardous substances in soil, water or air is a permitted activity, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the site investigation is certified by a suitably qualified and experienced practitioner, and 	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p>

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2) the person or organisation initiating the site investigation provides a copy of the site investigation report to the Regional Council within three months of the completion of the investigation, and 3) site investigations undertaken to assess the concentrations of contaminants in soil are undertaken in accordance with Contaminated Land Management Guidelines No. 5: Site Investigation and Analysis of Soils (Ministry for the Environment, 2011). 	<p>The Project involves site investigation to assess the concentration of hazardous substances in soil, which will be undertaken in accordance with the conditions set out in C.6.8.1.</p> <p>The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.</p>
C.6.8.2 Discharges from contaminated land – Permitted Activity	<p>The passive discharge of a contaminant from contaminated land into water, or onto or into land where it may enter water is a permitted activity, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) in sensitive groundwater the concentration of a contaminant at the property boundary or within 50 horizontal metres of the contaminant source (whichever is less), does not exceed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the relevant contaminant concentrations in the Drinking Water Standards for New Zealand 2005 (revised 2008), and (b) the relevant contaminant concentrations measured as dissolved concentrations in Table 3.4.1 in the Australian and New Zealand Guidelines for Fresh and Marine Water Quality, Volume 1 (ANZECC 2000) at the level of 80 percent protection of species, except for benzene which is to be applied at a level of 1 milligram per litre (95 percent protection of species), and 2) in non-sensitive groundwater the concentration of a contaminant at the property boundary, or within 50 horizontal metres of the contaminant source (whichever is less), does not exceed the relevant contaminant concentrations measured as dissolved concentrations in Table 3.4.1 in the Australian and New Zealand Guidelines for Fresh and Marine Water Quality, Volume 1 (ANZECC 2000) at the level of 80 percent protection of species, except for benzene which is to be applied at a level of 1 milligram per litre (95 percent protection of species), and 3) in surface water, the concentration of a contaminant, at the property boundary or within 50 horizontal metres of the contaminant source (whichever is less), or immediately adjacent to any surface water or coastal water, does not exceed the relevant contaminant concentrations measured as dissolved concentrations in Table 3.4.1 in the Australian and New Zealand Guidelines for Fresh and Marine Water Quality, Volume 1 (ANZECC 2000) at the level of 95 percent protection of species, and 4) concentrations of chlorinated solvents in soil gas do not exceed the land use specific Interim Health Investigation Levels for soil gas at one metre depth in Table 1A(2) of Schedule B1 (Guideline on Investigation Levels for Soil and Groundwater) of the National Environment Protection (Assessment of Site Contamination) Measure 1999 (updated 2013) at the property boundary or within 50 horizontal metres of the contaminant source (whichever is less), and 5) concentrations of petroleum hydrocarbons in soil gas do not exceed the land use specific target soil air concentrations at one metre depth in Appendix 4J of the Guidelines for Assessing and Managing Petroleum Hydrocarbon Contaminated Sites in New Zealand (Ministry for the Environment, 2011) at the property boundary or within 50 horizontal metres of the contaminant source (whichever is less), and 6) light non-aqueous phase liquids (LNAPLs)²⁴ must have a LNAPL transmissivity of less than 0.07 square metres per day, or a suitably qualified and experienced practitioner must certify that the LNAPL is unlikely to be mobile using a lines of evidence approach, and 7) for dense non-aqueous phase liquids (DNAPL)²⁵ a suitably qualified and experienced practitioner must certify that the DNAPL is unlikely to be mobile and in free phase form using a lines of evidence approach, and 8) non-aqueous phase liquids do not extend across the property boundary, and 9) a site investigation has been certified by a suitably qualified and experienced practitioner that the passive discharge complies with conditions (1) to (7) of this rule as relevant, and 10) the site investigation report demonstrates that the passive discharge of the contaminants of concern is equal to or less than the relevant contaminant concentrations set out in conditions (1) to (7) above. 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>A Preliminary Site Investigation (PSI) has been undertaken for the Project. The results show that there are no chlorinated solvents nor are there any light non-aqueous phase liquids (LNAPLs) or dense non-aqueous phase liquids (DNAPLs) found within the Proposed Designation. Conditions 4, 6 to 8 are therefore, irrelevant.</p> <p>With respect to condition 5, current sampling indicates that hydrocarbons are likely to be present in soil gas as detailed in the Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects. However, the concentrations detected in soil and groundwater do not exceed the inhalation SAC in Table 4.17 and Table 5.1 in MfE 2013, thus indicating that the concentrations are unlikely to exceed the SAC in Table 1A(2) of Schedule B1 (Guideline on Investigation Levels for Soil and Groundwater) of the National Environment Protection (Assessment of Site Contamination) Measure 1999 (updated 2013) as set out in condition 5.</p> <p>Based on a limited groundwater data set for the PSI, the concentrations of the relevant contaminants found are equal to, or less than, the standards set out in conditions 1-3. However, further site investigation is required to confirm these results, in accordance with condition 10.</p> <p>As such, compliance with C.6.8.2(10) is not achieved.</p>
C.6.8.5 Contaminated land – Discretionary Activity	<p>The:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) disturbance of land for a site investigation to assess the concentration of a hazardous substances that may be present in soil or water, or 2) discharge of a contaminant from contaminated land <p>that is not a permitted or controlled activity in C.6.8 Contaminated land of this Plan is a discretionary activity.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>With the current limited groundwater data set, the concentrations of dissolve metals and hydrocarbons in groundwater in the unexpected discovery area are below the discharge standards set in RPN permitted activity Rule C 6.8.2. as detailed in the Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects (Appendix D9 of this Volume). However, further sampling is required to confirm these results and potential compliance. Permitted standards stipulated in Rule C.6.8.2 could therefore potentially be breached.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.6.8.5 is applied for on a precautionary basis.</p>

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment																		
C.6.9 Other discharges of contaminants																				
C.6.9.1 Discharge of dust suppressants – Permitted Activity	<p>The discharge of a dust suppressant onto or into land is a permitted activity, provided the dust suppressant:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) is approved for its intended use by the Environmental Protection Authority under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, or 2) has been determined by the Environmental Protection Authority not to be a hazardous substance. 	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>The Project will require the discharge of dust suppressants during construction that will comply with all of the relevant conditions set out in C.6.8.1.</p> <p>The activity is, therefore, a permitted activity.</p>																		
C.7 Discharges to air																				
C.7.2.8 Discharges to air not regulated in this Plan – Permitted Activity	<p>The discharge of a contaminant into air that is not the subject of any other rule in this Plan is a permitted activity, provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the discharge is not from an industrial or trade premises and, other than for discharges from motor vehicles, aircraft, trains, or vessels, the discharge does not result in any noxious, dangerous, offensive or objectionable odour, smoke, dust, or any noxious or dangerous levels of airborne contaminants beyond the boundary of the subject property or in the coastal marine area, and 2) the discharge is not from dry abrasive blasting, except as provided for by C.7.2.12 Dry abrasive blasting of infrastructure outside an enclosed booth – controlled activity. 	<p>Permitted Activity – Complies</p> <p>The discharge of contaminant into air during the Project's construction works will not result in any noxious, dangerous, offensive or objectionable odour, smoke, dust, or any noxious or dangerous levels of airborne contaminants beyond the boundary of the Proposed Designation or in the coastal marine area. There is no dry abrasive blasting proposed for the Project.</p> <p>The Project will, therefore, comply with the relevant standards under Rule C.7.2.8 as a permitted activity.</p>																		
Section C.8 – Land Use and Disturbance Activities																				
Section C.8.3 – Earthworks																				
C.8.3.1 Earthworks – Permitted Activity	<p>Earthworks outside the bed of a river, lake, wetland, īnanga spawning site and the coastal marine area, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, are permitted activities provided:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) the area and volume of earthworks at a particular location or associated with a project complies with the thresholds in Table 15: Permitted activity earthworks thresholds. <p>Table 15: Permitted activity earthworks thresholds</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Location</th> <th>Earthworks thresholds</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Within 10m of a natural wetland, the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake</td> <td>200 m² of exposed earth at any time, and 50 m³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Within 10m of an īnanga spawning site</td> <td>200 m² of exposed earth at any time, and 50 m³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Catchment of an Outstanding Lake</td> <td>2,500 m² of exposed earth at any time</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Erosion-prone Land</td> <td>2,500 m² of exposed earth at any time</td> </tr> <tr> <td>High-risk flood hazard area</td> <td>50 m³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Coastal riparian and foredune management area</td> <td>Excluding coastal dune restoration, 200 m² of exposed earth at any time</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Flood hazard area</td> <td>100 m³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other areas</td> <td>5,000 m² of exposed earth at any time</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (2) the discharge is not within 20 metres of a geothermal surface feature, and (3) except for coastal dune restoration activities, good management practice erosion and sediment control measures equivalent to those set out in the Erosion and Sediment Control Guidelines for Land Disturbing Activities in the Auckland Region 2016 (Auckland Council Guideline Document GD2016/005), are implemented for the duration of the activity, and (4) batters and side castings are stabilised to prevent slumping, and (5) exposed earth is stabilised upon completion of the earthworks to minimise erosion and avoid slope failure, and (6) earth and debris are not deposited into, or in a position where they can enter, a natural wetland, a continually or intermittently flowing river, a lake, an artificial watercourse, or the coastal marine area, and (7) the earthworks activity does not: 	Location	Earthworks thresholds	Within 10m of a natural wetland, the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake	200 m ² of exposed earth at any time, and 50 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period	Within 10m of an īnanga spawning site	200 m ² of exposed earth at any time, and 50 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period	Catchment of an Outstanding Lake	2,500 m ² of exposed earth at any time	Erosion-prone Land	2,500 m ² of exposed earth at any time	High-risk flood hazard area	50 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period	Coastal riparian and foredune management area	Excluding coastal dune restoration, 200 m ² of exposed earth at any time	Flood hazard area	100 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period	Other areas	5,000 m ² of exposed earth at any time	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will involve earthworks greater than the permitted thresholds in a 12-month period as set out in Table 15 of condition 1.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.8.3.1 cannot be achieved.</p>
Location	Earthworks thresholds																			
Within 10m of a natural wetland, the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake	200 m ² of exposed earth at any time, and 50 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period																			
Within 10m of an īnanga spawning site	200 m ² of exposed earth at any time, and 50 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period																			
Catchment of an Outstanding Lake	2,500 m ² of exposed earth at any time																			
Erosion-prone Land	2,500 m ² of exposed earth at any time																			
High-risk flood hazard area	50 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period																			
Coastal riparian and foredune management area	Excluding coastal dune restoration, 200 m ² of exposed earth at any time																			
Flood hazard area	100 m ³ of moved or placed earth in any 12-month period																			
Other areas	5,000 m ² of exposed earth at any time																			

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) reduce the height of a dune crest in a coastal riparian and foredune management area, except where dunes are recontoured to remove introduced materials or to remediate dune blow-outs as part of coastal dune restoration work, or (b) exacerbate flood or coastal hazard risk on any other property, or (c) create or contribute to the instability or subsidence of land on other property, or (d) divert flood flow onto other property, and (8) any associated damming, diversion and discharge of stormwater does not give rise to any of the following effects in the receiving waters beyond the zone of reasonable mixing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) any conspicuous change in colour or visual clarity, or (b) the rendering of freshwater unsuitable for consumption by farm animals, or (c) contamination which may render freshwater taken from a mapped priority drinking water abstraction point unsuitable for human consumption after existing treatment, and (9) information on the source and composition of any clean fill material and its location within the disposal site are recorded and provided to the Regional Council on request, and (10) the Regional Council's Compliance Manager is given at least five working days' notice (in writing or by email) of any earthworks activity being undertaken within a high-risk flood hazard area, flood hazard area, where contaminated land will be exposed, or in sand dunes within a coastal riparian and foredune management area. 	
C.8.3.2 Earthworks – Controlled Activity	<p>Earthworks outside the bed of a river or lake, wetland and the coastal marine area that exceed 5000 square metres of exposed earth at any time at a particular location or associated with a project area, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, are controlled activities, provided the earthworks are not located:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) within 10 metres of a natural wetland, the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake, or (2) within 10 metres of an inanga spawning site, or (3) in a catchment of an Outstanding Lake, or (4) on erosion-prone land, or (5) in a flood hazard or high-risk flood hazard area, or (6) in the coastal riparian and foredune management area. 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will involve earthworks located within 10 metres of a natural wetland and the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river, on erosion-prone land, and in a flood hazard or high-risk flood hazard area.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.8.3.2 cannot be achieved.</p>
C.8.3.3 Earthworks in a flood hazard area – Controlled Activity	<p>Earthworks in a high-risk flood hazard area that involve more than 50 cubic metres or earthworks in a flood hazard area that involve more than 100 cubic metres, but not more than 1,000 cubic metres, of earth being moved or placed in any 12-month period, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, are controlled activities.</p>	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will involve earthworks in a high-risk flood hazard area that involve more than 1,000 cubic metres of earth being moved or placed in a 12-month period.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.8.3.3 cannot be achieved.</p>
C.8.3.4 Earthworks – Discretionary Activity	<p>Earthworks outside the bed of a river or lake, a wetland, or the coastal marine area, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, that are not a permitted or controlled activity under another rule in C.8.3 Earthworks of this Plan.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project will involve earthworks that is not a permitted or controlled activity under another rule in the RPN.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.8.3.4.</p>
C.8.4 Vegetation clearance in riparian areas and foredune management area		
C.8.4.2 Vegetation clearance in riparian areas – Permitted Activity	<p>Vegetation clearance within 10 metres of a natural wetland or within 10 metres of the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, are permitted activities, provided:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the area of cleared vegetation does not exceed 200 square metres in any 12-month period, and 2) vegetation is felled away from rivers, lakes, and natural wetlands, except where it is unsafe or impractical to do so, and 3) vegetation, slash, disturbed soil or debris is not deposited in a position where it could mobilise because of heavy rain or flood flows and: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) be deposited on other property, or 	<p><i>Does not Comply</i></p> <p>The Project will involve vegetation clearance in areas within 10 metres of a natural wetland or within 10 metres of the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river, that exceed the permitted thresholds in a 12-month period. The Project will result in the clearance of 3.3ha of indigenous dominated riparian margin vegetation and 8.5ha of exotic dominated riparian margin vegetation.</p> <p>As such, compliance with Rule C.8.4.2 cannot be achieved.</p>

Plan / Regulation Reference	Content	Assessment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) divert or dam water, or (c) cause bed or bank erosion, or d) damage receiving environments, downstream infrastructure, or property, and <p>4) any discharge of sediment originating from the cleared area does not give rise to any of the following effects in the receiving waters beyond a 20 metre radius of the point of discharge:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) any conspicuous change in colour or visual clarity, or (b) the rendering of freshwater unsuitable for consumption by farm animals, or (c) the rendering of surface water taken from a mapped priority drinking water abstraction point unsuitable for human consumption after existing treatment. 	
C.8.4.3 Vegetation clearance – Discretionary Activity	<p>Vegetation clearance in the coastal riparian and foredune management area, within 10 metres of a natural wetland, or within 10 metres of the bed of a continually or intermittently flowing river or lake, and any associated damming and diversion of stormwater and discharge of stormwater onto or into land where it may enter water, that are not a permitted activity in C.8.4 Vegetation clearance in riparian areas and foredune management area of this Plan are discretionary activities.</p>	<p>Discretionary Activity – Resource consent required</p> <p>The Project will involve vegetation clearance that are not a permitted activity in <i>C.8.4 Vegetation clearance in riparian areas and foredune management area</i> of the RPN Therefore, the Project does not comply with conditions C.8.4.2(1) Rule C.8.4.2.</p> <p>As such, resource consent is required as a Discretionary Activity under Rule C.8.4.3.</p>

Appendix C

Objectives and Policies Assessment

Appendix C – Objectives and Policies Assessment

The following tables provide an assessment of the objectives and policies of the relevant policy and planning documents¹

1. National Policy Statements

1.1. National Policy Statement for Infrastructure 2025 (NPS-I)

Table 1: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the NPS-I.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Part 2, 2.1 Objective	<p>(1) The objective of this National Policy Statement is to:</p> <p>(a) ensure the national, regional and local benefits of infrastructure are provided for;</p> <p>(b) enable infrastructure to support the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities and their health and safety;</p> <p>(c) enable infrastructure to support the development and change of urban and rural environments to meet the diverse and changing needs of present and future generations;</p> <p>(d) ensure infrastructure is well-functioning, resilient and compatible, as far as practicable, with other activities; and</p> <p>(e) ensure infrastructure is delivered in a timely and efficient manner while managing adverse effects from or on infrastructure.</p>	<p>The Project is consistent with this objective because it will provide infrastructure that delivers national, regional and local benefits by ensuring a resilient, reliable, safe and efficient transport connection between Northland and the rest of New Zealand.</p> <p>The Project will support the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities and their health and safety by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Providing a more resilient, reliable, efficient and safe transport connection between Auckland and Northland; ▪ Reducing the volume of deaths and serious injuries by approximately 79% on this section of the state highway corridor; and ▪ Supporting a range of positive social impacts, including meeting the needs of future generations, by improving connectivity and accessibility between Auckland and Northland and including improved access to economic and social opportunity which will lead to a higher standard of living and quality of life. ▪ Continued engagement with hapū. <p>The social, economic and cultural benefits of the Project are further discussed in Section C5 of Volume A.</p> <p>The Project will ensure the state highway network is well-functioning and resilient by providing infrastructure that reflects modern road safety standards and is designed to withstand the impacts of climate change. The Project aims to deliver this infrastructure in a timely and efficient manner.</p> <p>While the Project is not directly for the purpose of enabling development in rural and urban environments, it has the potential to support higher value land-use due to developers converting additional land to higher and better value use, primarily residential.</p> <p>Adverse effects from or on other infrastructure, such as the existing state highway network, local road network and electricity network, will be managed appropriately throughout the duration of this Project.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with the objective.</p>
Part 2, 2.2 Policies	<p>(1) Decision-makers must ensure that the national, regional or local benefits of infrastructure, relative to any localised</p>	<p>As described in detail in Section C2 of Volume A, over the past five years, the Brynderwyn Hills have experienced repeated weather-related disruptions. The</p>

¹ Schedule 5, clause 5(1)(h)

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
<p>Policy 1: Providing for the benefits of infrastructure</p>	<p>adverse effects on the environment, are recognised and provided for.</p> <p>(2) Decision-makers must recognise that the benefits of infrastructure include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) providing for the social, cultural and economic wellbeing of present and future generations; (b) creating, supporting and enhancing well-functioning urban and rural environments; (c) supporting sufficient development capacity to meet demand for housing and business land; (d) providing services that are essential to support human life and the development, growth and functioning of districts, regions, New Zealand and the economy; (e) helping to protect and restore the natural environment; (f) supporting New Zealand's emissions reduction targets and mitigating the effects of climate change; and (g) reducing the risks from, and improving resilience to, natural hazards and climate change. <p>(3) Decision-makers must recognise:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the significant risks to, and impacts on, public safety, the wellbeing of people and communities, and the environment that may occur when infrastructure services are compromised; and (b) that infrastructure networks can be both independent and interconnected. 	<p>existing SH1 through Brynderwyn Hills was closed for a total of 73 days following the extensive damage caused by Cyclone Gabrielle and major weather events in early 2023, with an estimated \$1m cost to the regional and national economy per day. Other, additional major weather events during this period have also led to prolonged closures, reinforcing the vulnerability of this section of SH1. Major weather events are predicted to increase in frequency and intensity.</p> <p>The Project addresses significant resilience issues with the existing SH1 route between Auckland and Northland, with adaptation and resilience incorporated into the Project's design via consideration of flooding, coastal inundation, geological (instability, liquefaction and settlement) and stormwater induced risks. The effects of climate change on the Project are detailed within the SME's technical assessments. The Project therefore directly addresses clause (3)(a) of Policy 1.</p> <p>As described in relation to the NPS-I Objective, the Project will provide national, regional and local benefits, including providing for the social, cultural and economic wellbeing of present and future generations by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Improving connectivity and accessibility between Auckland and Northland, including improved access to economic and social opportunities, which will lead to a higher standard of living and quality of life. ▪ Providing a range of economic benefits, including, but not limited to, the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Savings in business user and freight travel times, supporting higher productivity for the direct beneficiaries of the improved corridor, which will then create broader 'flow-on' effects through the economy, resulting in a higher level of output (GDP) and employment ▪ Delivering significant economic benefits to individuals and firms from travel time, reliability, resilience and accident cost savings. These are valued at approximately \$1.2 billion NPV. ▪ NZTA has been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs. <p>The social, economic, environmental and cultural benefits of the Project are discussed in Section C5 of Volume A and in the assessment of the Objective above.</p> <p>The Project will have some localized adverse effects on the environment, which will be managed appropriately relative to the Project's significant regional and national benefits.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 1.</p>
<p>Policy 2: Operational need or functional need of infrastructure to be in particular locations and environments</p>	<p>(1) Decision-makers must recognise that infrastructure may have an operational need or functional need to operate in, be located in, or traverse particular locations and environments.</p> <p>(2) Decision-makers must recognise that the operational need or functional need of infrastructure includes, but is not limited to, the need to:</p>	<p>As linear infrastructure, to operate effectively and efficiently, the Project must cross district and regional boundaries, and has an operational and functional need to be located in and traverse particular locations and environments, including sensitive natural environments and areas at risk to natural hazards, such as through the Brynderwyn Hills, wetlands, streams and areas of indigenous biodiversity, as confirmed through the alternatives assessment process undertaken for the Project and discussed in Section C5.2.3 of Volume B.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) provide services to people and communities in a timely, effective and efficient manner; (b) operate effectively and efficiently as linear and/or interconnected infrastructure networks within and across district and regional boundaries; (c) access or connect to particular natural or physical resources, including other infrastructure; (d) be accessible so infrastructure activities can be undertaken effectively and efficiently; (e) locate where the services are required, including in areas at risk to natural hazards, whether the infrastructure has been spatially identified in advance; and (f) manage risks from natural hazards. 	<p>The benefits of the Project on travel times, economic efficiency and connections back to the local transport are outlined in detail in Section C5 of Volume A.</p> <p>The Project has been designed to be resilient to natural hazards and climate change, ensuring that risks from natural hazards are appropriate.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 2.</p>
Policy 3: Considering spatial planning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Decision-makers must: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) have regard to the extent to which the infrastructure has been identified within a strategic planning document, while recognising that not all infrastructure can be spatially identified in advance; and (b) consider relevant spatial plans and master plans prepared by the infrastructure provider and provided to the decision-maker. 	<p>The Project is identified in strategic planning documents including the National Land Transport Programme 2024-27, the Northland Regional Land Transport Plan 2021-2027 (NRLTP) and the Northland Regional Transportation Activity Management Plan 2024-54. The Project is also part of a Road of National Significance identified in the Government Policy Statement for Land Transport 2024.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 3.</p>
Policy 4: Enabling the efficient and timely operation and delivery of infrastructure activities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Decision-makers must: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) enable the efficient and timely delivery of infrastructure activities; (b) enable cross-boundary infrastructure networks; (c) provide flexibility for infrastructure providers to use new or innovative technologies and methods to improve the delivery of infrastructure services and/or improve environmental outcomes; (f) enable the upgrading of infrastructure where this will: 	<p>Granting the various approvals sought by NZTA for the Project under the Fast-track Approvals Act 2024, subject to conditions as proposed by NZTA, will support the efficient and timely delivery of infrastructure activities, being a state highway.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 4(1)(a).</p> <p>The Project is part of the state highway network, a nation-wide cross-boundary infrastructure network. The Project will extend between the Kaipara District and the Whangārei District and is a critical part of the Northland Corridor – a progressive upgrade to state highway 1 between Te Hana and Whangārei. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 4(1)(b).</p> <p>NZTA’s consenting approach for the Project is to provide flexibility for innovation in the construction phase. To support this approach the assessments are based on an Indicative Alignment within the Proposed Designation, and NZTA’s proposed conditions are designed to provide flexibility. This approach includes not having Condition 1 (general accordancy) condition; consenting an effects envelope (rather than a specific design) to allow for changes to the alignment during detailed design, within the bounds of the restrictions / outcomes provided for through the conditions. Such an approach provides contractors flexibility to innovate and value engineer, enabling cost savings and more efficient delivery of infrastructure, thereby enabling innovation and demonstrating consistency with Policy 4(1)(c).</p> <p>One of the key drivers behind the Project and key benefits it will deliver is to improve the resilience of the SH1 network. One of the key objectives of the</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<p>(i) improve the resilience of infrastructure to the risks from natural hazards and effects of climate change;</p> <p>(ii) maintain or improve its level of infrastructure service, including to meet increasing demand; or</p> <p>(iii) improve environmental outcomes.</p> <p>(2) Decision-makers must:</p> <p>(a) recognise it is the role of the infrastructure provider to identify the preferred location for the infrastructure activity; and</p> <p>(b) have regard to existing information and assessments undertaken by the infrastructure provider, including, but not limited to, information prepared using the Better Business Cases methodology developed by The Treasury New Zealand, infrastructure strategies prepared under the Local Government Act 2002, or the Infrastructure Priorities Programme developed by New Zealand Infrastructure Commission Te Waihanga.</p>	<p>Project is to provide a route that will be more resilient to natural hazards. This is achieved through the choice of alignment, road and structural design elements. In particular, the Project will lead to an estimated 79% reduction in the time the road is closed due to weather events (as currently experienced on the existing state highway through the Brynderwyn Hills).. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 4(1)(f)(ii).</p> <p>As discussed in Section C5.2 of Volume B, NZTA has carefully assessed where the Project should be located. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 4(2)(a).</p> <p>Existing information and assessments undertaken that are relevant to the Project, include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Te Hana to Whangārei Investment Case undertaken by NZTA in August 2025, recommending route protection of the full corridor, and focusing on the alternative to the Brynderwyn Hills as it addresses a critical resilience risk for the inter-regional connection. ▪ The Government Policy Statement on Land Transport 2024 providing NZTA direction to deliver Roads of National Significance (RoNS), including the Alternative to Brynderwyn Hills. ▪ The National Land Transport Programme 2024 – 27, providing direction to NZTA to progress the alternative to Brynderwyn Hills section as a top priority. ▪ The rigorous alternatives assessment undertaken for the Project (Section C5.2, Volume B). <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 4(2)(b).</p>
<p>Policy 5: Recognising and providing for infrastructure supporting activities</p>	<p>(1) Decision-makers must recognise and provide for the role of infrastructure supporting activities, including by:</p> <p>(a) recognising the importance of infrastructure supporting activities to enable the benefits of infrastructure activities to be realised;</p> <p>(b) recognising the operational need or functional need of some infrastructure supporting activities, including supporting quarrying activities to operate in, be located in, or traverse particular environments and locations; and</p> <p>(c) enabling the timely delivery of infrastructure supporting activities.</p>	<p>The Project's infrastructure supporting activities, such as construction compounds, and laydown areas have an operational need and/or functional need to be located in particular environments and locations to support the construction of the Project. Enabling these activities will ensure efficiency in project delivery, reduce impacts of construction traffic on the network and integrated management of potential adverse effects such as contaminant discharges with construction water controls.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 5.</p>
<p>Policy 6: Recognising and providing for Māori interests</p>	<p>(1) Decision-makers must recognise and provide for Māori interests in relation to infrastructure activities and infrastructure supporting activities, including by:</p> <p>(a) taking into account the outcome of any engagement with tangata whenua on any relevant resource consent, notice of requirement, or request for a private plan change;</p>	<p>NZTA have been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project. To date, this has involved their participation in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and the preparation of Cultural Impact Assessments (helping to identify sites and issues of cultural significance and potential ways to address these matters as part of the Project). NZTA intend to continue working closely with these hapū throughout consenting and delivery of the Project.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 6.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) recognising the opportunities tangata whenua may have in developing and operating their own infrastructure at any scale or in partnership; and (c) local authorities: ... 	
<p>Policy 7: Assessing and managing the effects of proposed infrastructure activities</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) When assessing and managing the effects of infrastructure activities, decision-makers must: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) have regard to the extent to which adverse effects have been avoided, remedied or mitigated through the selection of the route, site or method of undertaking the work; (b) consider the technical and operational requirements and constraints of infrastructure activities; (c) take into account the extent to which the effects of the infrastructure activities are different in scale, intensity, duration and frequency from the effects of existing infrastructure; (d) take into account relevant international standards (that are recognised or used in New Zealand), national standards and recognised best practice standards and methodologies to assess and manage adverse effects; and (e) ensure that the mitigation measures and consent conditions are proportionate to the scale of adverse effects generated by the activity. 	<p>As demonstrated through the alternatives assessment undertaken for the Project (Section C5.2, Volume B), alternative options have been assessed to identify the preferred sites, route and methods for undertaking the Project. That process sought to avoid, remedy and mitigate adverse environmental effects where practicable. As linear infrastructure which forms part of a nationally significant and interconnected infrastructure network, required to connect to that network and locate in various environments, the Project has a number of technical and operational requirements and constraints, as detailed in the Application and outlined in the alternatives assessment. The difference between impacts of the existing infrastructure and what the Project proposes, and relevant standards are discussed in Section C5.2 of Volume B.</p> <p>The mitigation measures and consent conditions have been formulated in consideration of the scale of adverse effects generated by the Project as discussed in Parts D and E of Volume B.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 7.</p>
<p>Policy 9: Managing the effects of new infrastructure and major upgrades</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Decision-makers must enable new infrastructure or major upgrades of existing infrastructure activities in all environments. (2) Where infrastructure activities are proposed to locate in or are likely to have adverse effects on environments and values provided for in section 6 of the Act, the provisions of this policy must be read alongside other relevant national direction, regional policy statements and regional and district plans. (3) Where (2) does not apply, the adverse effects of new infrastructure and major upgrades must be, where practicable, avoided, remedied or mitigated. 	<p>As linear infrastructure, the Project has an operational and functional need to be located in and traverse particular locations and environments, including sensitive natural environments and areas at risk to natural hazards, such as through the Brynderwyn Hills, wetlands, streams and areas of indigenous biodiversity.</p> <p>The Project is proposed to be located in and is likely to have adverse effects on environments and values provided for in section 6 of the RMA (specifically wetlands and rivers and indigenous vegetation and fauna). Therefore, the provisions of the NPS-I have been considered alongside other relevant national direction and regional and district planning frameworks, including the NPS-IB and NPS-FM. These effects are assessed comprehensively in Sections D1 to D15 and C7.2 of Volume B. To reiterate and summarise the assessments in these sections, the Project will avoid the coastal environment, mitigate effects on rivers and wetlands, manage landscape impacts in the Brynderwyn Ranges, and mitigate impacts on significant indigenous biodiversity as far as practicable. In all other areas, the adverse effects of the Project will be, where practicable, avoided, remedied or mitigated.</p> <p>The Project is consistent with Policy 9.</p>

1.2. National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (NPS-FM)

Table 2: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the NPS-FM.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
2.1 Part 2, Objective	<p>(1) The objective of this National Policy Statement is to ensure that natural and physical resources are managed in a way that prioritises:</p> <p>(a) first, the health and well-being of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems;</p> <p>(b) second, the health needs of people (such as drinking water); and</p> <p>(c) third, the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future.</p>	<p>The Project will impact freshwater, as there will be proposed works within and near wetlands and watercourses.</p> <p>Where practicable mitigation measures will be put in place during the construction of the project and in relation to operational stormwater to ensure that impacts are reduced to the extent that the health and wellbeing of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems are retained. The health needs of people will be met through management that avoids impacts to drinking water and if necessary alternative water supplies will be provided. The social, economic, environmental and cultural benefits of the Project are discussed in Section C5 of Volume A. As such the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing will be met.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will be consistent with this objective.</p>
Part 2 2.2 Policies Policy 1 and Policy 2	<p>Freshwater is managed in a way that gives effect to Te Mana o te Wai.</p> <p>Tangata whenua are actively involved in freshwater management (including decision-making processes), and Māori freshwater values are identified and provided for.</p>	<p>Te Mana o te wai encompasses six principles relating to the roles of tangata whenua and other New Zealanders in the management of freshwater, and these principles inform the NPS-FM and its implementation.</p> <p>As noted above, NZTA has been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project, including in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs. NZTA intend to continue working with these hapū throughout consenting and delivery of the Project including in relation to freshwater management and Māori freshwater values.</p> <p>Based on the preceding analysis, the Project is consistent with Policy 1 and Policy 2.</p>
Policy 3	<p>Freshwater is managed in an integrated way that considers the effects of the use and development of land on a whole-of-catchment basis, including the effects on receiving environments.</p>	<p>Impacts on freshwater due to earthworks is anticipated and managed by structural and nonstructural erosion and sediment controls. This includes anticipating and managing sediment yield from catchments to minimise catchment wide effects. Impacts on streams and wetlands have also been assessed at the catchment scale with mitigation suggested where practicable commensurate with values in the receiving environment. The Project's operational stormwater infrastructure has been designed in accordance with the best practice stormwater design to ensure any potential effects of operational discharge are appropriately managed.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 3.</p>
Policy 4	<p>Freshwater is managed as part of New Zealand's integrated response to climate change.</p>	<p>The Project's stormwater infrastructure has been designed in accordance with the best practice stormwater designs, to manage potential operational stormwater and flooding impacts. The design has taken into account climate change and rainfall data to ensure that the state highway maintains fit for purpose and is resilient in the future. Any modification to stream channels and alignment have been designed to maintain existing channel morphology.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 4.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Policy 6	There is no further loss of extent of natural inland wetlands, their values are protected, and their restoration is promoted.	While the Project will avoid natural inland wetlands of the greatest value as far as practicable, the Project will impact several natural inland wetlands. Offsetting is recommended for residual adverse effects on wetlands with the highest ecological value impacted by the Indicative Alignment) and to replace habitat to satisfy the avian offset requirements. No offsetting is proposed for the natural inland wetlands within the Proposed Designation that are exotic, pastural wetlands, or induced by grazing and land management due to their low values. Therefore, the Project is considered to be partially consistent with Policy 6.
Policy 7	The loss of river extent and values is avoided to the extent practicable.	The Project will require works to be undertaken within and/or near streams and rivers, of varying ecological value. Where works within streams and rivers cannot be practicably avoided, realignments will be designed and constructed to mimic the stream they replace and create streams of equal value and river extent as noted in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7 of Volume B). Monitoring is recommended to measure the effectiveness of stream realignment. Therefore the Project is deemed to be partially consistent with Policy 7.
Policy 9	The habitats of indigenous freshwater species are protected.	The habitats of indigenous freshwater species will be protected as much as practicable. Where habitats of indigenous freshwater species cannot be avoided, mitigation measures are proposed, such as culverting and stream realignments to ensure habitat values are retained and high value wetlands are offset. Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy 9.
Policy 15	Communities are enabled to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing in a way that is consistent with this National Policy Statement.	The Project has significant benefits (as outlined in the Application) and provides a more efficient and safe state highway, enabling communities to provide for the social, economic and cultural wellbeing, whilst mitigating effects on freshwater where appropriate. The Project is therefore consistent with Policy 15.

1.3. National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022 (NPS-HPL)

Table 3: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the NPS-HPL.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Part 2, 2.2 Policies Policy 1	Highly productive land is recognised as a resource with finite characteristics and long-term values for land-based primary production.	The Project recognises that highly productive land is a resource with finite characteristics and long-term values for land-based primary production, having specifically considered this as part of the alternatives assessment process and application preparation. The Project has sought to minimise loss of HPL where practicable. Based on this, the Project is consistent with Policy 1.
Policy 8	Highly productive land is protected from inappropriate use and development.	As per clause 3.9(2) of the NPS-HPL, the Project is not considered to be an inappropriate use and development of highly productive land due to the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is associated with the development and operation of specified infrastructure, including its construction, maintenance, upgrade, expansion, replacement and removal;

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The Project has been developed by a requiring authority, NZTA, in relation to a notice of requirement under the RMA; ▪ The Project has undergone a robust alternatives assessment. It is associated with the development and operation of specified infrastructure, and there is a functional or operational need for the Project to be on highly productive land, as discussed in Section C5.2 of Volume B. <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 8.</p>

1.4. National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (NPS-IB)

Table 4: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the NPS-IB.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Part 2, 2.1 Objective	(1) The objective of this National Policy Statement is: (a) to maintain indigenous biodiversity across Aotearoa New Zealand so that there is at least no overall loss in indigenous biodiversity after the commencement date; and	There will be remediation planting to offset the area loss of the Very High and High value vegetation types, however, not all vegetation loss will be mitigated. Likewise, natural inland wetland with quality ecological habitat will be mitigated and, if required, offset. Stream realignment is anticipated to achieve similar ecological value, however offsets are not proposed. Habitat of indigenous fauna will be enhanced in the recommended mitigation sites. Protected species will be managed through the Wildlife Act Authority, with mitigation and habitat protection anticipated. Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Objective 1(a).
	(b) to achieve this: (i) through recognising the mana of tangata whenua as kaitiaki of indigenous biodiversity; and	The Project recognises the mana of hapū as kaitiaki of indigenous biodiversity, noting it has been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since early in the Project design phase. The Project is therefore consistent with Objective 1(b)(i).
	(ii) by recognising people and communities, including landowners, as stewards of indigenous biodiversity; and	The connection between people and indigenous biodiversity and that the health of both is dependent on each other and that people have a responsibility to care for indigenous biodiversity, is acknowledged.
	(iii) by protecting and restoring indigenous biodiversity as necessary to achieve the overall maintenance of indigenous biodiversity; and	The Project will incorporate mitigation measures to manage effects on high value ecological habitat of wetlands, streams and indigenous vegetation. Further, enhancements and protection of existing native vegetation and the habitat of indigenous fauna at the Mitigation and Release Sites will contribute to protecting and restoring indigenous biodiversity. Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Objective 1(b)(iii).
	(iv) while providing for the social, economic, and cultural wellbeing of people and communities now and in the future.	The Project will provide for the social, economic, and cultural wellbeing of people and communities now and in the future, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increasing economic activity, supporting higher levels of output (GDP) and employment, by providing a more resilient, reliable, safer and efficient connection linking Auckland and Northland region. ▪ Providing positive social impacts by improving connectivity and accessibility between Northland and Auckland, including improved access to economic and social opportunity, leading to a higher standard of living and quality of life. ▪ The partnership NZTA has with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau provides for cultural wellbeing. <p>The benefits of the Project are discussed in detail in Section C5 of Volume A. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 1(b)(iv).</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Part 2, 2.2 Policies Policy 1	Indigenous biodiversity is managed in a way that gives effect to the decision-making principles and takes into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.	As noted above, NZTA has been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project, including in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs. NZTA intend to continue working with these hapū throughout consenting and delivery of the Project. Based on the preceding analysis, the Project is consistent with Policy 1.
Policy 2	Tangata whenua exercise kaitiakitanga for indigenous biodiversity in their rohe, including through: (a) managing indigenous biodiversity on their land; and (b) identifying and protecting indigenous species, populations and ecosystems that are taonga; and (c) actively participating in other decision-making about indigenous biodiversity.	NZTA have been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project. To date, this has involved their participation in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and the requested preparation of Cultural Impact Assessments (helping to identify sites and issues of cultural significance and ways to address these matters as part of the Project). NZTA intend to continue working with these hapū throughout consenting and delivery of the Project. This will support hapū to exercise kaitiakitanga for indigenous biodiversity in their rohe. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 2.
Policy 4	Indigenous biodiversity is managed to promote resilience to the effects of climate change.	The Project includes resilience built into components of the indigenous biodiversity system to manage the effects of climate change by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Installing treatment devices such as wetlands, wetland swales and treatment swales to mitigate stormwater runoff from the road corridor. ▪ Avoiding natural wetlands for stormwater treatment, thus preserving sensitive ecological areas. ▪ Mitigation for loss of high value vegetation. ▪ Wildlife Act mitigation and release sites and their management. Therefore, the management of indigenous biodiversity will likely assist ecological resilience, including resilience to climate change. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 4.
Policy 5	Indigenous biodiversity is managed in an integrated way, within and across administrative boundaries.	Through a catchment-based approach, the assessment recognises that the Project traverses two district council boundaries and multiple ecological districts. Mitigation measures are recommended that will ensure management of effects on indigenous biodiversity is undertaken in an integrated manner. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 5
Policy 7	SNAs are protected by avoiding or managing adverse effects from new subdivision, use and development.	As noted in the Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology, the Proposed Designation intersects some areas of native forest habitat which qualify as an SNA under the NPS-IB. While the assessment of alternatives process considered SNAs and the ability to avoid them, this has not always been possible. Where adverse effects on SNAs cannot be avoided, adverse effects are managed through both RMA and WAA mitigation measures, including minimising habitat loss as far as practicable, the implementation of replacement planting for kauri trees and indigenous plant species, replacement of high value wetlands and replacement of other wetlands where there are impacts on Avifauna and recommend mitigation and release sites (as outlined in the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology). Based on the preceding analysis, the Project is considered partially consistent with Policy 7.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Policy 8	The importance of maintaining indigenous biodiversity outside SNAs is recognised and provided for.	<p>The Project will avoid areas of indigenous biodiversity outside SNAs as far as practicable. Where they cannot be avoided, mitigation measures will be implemented to ensure that adverse effects on these areas of indigenous biodiversity, are adequately managed as outlined in relation to Policy 7 above.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is considered be partially consistent with Policy 8.</p>
Policy 10	Activities that contribute to New Zealand’s social, economic, cultural, and environmental wellbeing are recognised and provided for as set out in this National Policy Statement.	<p>A comprehensive summary of the benefits of the Project is provided at Section C5 of Volume A and should be read in conjunction with the comments below. It provides greater evidence of alignment between the Project and environmental, social, economic and cultural outcomes.</p> <p>In summary however, the Project is a RoNS and will provide a more resilient and safe transport connection between Auckland and Whangārei, improving the safety of people and communities using SH1. The Project will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Lead to an increase in economic activity, supporting higher levels of output (GDP) and employment, by providing a more resilient, reliable, safer and efficient connection linking Auckland and the Northland region. ▪ Improve access to economic and social opportunity, which will lead to a higher standard of living and quality of life. <p>Further details on the benefits of the Project are discussed in Section C5 of Volume A.</p> <p>The early and continuing work between NZTA and Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau provides for cultural wellbeing.</p> <p>The Project will ensure the ecological environment is maintained, which will provide for New Zealand’s environmental wellbeing.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 10.</p>
Policy 13	Restoration of indigenous biodiversity is promoted and provided for.	<p>Restoration of indigenous biodiversity is promoted and provided for through the minimisation of indigenous biodiversity loss, including conditions that require the avoidance of some high-value species in specific locations (e.g. kahikatea near the township of Waipu and Kauri trees), Recommended wetland restoration , enhancement of habitat at recommended mitigation sites and by way of riparian planting will also assist restoration of indigenous biodiversity impacted by the Project</p> <p>Overall, the Project is considered partially consistent with Policy 13.</p>
Policy 14	Increased indigenous vegetation cover is promoted in both urban and non-urban environments.	<p>The Project will as a minimum maintain areas of high-value indigenous vegetation cover in non-urban environments through proposed mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites”.</p> <p>Further, Landscape Design Plan (LDP) and Landscape Concept Plans (LCP) will be prepared which have the potential to further enhance the extent of vegetative cover in the rural environment.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is considered partially consistent with Policy 14.</p>
Policy 15	Areas outside SNAs that support specified highly mobile fauna are identified and managed to maintain their populations across their natural range, and information and awareness of highly mobile fauna is improved.	<p>The desktop and field assessments undertaken to prepare the Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology (Appendix D8 of Volume B) have identified habitat of highly mobile fauna and have made recommendations for management and replacement of their habitat, particularly in relation to cryptic marsh birds. The recommended multipurpose terrestrial mitigation sites along with landscape and riparian enhancement suggested for stream and wetlands. will also assist in maintenance habitat that supports avifauna populations across their natural range. Through the studies undertaken and the</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		management practices recommended in the Avifauna report we anticipate information and awareness of highlight mobile fauna will improve in this part of Northland. The Project is therefore consistent with Policy 15.
Policy 17	There is improved information and regular monitoring of indigenous biodiversity.	The indigenous biodiversity investigations undertaken for the Project will assist with improving information on indigenous biodiversity in the Brynderwyn Hills area. Monitoring of mitigation planting will be undertaken. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 17.

1.5. National Policy Statement on Electricity Networks 2008 (NPS-EN)

Table 5: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the NPS-ET.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Section 5		
Part 2, 2.1 Objective	1) The national significance of the electricity network is recognised, protected and provided for, so that the network: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) is upgraded, improved and resilient to provide for the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of present and future generations and their health and safety; (b) is developed and operated in a timely, efficient and ongoing manner while managing adverse effects from or on the EN; and supports achievement of New Zealand’s climate change mitigation and renewable energy targets.	The Project recognises the national significance of the electricity network and therefore has minimised intersection with the network as much as practicable. Any work in proximity to the electricity network will be managed to reduce potential adverse effects from working beneath and around the National Grid. NZTA is committed through ongoing engagement with Transpower to ensuring that the operation, maintenance, upgrade and development of the existing electricity network can be readily provided throughout construction and operational phases of the Project and managing any temporary adverse effects of the Project on the electricity network. Any requirement to impact directly on the National Grid as a result of the Project works will be managed through pre-existing relationship agreements between NZTA and Transpower. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 1 of the NPS-EN.
National significance and benefits of the EN		
Policy 1	1) Decision-makers on EN activities must: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) recognise and provide for the national significance of the EN; and (b) provide for the ongoing benefits of the EN to be realised at national, regional and local scales, relative to any localised adverse effects. 	As noted above, NZTA is engaged in ongoing engagement and collaboration with Transpower to ensure that the operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the electricity network is not compromised by the Project. NZTA has, amongst other matters through this engagement, confirmed the working room clearance around the transmission lines and towers during construction, and Transpower operational needs for access to the existing transmission towers for maintenance during the operational phase of the Project. As noted above, ny requirement to impact directly on the National Grid as a result of the Project works will be directly discussed with Transpower. The Project will continue to ensure the national, regional and local benefits of sustainable, secure and efficient electricity network are provided for. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 1 of the NPS-EN.
Policy 2	1) Decision-makers must recognise that the benefits of the EN include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) providing for the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities to meet the needs of present and future generations and their health and safety; (b) providing services that are essential to support human life and the development, growth and functioning of districts, regions, New Zealand and the economy; 	The Project will ensure that the effective operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the electricity network by Transpower will continue to be provided for during construction, and within the operational environment for the Project. As discussed above, engagement with Transpower continues to be a priority for NZTA and will be maintained throughout construction to ensure the Project does not compromise the operation and maintenance of the electricity network. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 2 of the NPS-EN.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) providing safe, secure, reliable and resilient electricity supply that is responsive to demand from homes, communities and businesses at a local, regional and national scale; (d) efficient storage and transfer of electricity; (e) supporting climate change mitigation and the electrification of the economy, including by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) supporting new, expanded or increased renewable electricity generation; (ii) increasing and improving network capacity; and (iii) providing direct connections for industry and commercial development; and (f) enhancing supply of electricity through the ETN by removing points of congestion. 	
Managing the effects of third parties on the EN		
Policy 11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Decision-makers and local authorities must manage adverse effects of activities undertaken by third parties on the EN, including by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) avoiding direct effects on the EN; (b) avoiding reverse sensitivity effects on the EN, to the extent reasonably possible; and (c) ensuring that the effective operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the EN is not compromised. 	<p>The Project will avoid intersection with the electricity transmission infrastructure as much as practicable. Any works which are in close proximity to electricity transmission infrastructure will be managed to reduce the potential adverse effects from working beneath and around the National Grid.</p> <p>The Project will ensure that access to the existing Transpower towers is maintained and is not compromised. The Project is not a sensitive activity and therefore it will avoid reverse sensitivity effects on the electricity transmission network.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 10.</p>

2. Northland Regional Plans

2.1. Regional Policy Statement for Northland 2016 (RPSN)

Table 6: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the RPSN.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
3 Objectives		
Objective 3.1 Integrated catchment management	Integrate the management of freshwater and the subdivision, use and development of land in catchments to enable catchment-specific objectives for freshwater and associated coastal water to be met.	<p>Catchment specific objectives at the macro-level set by the RPSN are not addressed at the project specific level but must be managed across the Region via consents and measurable environmental outcomes.</p> <p>Project specific objectives for freshwater management consistent with the recommendations and mitigation approaches described by the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7) and the Assessment of Effects of Operational Stormwater and Flooding (Appendix D11) are summarised in Sections D7 and D11 of Volume B.</p> <p>Overall freshwater quality, and the quality of freshwater ecological habitats, will be maintained by the Project, consistent with best-practice.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Objective 3.1.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
<p>Objective 3.2 Region-wide water quality</p>	<p>Improve the overall quality of Northland’s fresh and coastal water with a particular focus on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) ... (b) Increasing the overall Macroinvertebrate Community Index status of the region’s rivers and streams; (c) Reducing sedimentation rates in the region’s estuaries and harbours; (d) Improving microbiological water quality at popular contact recreation sites, recreational and cultural shellfish gathering sites, and commercial shellfish growing areas to minimise risk to human health; and (e) Protecting the quality of registered drinking water supplies and the potable quality of other drinking water sources. 	<p>The Construction Water Assessment (Appendix D10 of Volume B) includes details on how the Project will manage potential adverse effects of sedimentation to retain existing water quality.</p> <p>The Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7 of Volume B) discusses how the Project will manage potential impacts on freshwater ecology, including commentary on retaining the existing ecological values as expressed through the stream SEVs. SEV the macroinvertebrate community indices (MCI) and SEVs.</p> <p>The Project will not involve works within or in proximity to drinking water supplies and therefore the quality of registered drinking water supplies and the potable quality of other drinking water sources will continue to be protected. Potential effects on groundwater from the Project have been assessed to be minimal in the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater (Appendix D12 of Volume B).</p> <p>The Project will involve the large-scale transfer of traffic from an untreated highway corridor to a treated highway generating an overall net benefit. Operational stormwater will be managed utilizing stormwater best practice as outlined in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B).</p> <p>The Project will manage water quality however is unlikely to improve it overall.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is partially consistent with Objective 3.2.</p>
<p>Objective 3.3 Ecological flows and water levels</p>	<p>Maintain flows, flow variability and water levels necessary to safeguard the life supporting capacity, ecosystem processes, indigenous species and the associated ecosystems of freshwater</p>	<p>As described within the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7) and at Section D7 of Volume B, stream realignments and culverts will be designed and constructed to provide:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For stream realignments, the same channel morphology, depths and wetted width, similar surface flows and depths, similar substrates and riparian conditions for shading, and the same or similar flow velocity profiles as the stream under typical flow conditions. ▪ For culverts, benthic habitat, accessible inlet and outlet structures and the same or similar flow velocities as the stream under typical flow conditions. <p>Fish passage in accordance with the NIWA Guidelines will be provided where adequate freshwater habitat is available upstream of the structure for the indigenous fauna likely to access those habitats.</p> <p>The Project is therefore consistent with Objective 3.3.</p>
<p>Objective 3.4 Indigenous ecosystems and biodiversity</p>	<p>Safeguard Northland’s ecological integrity by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Protecting areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna; (b) Maintaining the extent and diversity of indigenous ecosystems and habitats in the region; and (c) Where practicable, enhancing indigenous ecosystems and habitats, particularly where this contributes to the reduction in the overall threat status of regionally and nationally threatened species. 	<p>The Project will avoid areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna as much as practicable including Wetland 24 and the QE II area Where these cannot be avoided, mitigation measures have been proposed to manage adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity as noted in the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B), including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Minimisation of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss where practicable. ▪ Mitigation planting and enhancement of high value existing vegetation. ▪ Maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting; and

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Suggested areas for habitat mitigation to enhance the habitat of protected indigenous species. <p>With these mitigation measures implemented, the Project will mitigate - high value indigenous ecosystems and habitats in the Proposed Designation Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy 3.4.</p>
Objective 3.5 Enabling economic wellbeing	<p>Northland's natural and physical resources are sustainably managed in a way that is attractive for business and investment that will improve the economic wellbeing of Northland and its communities.</p>	<p>The Project will manage the physical resource (which includes infrastructure) of the state highway corridor in a way that is attractive for investment and the economic wellbeing of Northland. The Project will improve the economic wellbeing of Northland and its communities, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Savings in business user and freight travel times, supporting higher productivity for the direct beneficiaries, which will then create broader 'flow-on' effects through the economy resulting in a higher level of output (GDP) and employment. ▪ Support higher value land-use due to developers converting additional land to higher and better value use, primarily residential. ▪ Improving the resilience of the corridor to extreme weather events. <p>The benefits of the Project are discussed further in Section C5 of Volume A.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 3.5.</p>
Objective 3.6 Economic activities – reverse sensitivity and sterilisation	<p>The viability of land and activities important for Northland's economy is protected from the negative impacts of new subdivision, use and development, with particular emphasis on either:</p> <p>(a) Reverse sensitivity for existing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Primary production activities; (ii) Industrial and commercial activities; (iii) Mining*; or (iv) Existing and planned regionally significant infrastructure; or <p>(b) Sterilisation of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Land with regionally significant mineral resources; or (ii) Land which is likely to be used for regionally significant infrastructure. <p>*Includes aggregates and other minerals.</p>	<p>While the Project is not directly for the purpose of enabling development in rural and urban environments, the Proposed Designation does provide certainty to landowners and prospective purchasers and developers of land where the Project's alignment sits, and the actual and potential effects of the Project. The Project is regionally significant infrastructure, and integrates with existing regionally significant industry and utilities, including the Atlas Quarry, National Grid and a FirstGas pipeline.</p> <p>The Project is not an urban, rural or rural residential form of development and therefore it is not necessarily susceptible to reverse sensitivity effects, other than those which originate between new sensitive land use establishing adjacent to major infrastructure following the Proposed Designation being established. The designation has the effect of informing landowners of future expectations of amenity should development occur adjacent to the alignment. Regardless, the design of the Project has taken into account operational noise effects and compatibility with existing land uses.</p> <p>The assessment in Section D4.2 of Volume 2 concludes that all PPF's in all zones crossed by the Indicative Alignment will generally receive significantly reduced noise levels following the move of SH1 traffic away from these receivers, with the exception of several locations in Zone 1 where mitigation treatments can be applied through low-noise generating pavements to reduce these increases. With mitigation, the Project will not have an adverse effect on those properties.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective 3.6.</p>
Objective 3.7 Regionally significant infrastructure	<p>Recognise and promote the benefits of regionally significant infrastructure, (a physical resource), which through its use of natural and physical resources can significantly enhance Northland's economic, cultural, environmental and social wellbeing.</p>	<p>The Project is Regionally Significant Infrastructure (defined in Appendix 3 of the RPSN and extends to the site related components that enable the asset to function) that will bring significant regional and local benefits to Northland's economic, cultural and</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		social wellbeing as outlined above in the NPS-I assessment (Objective and Policy 1). The benefits of the Project are discussed in Section C5 of Volume A. Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Objective 3.7.
Objective 3.8 Efficient and effective infrastructure	Manage resource use to: (a) ...; (b) Ensure new infrastructure is flexible, adaptable, and resilient, and meets the reasonably foreseeable needs of the community; and (c) Strategically enable infrastructure to lead or support regional economic development and community wellbeing.	The Project will provide adaptable, resilient, efficient and safe new infrastructure that will meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of the community by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Providing essential and secure services, including in emergencies as it will be more resilient to natural hazards; ▪ Facilitating local and regional connectivity as it will provide a more resilient connection between Auckland and Northland, supporting economic growth and productivity; ▪ Contributing to the economy, as it will support freight capacity between Auckland and Northland; and ▪ Enabling people and communities to provide for their health, safety and wellbeing. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 3.8.
Objective 3.11 Regional form	Northland has sustainable built environments that effectively integrate infrastructure with subdivision, use and development, and have a sense of place, identity and a range of lifestyle, employment and transport choices.	The Project will provide a more resilient, reliable, safe and efficient route for SH1, connecting Northland communities to Auckland, reflecting growth in the region and the subsequent need for reliable transport choices. As such, the Project seeks to effectively integrate the provision of new regionally significant infrastructure with the ongoing development of Northland, contributing to Northland's sustainable built environments. The Project is therefore consistent with Objective 3.11.
Objective 3.12 Tangata Whenua role in decision-making	Tangata whenua kaitiaki role is recognised and provided for in decision-making over natural and physical resources.	As noted above, NZTA has been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs. Through this involvement, NZTA has sought to recognise and provide for the role of tangata whenua in decision-making as part of the Project. Based on the above, the Project is consistent with Objective 3.12.
Objective 3.13 Natural hazard risk	The risks and impacts of natural hazard events (including the influence of climate change) on people, communities, property, natural systems, infrastructure and our regional economy are minimised by: (a) Increasing our understanding of natural hazards, including the potential influence of climate change on natural hazard events; (b) Becoming better prepared for the consequences of natural hazard events; (c) Avoiding inappropriate new development in 10 and 100 year flood hazard areas and coastal hazard areas; (d) Not compromising the effectiveness of existing defences (natural and man-made); (e) Enabling appropriate hazard mitigation measures to be created to protect existing vulnerable development; and (f) Promoting long-term strategies that reduce the risk of natural hazards impacting on people and communities.	One of the key drivers behind the Project and key benefits it will deliver is improved resilience of the SH1 network through the provision of an alternative route that is more resilient to natural hazards and the effects of climate change. Through the provision of an alternate route, the Project will reduce the risks and impacts of natural hazards on people, communities, infrastructure and the regional economy. The Project is not considered inappropriate development and will not compromise the effectiveness of existing natural and man-made defences against natural hazards. The Project has an operational and functional need to operate in, be located in and traverse particular locations and environments, including flood hazard areas and areas which may be subject to land instability. One of the objectives of the alternative assessment was resilience, this included consideration of natural hazards (flooding and geological risks). One of the criteria of the alternatives assessment was Stormwater and Hydrology/ Hydrogeology which encompassed potential flooding extent of effects on adverse hydrology / hydrogeology including steep slopes.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	(g) Recognising that in justified circumstances, critical infrastructure may have to be located in natural hazard-prone areas.	Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Objective 3.13.
Objective 3.14 Natural character, outstanding natural features, outstanding natural landscapes and historic heritage	Identify and protect from inappropriate subdivision, use and development; (a) The qualities and characteristics that make up the natural character of the coastal environment, and the natural character of freshwater bodies and their margins; (b) The qualities and characteristics that make up outstanding natural features and outstanding natural landscapes; (c) The integrity of historic heritage.	<p>The Project will be entirely outside of the coastal environment. The quality and characteristics of natural character impacts on freshwater bodies have been identified in The Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) along with outstanding natural landscapes in the Proposed designation.</p> <p>Landscape and natural character mitigation measures such as retention of Kahikatea at the entrance to Waipu, and design of stream realignment and vegetation of summit and spoil sites where possible to soften impact on the ONL have been proposed to manage adverse effects, commensurate with specified infrastructure.</p> <p>Preparation of a Landscape Design Plan (LDP) and Landscape Concept Plans (LCP) is also recommended.</p> <p>The Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7 of Volume B), identifies the ecological values of the freshwater bodies and ecology affected by the Project and outlines measures to manage and mitigate adverse effects on the values of these bodies.</p> <p>There is only one historic heritage site identified in the Proposed Kaipara District Plan, the Coates Memorial (HH-BRY-01), which is noted by the Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (Appendix D5 of Volume B) as a monument remembering Joseph Gordon Coates, 25th prime minister of New Zealand. This site is located within the Proposed Designation, but is not impacted by the Indicative Alignment footprint, and disturbance of this site will be avoided throughout construction works. There are no other historic heritage sites identified in the PKDP that are relevant to the Project.</p> <p>In terms of archaeological sites, (historic heritage includes sites defined by the NZHPT Act 2014) the Project will avoid all pā sites within the Proposed Designation. However, other sites in the Proposed Designation that cannot be avoided, Archaeological Authorities are being sought to modify or destroy these sites.</p> <p>Archaeological investigation and recording of any historical material will be undertaken for each of the sites included within the Archaeological Authority to add to the appreciation and historical knowledge in the area.</p> <p>Furthermore, the Project is not considered inappropriate development because it is a lifeline utility and it will provide significant benefits to the region.</p> <p>The Project is partially consistent with Objective 3.14. as effects are mitigated and managed rather than protected.</p>
Objective 3.15 Active management	Maintain and / or improve; (a) The natural character of the coastal environment and fresh water bodies and their margins; (b) Outstanding natural features and outstanding natural landscapes; (c) Historic heritage; (d) Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna (including those within estuaries and harbours); (e) Public access to the coast; and	The actual and potential effects of the Project on the aspects listed by Objective 3.15 are addressed elsewhere within this document, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Objective 3.14 – in relation to the natural character of freshwater bodies and their margins. ▪ Policy D.2.17 of the RPN – in relation to the effects of the Project on the Brynderwyn Hills southern escarpment and ONL. ▪ Policy 4.6.2 – in relation to historic heritage.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<p>(f) Fresh and coastal water quality by supporting, enabling and positively recognising active management arising from the efforts of landowners, individuals, iwi, hapū and community groups.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Policy 4.4.1 – in relation to effects of the Project on areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna. ▪ Policy 4.2.1 – in relation to the quality of freshwater. <p>The Project does not relate to the coastal environment.</p> <p>Not all adverse effects of the Project are capable of being avoided, remedied or mitigated, or maintained or improved as required by this policy. However, the Project incorporates a comprehensive offset and compensation strategy for residual adverse effects, where practicable and reasonably necessary to achieve the objectives of the Project, to improve environmental, social and cultural outcomes.</p> <p>Accordingly, the Project is partially consistent with Objective 3.15.</p>
<p>4.2 Region-wide water quality management</p>		
<p>Policy 4.2.1 Improving overall water quality</p>	<p>Improve the overall quality of Northland’s water resources by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Establishing freshwater objectives and setting region-wide water quality limits in regional plans that give effect to Objective 3.2 of this regional policy statement. (b) Reducing loads of sediment, nutrients, and faecal matter to water from the use and development of land and from poorly treated and untreated discharges of wastewater; and (c) Promoting and supporting the active management, enhancement and creation of vegetated riparian margins and wetlands. 	<p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) has assessed the effects of stormwater runoff from the road corridor, containing contaminants such as sediment, heavy metals and hydrocarbons. Best practice stormwater will be used to manage stormwater-borne contaminants.</p> <p>The Construction Water Assessment (Appendix D10 of Volume B) has assessed the potential changes to water quality during the construction phase of the Project due to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Discharge of sediment from earthworks during both rain and flood events ▪ Discharge of sediment from in-stream activities and changes to flow ▪ Discharge of other contaminants. <p>There will be water quality monitoring to assess the effectiveness of erosion and sediment controls and adaptive management implemented to address adverse effects if found. The Project will also install a number of permanent stormwater treatment wetlands for the treatment of stormwater runoff from impervious surfaces during the operational phase of the Project in accordance with (c).</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy 4.2.1.</p>
<p>4.4 Maintaining and enhancing indigenous ecosystems and species</p>		

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
<p>Policy 4.4.1 Maintaining and protecting significant ecological areas and habitats</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) In the coastal environment, ... (2) In the coastal environment, ... (3) Outside the coastal environment and where clause (1) does not apply, avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects of subdivision, use and development so they are not significant on any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation; (b) Habitats of indigenous species that are important for recreational, commercial, traditional or cultural purposes; (c) Indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are particularly vulnerable to modification, including wetlands, dunelands, northern wet heathlands, headwater streams, floodplains and margins of freshwater bodies, spawning and nursery areas. (4) For the purposes of clause (1), (2) and (3), when considering whether there are any adverse effects and/or any significant adverse effects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Recognise that a minor or transitory effect may not be an adverse effect; (b) Recognise that where the effects are or maybe irreversible, then they are likely to be more than minor; (c) Recognise that there may be more than minor cumulative effects from minor or transitory effects. (5) For the purpose of clause (3) if adverse effects cannot be reasonably avoided, remedied or mitigated then it maybe appropriate to consider the next steps in the mitigation hierarchy i.e. biodiversity offsetting followed by environmental biodiversity compensation, as methods to achieve Objective 3.4. 	<p>The Project will be entirely outside of the coastal environment and therefore Policy 4.4.1(1) and (2) are not relevant. There are no SEA's identified in the Whangarei or Kaipara District Plans. Mitigation measures have been proposed to manage adverse effects where the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B) identified significant residual adverse effects: that being for high value vegetation and frogs.</p> <p>NZTA have been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project. Cultural Impact Assessments are being prepared, and will assist in identifying sites and issues of cultural significance and ways to address these matters as part of the Project. NZTA intend to continue working with these hapū throughout consenting and delivery of the Project.</p> <p>Offsetting is recommended for residual adverse effects on wetlands with the highest ecological value impacted by the Indicative Alignment and to replace habitat to satisfy the avian offset requirements.</p> <p>Both ecological and natural character mitigation is recommended to be implemented the margins of freshwater bodies, including those that provide habitat and fish spawning values, such as the Waihoihoi and Piroa streams.</p> <p>The scale of effects of the Project on natural character and landscape values has also considered temporal elements, reducing over time as outlined in the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B)</p> <p>Cumulative effects of impacts on natural inland wetlands across the three catchments were considered and found to be very low to low at the Ecological District level.</p> <p>Residual effects management for terrestrial and freshwater is also recommended for high value indigenous vegetation and frogs and potentially stream loss. The scale of residual effect management and need for offset will be defined following detailed design, the monitoring of the success of mitigation measures including stream realignments and the quantity of species impacted.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is partially consistent with Policy 4.4.1.</p>
<p>4.6 Managing effects on natural character, features / landscapes and heritage</p>		
<p>Policy 4.6.1 Managing effects on the characteristics and qualities natural character, natural</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) In the coastal environment: ... (2) Outside the coastal environment avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) of subdivision, use and development on the characteristics and qualities of outstanding natural features and outstanding natural landscapes and the natural character of freshwater bodies. Methods which may achieve this include: 	<p>Policy 4.6.1(1) is not relevant to the Project as it is not located within the coastal environment.</p> <p>The Assessment of Landscape and Character Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) provides a detailed analysis of the potential effects of the Project on landscape and visual amenity and the natural character of wetlands, rivers and their margins.</p> <p>The Proposed Designation follows existing landscape patterns by largely aligning with the SH1 corridor and nearby transmission line, while avoiding sensitive areas such as</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
features and landscapes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) In outstanding natural landscapes, requiring that the location and intensity of subdivision, use and built development is appropriate having regard to, natural elements, landforms and processes, including vegetation patterns, ridgelines and freshwater bodies and their margins; b) In outstanding natural features, requiring that the scale and intensity of earthworks and built development is appropriate taking into account the scale, form and vulnerability to modification of the feature; c) Minimising, indigenous vegetation clearance and modification (including earthworks / disturbance and structures) to natural wetlands, the beds of lakes, rivers and their margins. <p>(3) When considering whether there are any adverse effects on the characteristics and qualities of the natural character, natural features and landscape values in terms of (1)(a), whether there are any significant adverse effects and the scale of any adverse effects in terms of (1)(b) and (2), and in determining the character, intensity and scale of the adverse effects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Recognise that a minor or transitory effect may not be an adverse effect; b) Recognise that many areas contain ongoing use and development that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Were present when the area was identified as high or outstanding or have subsequently been lawfully established (ii) May be dynamic, diverse or seasonal; c) Recognise that there may be more than minor cumulative adverse effects from minor or transitory adverse effects; and d) Have regard to any restoration and enhancement on the characteristics and qualities of that area of natural character, natural features and/or natural landscape. 	<p>coastal connections at Waipū. It generally follows natural landforms, including river valleys, spurs, and saddles through the Brynderwyn Hills and surrounding volcanic terrain, to minimise visual and environmental effects while fitting within the established landscape context.</p> <p>The Project has also implemented appropriate mitigation measures where effects were assessed as moderate or higher in the Assessment of Landscape and Character Effects to ensure that the characteristics, qualities and values that make up the natural character in freshwater bodies outside the coastal environment (Waihoihoi River, Piroa Stream) and ONLs are protected as much as practicable. For example, Landscape Concept Plans will be prepared, which will include drawings and descriptions (where appropriate) of the landscape planting to be implemented during Project works. This mitigation includes extent and location of the proposed replacement of kahikatea / tōtara stands, revegetation of spoil disposal sites and the planting of indigenous riparian vegetation along the meander loop of the Waihoihoi River and the southern side of the Piroa Stream.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 4.6.1(2).</p>
Policy 4.6.2 Maintaining the integrity of heritage resources	<p>(1) Protect the integrity of historic heritage resources that have been identified in plans in accordance with Policy 4.5.3 and Method 4.5.4(3):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) By avoiding significant adverse effects of subdivision, use and development and avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on historic heritage in the following way: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Requiring careful design and location of subdivision, use and development to retain heritage buildings and other physical elements of historic heritage and where practical enhance public use and access; (ii) Restricting the demolition / relocation of and / or inappropriate modifications, additions or alterations to physical elements of historic heritage; 	<p>There is one historic heritage resource that has been identified in plans (Coates Monument in the OKDP and PKDP) located within the Proposed Designation for the Project. As noted in the Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (Appendix D5 of Volume B), the Indicative Alignment avoids this monument and has not been assessed further.</p> <p>The Project is not located within any historic heritage resources identified in the Whangārei District Plan (WDP) and RPN.</p> <p>There is also an exception noted in 4.6.2(2), where it recognises that Regionally Significant Infrastructure (RSI) proposals that cannot meet 4.6.2(1) may still be appropriate after assessment against the matters in Policy 5.3.3(3). Assessment against this policy is discussed below. As RSI, should the Project impact this historic heritage resource, the Project is still considered to be appropriate, as per the analysis in Policy 5.3.3(3) below.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (iii) Recognising that the integrity of many historic heritage resources relies on context and maintain these relationships in the design and location of subdivision, use and development; (iv) Recognising the collective value of groups of heritage buildings, structures and / or places, particularly where these are representative of Northland’s historic settlements, architecture or periods in history and maintain the wider character of such areas; and (v) Restricting activities that compromise important spiritual or cultural values held by Māori / and / or the wider community in association with particular heritage places or features. <p>(2) Despite the above:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Clause 1 does not apply where natural hazards threaten the viability of regionally significant infrastructure and / or public health and safety; or b) Regionally significant infrastructure proposals that cannot meet 4.6.2(1) may still be appropriate after assessment against the matters in Policy 5.3.3(3). 	<p>Culturally and archaeologically significant pā sites have been identified by the Assessment of Effects on Archaeology and through engagement with Hapū, and these sites have been avoided through the alternatives assessment phase of the Project.</p> <p>Overall, the integrity of historic heritage resources that have been identified in plans will be protected or appropriately managed and is consistent with Policy 4.6.2.</p>
5.1 Regional form		
Policy 5.1.1 Planned and coordinated development	Subdivision, use and development should be located, designed and built in a planned and co-ordinated manner which:	<p>As described earlier (when assessing the Project’s alignment with the NPS-I), the Project is identified in strategic planning documents, including the Northland Regional Land Transport Plan 2021-2027 (NRLTP) and the Whangārei Future Development Strategy 2025. The Project is part of a Road of National Significance identified in the Government Policy Statement for Land Transport 2024. The Project is therefore planned and integrated into the regional spatial strategies, and the Proposed Designation will give certainty to landowners and developers as to the location of the Indicative Alignment and the actual and potential effects of the Project.</p> <p>The Project is therefore consistent with Policy 5.1.1.</p>
Policy 5.1.3 Avoiding the adverse effects of new use(s) and development	<p>Avoid the adverse effects, including reverse sensitivity effects of new subdivision, use and development, particularly residential development on the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Primary production activities in primary production zones (including within the coastal marine area); (b) Commercial and industrial activities in commercial and industrial zones; (c) The operation, maintenance or upgrading of existing or planned regionally significant infrastructure; and (d) The use and development of regionally significant mineral resources. 	<p>The Project primarily traverses rural land uses, where some properties may be used for primary production activities. Adverse effects on existing primary production activities have been considered in the assessment of effects on HPL including fragmentation and compaction of soil. These impacts are been avoided as far as practical as outlined in further detail in Section D14 of Volume B. The Project will avoid as far as practical and will not interfere with the operation, maintenance or upgrading of the National Grid as assessed in Table 1.5 above on the NPS-EN.</p> <p>The Project will not cause adverse effects on existing commercial and industrial activities and regionally significant mineral resources.</p> <p>In terms of reverse sensitivity effects, the Project is for a state highway, which is not a sensitive land use. Therefore, reverse sensitivity effects will be minimal.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will be consistent with Policy 5.1.3.</p>
5.2 Effective and efficient infrastructure		

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Policy 5.2.1 Managing the use of resources	Encourage development and activities to efficiently use resources, particularly network resources, water and energy, and promote the reduction and reuse of waste.	The Project has implemented an efficient earthworks design, which aims to optimise material reuse across the corridor. There is also crushing of excavated rock to reuse slightly weathered greywacke for construction purposes as noted in Section C4.2.6 of Volume A. Therefore, the Project will efficiently use resources and promote the reduction and reuse of waste in accordance with Policy 5.2.1.
Policy 5.2.2 Future-proofing infrastructure	Encourage the development of infrastructure that is flexible, resilient, and adaptable to the reasonably foreseeable needs of the community.	The Project will provide infrastructure that is flexible, resilient and adaptable to the reasonably foreseeable needs of the community as assessed in Table 1.1 above (NPS-I) Objective and Policies 1 and 4. The Project is therefore consistent with Policy 5.2.2.
Policy 5.2.3 Infrastructure, growth and economic development	Promote the provision of infrastructure as a means to shape, stimulate and direct opportunities for growth and economic development.	The Project will create opportunities for growth and economic development, as assessed in Table 1.1 (NPS-I) Policy 1 demonstrating consistency with Policy 5.2.3.
5.3 Regionally significant infrastructure		
Policy 5.3.2 Benefits of regionally significant infrastructure	Particular regard shall be had to the significant social, economic, and cultural benefits of regionally significant infrastructure when considering and determining resource consent applications or notices of requirement for regionally significant infrastructure.	The Project is regionally significant infrastructure and it will have significant social and economic benefits as assessed in Table 1.1 (NPS-I) Policy 1. The benefits of the Project are further discussed in Section C5 of Volume A. Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy 5.3.2.
Policy 5.3.3 Managing adverse effects arising from regionally significant infrastructure	<p>(1) Allow adverse effects arising from the establishment and operation of new regionally significant infrastructure and the re-consenting of existing operations where:</p> <p>(a) The proposal is consistent with Policies 4.4.1(1), 4.4.1(2), 4.6.1(1)(a), 4.6.1(1)(b), 4.6.1(2) and 4.6.2 (1);</p> <p>(b) The proposal does not result in established water quality limits or environmental flows and / or levels being exceeded or otherwise could lead to the over-allocation of a catchment (refer to Policy 4.1.1);</p> <p>(c) Damage to and / or loss of the relationship of iwi with ancestral sites, sites of significance, wāhi tapu, customary activities and / or taonga is avoided or otherwise agreed to by the affected iwi or hapū; and</p> <p>(d) In addition to the matters outlined in 1) (a) – (c) above, other adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated to the extent that they are no more than minor.</p> <p>(2) Allow adverse effects arising from the maintenance and upgrading of established regionally significant infrastructure wherever it is located, where:</p> <p>(a) The adverse effects whilst the maintenance or upgrading is being undertaken are not significant; and</p> <p>(b) The adverse effects after the conclusion of the maintenance or upgrading are the same or similar to before the activity being undertaken.</p> <p>(3) When managing the adverse effects of regionally significant infrastructure decision makers will give weight to:</p>	<p>The Project is considered new regionally significant infrastructure. The suite of technical assessments (attached as Appendix D of Volume B) assesses the potential effects of the project and provides relevant mitigation measures to be implemented.</p> <p>The Project is partially consistent with Policy 4.4.1(1) as addressed in this table.</p> <p>Policies 4.4.1(2), 4.6.1(1)(a), 4.6.1(1)(b) are not relevant to the Project.</p> <p>The Project will not result in damage to and / or loss of pā sites. NZTA will continue to work with hapū in relation to the relationship with ancestral sites, sites of significance, wāhi tapu, customary activities and / or taonga.</p> <p>As outlined in Table 1.1, assessment of the Project against the NPS-I demonstrates that the Project aligns with this NPS and should be recognised and provided for this reason (3b).</p> <p>The rigorous alternatives assessment for the Project included discarding options that were impractical or had greater adverse effects as outlined in Section C5.2 of Volume B (3c).</p> <p>The Project is RSI and a lifeline utility listed in Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Act (3d).</p> <p>In relation to (3e) our assessment under Policy 4.4.1 acknowledge residual effects may remain, and the need for consideration of further offset proposed.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is partially consistent with Policy 5.3.3.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) The benefits of the activity in terms of Policy 5.3.2; (b) Whether the activity must be recognised and provided for as directed by a national policy statement; (c) Any constraints that limit the design and location of the activity, including any alternatives that have been considered which have proven to be impractical, or have greater adverse effects; (d) Whether the proposal is for regionally significant infrastructure which is included in Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act as a lifeline utility and meets the reasonably foreseeable needs of Northland. (e) The extent to which the adverse effects of the activity can be practicably reduced. Such an assessment shall also take into account appropriate measures, when offered, to provide positive effects, either within the subject site or elsewhere provided that the positive effects accrue to the community of interest and / or resource affected; and (f) Whether a monitoring programme for any identified significant adverse effects with unknown or uncertain outcomes could be included as a condition of consent and an adaptive management regime (including modification to the consented activity) is used to respond to such effects. (g) Whether the infrastructure proposal helps to achieve consolidated development and efficient use of land. 	
6.1 Efficient and effective planning		
Policy 6.1.2 Precautionary approach	Adopt a precautionary approach towards the effects of climate change and introducing genetically modified organisms to the environment where they are scientifically uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potentially significantly adverse.	<p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) provides an assessment of predicted flooding effects of the Project based on the 1% Annual Exceedance Probability (AEP) rainfall event, which includes the effects of climate change; an approach that is consistent with best practice..</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy 6.1.2.</p>
7.1 Development in natural hazard-prone areas		
Policy 7.1.1 General risk management approach	<p>Subdivision, use and development of land will be managed to minimise the risks from natural hazards by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Seeking to use the best available information, including formal risk management techniques in areas potentially affected by natural hazards; (b) Minimising any increase in vulnerability due to residual risk; (c) Aligning with emergency management approaches (especially risk reduction); (d) Ensuring that natural hazard risk to vehicular access routes and building platforms for proposed new lots is considered when assessing subdivision proposals; and (e) Exercising a degree of caution that reflects the level of uncertainty as to the likelihood or consequences of a natural hazard event. 	<p>The Project will be managed to minimise the risks from natural hazards by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Implementing mitigation measures to reduce the potential flood risks outside the Proposed Designation boundary. ▪ Ensuring the effectiveness of existing natural and man-made defences against natural hazards are not compromised. ▪ Adopting an observation-based design to manage geotechnical risk, including land instability. Remote mapping and terrain instability assessments are being carried out to inform this design, which will allow for ongoing refinement of design during construction to continue managing risk. Observation-based design is best practice for managing uncertainty and ensuring safe, efficient construction in complex terrain. Where avoidance of land instability is not feasible, stabilisation measures may be required, incorporating monitoring and mitigation strategies to manage long-term risks. <p>Based on this, the Project is consistent with Policy 7.1.1.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
<p>Policy 7.1.2 New subdivision and land use within 10-year and 100 year flood hazard areas</p>	<p>New subdivision, built development (including wastewater treatment and disposal systems), and land use change may be appropriate within 10-year and 100-year flood hazard areas provided all of the following are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Hazardous substances will not be inundated during a 100-year flood event. (b) Earthworks (other than earthworks associated with flood control works) do not divert flood flow onto neighbouring properties, and within 10-year flood hazard areas do not deplete flood plain storage capacity; (c) A minimum freeboard above a 100-year flood event of at least 500mm is provided for residential buildings. (d) Commercial and industrial buildings are constructed so as to not be subject to material damage in a 100 year flood event. (e) New subdivision plans are able to identify that building platforms will not be subject to inundation and / or material damage (including erosion) in a 100-year flood event; (f) Within 10-year flood hazard areas, land use or built development is of a type that will not be subject to material damage in a 100-year flood event; and (g) Flood hazard risk to vehicular access routes for proposed new lots is assessed. 	<p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) provides an assessment of predicted flooding effects of the Project when compared to the existing flood condition. This report concludes that with proposed mitigation potential adverse operational flooding effects can be appropriately managed.</p> <p>Given the scale and regional significance of the Project, it is considered appropriate to be located within the flood hazard areas given the approach to manage adverse effects outside the Proposed Designation as outlined in further detail in Policy 7.1.5 below. As such, the Project is consistent with Policy 7.1.2.</p>
<p>Policy 7.1.5 Regionally significant infrastructure and critical infrastructure</p>	<p>New regionally significant infrastructure and critical infrastructure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Must be designed to maintain, as far as practicable, its integrity and function during natural hazard events; and (2) May be considered appropriate to locate within flood and coastal hazard areas, even if it cannot meet policies 7.1.2 or 7.1.3 provided: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) There is a need to be located within the flood hazard and / or coastal hazard area; and (b) infrastructure providers have demonstrated that the proposed location within the hazard area is the most appropriate (taking into account social, cultural, and economic costs and benefits) to service the needs of the community; and (c) An engineer's assessment identifies the potential for the infrastructure to exacerbate flood and erosion hazard risk on neighbouring properties, and where the assessment shows that risk will be exacerbated; the assessment must outline ways this risk can be minimised. 	<p>The Project is considered regionally significant infrastructure and will be designed to maintain, as far as practicable, its integrity and function during natural hazard events.</p> <p>More specifically, the Project will be designed and constructed to be resilient to the effects of flooding. The Project will also adopt an observation-based design to manage geotechnical risk, including land instability. Such risks will be actively managed as design progresses, with early identification, targeted investigation and integration of mitigation strategies into the design and construction planning.</p> <p>The Project has an operational and functional need to operate in, be located in and traverse particular locations and environments, including flood hazard areas and areas of land instability.</p> <p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B), prepared by an engineer, assesses the predicted flooding effects on properties outside the Proposed Designation, and provides mitigation measures to avoid these effects. As outlined above in Objective 3.13 above the alternatives assessment for the Project (refer to Section C5.2 of Volume B) included Stormwater and Hydrology/ Hydrogeology as a criterion for the corridor selection process which encompassed potential flooding and extent of effects on adverse hydrology / hydrogeology including steep slopes.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy 7.1.5.</p>
<p>Policy 7.1.6 Climate change and development</p>	<p>When managing subdivision, use and development in Northland, climate change effects will be included in all estimates of natural hazard risk, taking into account the scale and type of the proposed development and using the latest national guidance and best</p>	<p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) is based on the 1% Annual Exceedance Probability (AEP) rainfall event, including the effect of climate change ensuring appropriate consideration during development of mitigation measures, encompassing best practice.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	available information on the likely effects of climate change on the region or district.	Climate change effects relating to geotechnical risk will be addressed through the observation-based design approach and implemented via detailed design into structural measures applied to steep batters and fill slopes, particularly in the Brynderwyn Hills escarpment and approach sections of the Project. The Project seeks to support adaptation and resilience to climate change, by providing a more resilient and fit for purpose SH1. Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy 7.1.6.
7.2 General risk reduction policies		
Policy 7.2.1 Role of natural features	Recognise and protect, restore or enhance natural systems and features that contribute to reducing the impacts of natural hazard events on the built environment.	The existing natural systems and features that buffer or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards are protected as far as practicable, such as wetlands. Offsets to wetlands will not apply to almost all wetlands impacted by the Indicative Alignment. However, where wetlands 8, 16 and 24 cannot be avoided, an offset will be applied to ensure that a new wetland area is established. This will ensure that their function as natural defences will be replaced to their pre-existing extent. Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy 7.2.1
8.2 Iwi and hapū management plans		
Policy 8.2.1	The regional council will recognise the value of iwi and hapū management plans in decision-making under the Resource Management Act 1991 and the need to support tangata whenua in the development and implementation of these plans	The Project has been assessed against the relevant iwi and hapū management plans in Section C3 of Volume B in recognition of the value of these plans in decision making in accordance with Policy 8.2.1.

2.2. Regional Plan for Northland 2026 (RPN)

Table 7: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the RPN.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
D.1 Tāngata whenua		
Objective F.1.9 Tāngata whenua role in decision-making	Tāngata whenua's kaitiaki role is recognised and provided for in decision making over natural and physical resources.	Hapū, including Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau have been working together with NZTA in the early stages of the Project in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs. Therefore, the Project has recognised and provided for the kaitiaki role of hapū in decision making and is consistent with Objective F.1.9.
Policy D.1.1 When an analysis of effects on tāngata whenua and their taonga is required	A resource consent application must include in its assessment of environmental effects an analysis of the effects of an activity on tāngata whenua and their taonga if one or more of the following is likely: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) adverse effects on mahinga kai or access to mahinga kai, or 2) any damage, destruction or loss of access to wāhi tapu, sites of customary value and other ancestral sites and taonga with which Māori have a special relationship, or 3) adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity in the beds of waterbodies or the coastal marine area where it impacts on the ability of tāngata whenua to carry out cultural and traditional activities, or 	Hapū, including Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau have been working together with NZTA in the early stages of the Project in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs which has included the consideration of taonga in relation to the matters listed in (2) and (3). The adverse effects listed in Policy D.1.1(1), (4), (5), (6) and (7) are not relevant to the Project.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	4) the use of genetic engineering and the release of genetically modified organisms to the environment, or 5) adverse effects on taiāpure, mataitai or Māori non-commercial fisheries or 6) adverse effects on protected customary rights, or 7) adverse effects on Sites and Areas of Significance to Tāngata Whenua mapped in the Regional Plan (refer I Maps Ngā mahere matawhenua).	Therefore, the potential effects of the Project on tāngata whenua and their taonga have been considered as far as practical to date. NZTA will continue to work with hapū in relation to these matters. Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy D1.1.
Policy D.1.2 Requirements of an analysis of effects on tāngata whenua and their taonga	If an analysis of the effects of an activity on tāngata whenua and their taonga is required in a resource consent application, the analysis must: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) include such detail as corresponds with the scale and significance of the effects that the activity may have on tāngata whenua and their taonga, and 2) have regard to (but not be limited to): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) any relevant planning document recognised by an iwi authority (lodged with the Council) to the extent that its content has a bearing on the resource management issues of the region, and b) the outcomes of any consultation with tāngata whenua with respect to the consent application, and c) statutory acknowledgements in treaty settlement legislation, and 3) follow best practice, including requesting, in the first instance, that the relevant tāngata whenua undertake the assessment, and 4) specify the tāngata whenua that the assessment relates to, and 5) be evidence-based, and 6) incorporate, where appropriate, Mātauranga Māori, and 7) identify and describe all the cultural resources and activities that may be affected by the activity, and 8) identify and describe the adverse effects of the activity on the cultural resources and cultural practices (including the effects on the mauri of the cultural resources, the cultural practices affected, how they are affected, and the extent of the effects), and 9) identify, where possible, how to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects on cultural values of the activity that are more than minor, and 10) include any other relevant information. 	Hapū was involved in the alternatives assessment process in which they provided assessment of cultural values during the optioneering process, including looking at: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ the physical encroachment into known sites of cultural value/significance (e.g. (e.g. pā sites, urupā, maunga or waterways); and ▪ direct impact on Māori land. Therefore, the potential effects of the Project on tāngata whenua and their taonga have been considered as far as practicable to date; and the Project is partially consistent with Policy D.1.2. NZTA will continue to work with hapū in relation to these matters.
Policy D.1.4 Managing effects on places of significance to tāngata whenua	Resource consent for an activity may generally only be granted if the adverse effects from the activity on the values of places of significance to tāngata whenua in the coastal marine area and water bodies are avoided, remedied or mitigated so they are no more than minor.	Hapū, including Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau are project partners with NZTA, and have been working together in the early phases of Project design. This includes looking at the values of places of significance to tāngata whenua in water bodies. NZTA will continue to work with hapū in relation to these matters. Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy D.1.4.
D.2 General		
Objective F.1.5 Enabling economic well-being	The use and development of Northland's natural and physical resources is efficient and effective and managed in a way that will improve the economic, social and cultural well-being of Northland and its communities.	The Project will improve the economic, social and cultural wellbeing of Northland and its communities as outlined further in Section C5 of Volume A and in the assessment of the Objective and Policy 1 of the NPS-I above. Taking the above into consideration, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.5.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Objective F.1.6 Regionally Significant Infrastructure	Recognise the national, regional and local benefits of Regionally Significant Infrastructure and renewable energy generation and enable their effective development, operation, maintenance, repair, upgrading and removal.	<p>The Project is Regionally Significant Infrastructure that will bring national, regional and local benefits by ensuring a resilient, reliable, safe and efficient transport connection between Northland and the rest of New Zealand. The Project will provide economic, social and cultural benefits as outlined further in Section C5 of Volume A and in the assessment of the Objective and Policy 1 of the NPS-I above.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will bring national, regional and local benefits, and is consistent with Objective F.1.6.</p>
Objective F.1.12 Natural Character, Outstanding Natural Features, Historic Heritage and places of significance to tāngata whenua	<p>Protect from inappropriate use and development:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the characteristics, qualities and values that make up: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) Outstanding Natural Features in the coastal marine area and in freshwater bodies, and b) Areas of Outstanding and High Natural Character in the coastal marine area and in freshwater bodies within the coastal environment, and c) Natural Character in freshwater bodies outside the coastal environment, and d) Outstanding Natural Landscapes in the coastal marine area, and 2) the integrity of Historic Heritage in the coastal marine area, and 3) the values of places of significance to tāngata whenua in the coastal marine area and freshwater bodies. 	<p>The Project is not located within:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Outstanding Natural Features in the coastal marine area and in freshwater bodies, or ▪ Areas of Outstanding and High Natural Character in the coastal marine area and in freshwater bodies within the coastal environment, or ▪ Outstanding Natural Landscapes in the coastal marine area; or ▪ Historic Heritage in the coastal marine area. <p>NZTA have been working with Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau since the early stages of the Project. To date, this has involved their participation in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and the requested preparation of CIA's (helping to identify sites and issues of cultural significant and ways to address these matters as part of the Project). NZTA intend to continue working with these hapū throughout consenting and delivery of the Project. The values of places of significance to tāngata whenua in freshwater bodies will be further defined in the CIA. . NZTA will continue to work with hapū on these matters.</p> <p>Mitigation measures are proposed to address adverse effects of the Project on the characteristics, qualities and values that form the natural character of freshwater and its margins, such as the preparation of a LDP and LCP as part of an Outline Plan of Works.</p> <p>The Project is not inappropriate use and development as it has a functional and operational need to be located within these areas, as discussed in Section C5.2 of Volume B.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.12.</p>
Policy D.2.2 Social, cultural and economic benefits of activities	Regard must be had to the social, cultural and economic benefits of a proposed activity, recognising significant benefits to local communities, Māori and the region including local employment and enhancing Māori development, particularly in areas of Northland where alternative opportunities are limited.	<p>The Project will bring a wide range of benefits, as discussed in Section C5 of Volume A, and in the assessment of the Objective and Policy 1 of the NPS-I above.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.2.2.</p>
Policy D.2.3 Climate change	Particular regard must be had to the potential effects of climate change on a proposed development requiring consent under this Plan, taking into account the	The Project has had regard to the potential effects of climate change as outlined in the assessment of the Objective and Policy 1

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
and development	scale, type and design-life of the development proposed and with reference to the latest national guidance and best available climate change projections.	<p>of the NPS-I above and its design has taken into account the rainfall climate change projections.</p> <p>The Project supports climate change adaptation by reducing the risk of road closure arising from natural hazard, ensuring it is resilient and fit for purpose into the future.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.2.3.</p>
Policy D.2.5 Benefits of Regionally Significant Infrastructure	Particular regard must be had to the national, regional and locally significant social, economic, and cultural benefits of Regionally Significant Infrastructure	The Project is Regionally Significant Infrastructure that will bring national, regional and local benefits by ensuring a resilient, reliable, safe and efficient transport connection between Northland and the rest of New Zealand. The benefits of the Project are discussed in detail in Section C5 of Volume A and in the assessment of the Objective and Policy 1 of the NPS-I above. Overall, the Project will bring national, regional and local benefits, and is consistent with Policy D.2.5.
Policy D.2.7 Minor adverse effects arising from the establishment and operation of Regionally Significant Infrastructure	<p>Enable the establishment and operation (including consenting) of Regionally Significant Infrastructure by allowing any minor adverse effects providing:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The Regionally Significant Infrastructure proposal is consistent with: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) all policies in D.1 Tāngata whenua, and b) D.2.16 Managing adverse effects on Historic Heritage, and c) D.2.17 Managing adverse effects on Natural Character, Outstanding Natural Landscapes and Outstanding Natural Features, and d) D.2.18 Managing adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity, and 2) the Regionally Significant Infrastructure proposal will not likely result in over-allocation having regard to the allocation limits in H.4.3 Allocation limits for rivers, and 3) other adverse effects arising from the Regionally Significant Infrastructure are avoided, remedied, mitigated or offset to the extent they are no more than minor. 	<p>The Project involves the establishment and operation of Regionally Significant Infrastructure that is consistent or partially consistent with the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ partially consistent with the relevant policies in D.1 Tāngata whenua. ▪ consistent with D.2.16 Managing adverse effects on Historic Heritage. ▪ consistent with D.2.17 Managing adverse effects on Natural Character, Outstanding Natural Landscapes and Outstanding Natural Features. ▪ consistent with D.2.18 Managing adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity. <p>Further, other adverse effects arising from the Project, such as noise and vibration, ecology and flooding are avoided as far as practicable, and where they cannot be avoided, are remedied, mitigated or offset.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy D.2.7.</p>
Policy D.2.9 Appropriateness of Regionally Significant Infrastructure proposals (except the National Grid)	<p>When considering the appropriateness of a Regionally Significant Infrastructure activity (except the National Grid), have regard and give appropriate weight to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the benefits of the activity in terms of D.2.5 Benefits of Regionally Significant Infrastructure, and 2) whether the activity must be recognised and provided for by a National Policy Statement, and 3) any demonstrated functional need for the activity, and 4) the extent to which any adverse environmental effects have been avoided, remedied or mitigated by route, site or method selection, and 5) any operational, technical or location constraints that limit the design and location of the activity, including any alternatives that have been considered which have proven to be impractical, or have greater adverse effects, and 	<p>As discussed above in the Objective and Policy 1 of the NPS-I and in Section C5 of Volume A, the Project will bring national, regional and local benefits, consistent with Policy D.2.5.</p> <p>The functional and operational need for the Project is discussed in the alternatives assessment in Section C5.2 of Volume B. The alternatives assessment that has been undertaken to identify the preferred option has also avoided or otherwise mitigated adverse environmental effects as discussed in Section C5.2 of Volume B.</p> <p>The Project is Regionally Significant Infrastructure included in Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act as a lifeline utility.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6) whether the activity is for Regionally Significant Infrastructure which is included in Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act as a lifeline utility and meets the reasonably foreseeable needs of Northland, and 7) the extent to which the adverse effects of the activity can be practicably managed, inclusive of any positive effects and environmental offsets or compensation proposed, and 8) whether an adaptive management regime (including modification to the consented activity) can be used to manage any uncertainty around the occurrence of residual adverse effects, and 9) whether the activity helps to achieve consolidated development and the efficient use of land and resources, including within the coastal marine area. 	<p>Based on this, the Project is considered appropriate and is consistent with Policy D.2.9.</p>
<p>Policy D.2.11 Protection of Regionally Significant Infrastructure</p>	<p>When considering new use and development activities that could adversely affect the ongoing operation, maintenance, upgrade or development of Regionally Significant Infrastructure; ensure that the Regionally Significant Infrastructure is not compromised.</p>	<p>As discussed in the assessment of the Project against the NPS-EN above, the Project will not compromise RSI inclusive of the electricity network, nor First Gas infrastructure. Any requirement to impact directly on the National Grid or other regionally significant infrastructure such as First Gas infrastructure as a result of the Project works will be managed through the pre-existing relationship agreements between NZTA and various infrastructure providers.</p> <p>For this reason, the Project is considered to be consistent with Policy D.2.11.</p>
<p>Policy D.2.16 Managing adverse effects on Historic Heritage</p>	<p>Manage the adverse effects of activities on Historic Heritage by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) avoiding significant adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to Historic Heritage, and 2) recognising that Historic Heritage Sites and Historic Heritage Areas in the coastal marine area identified in I Maps Ngā mahere matawhenua have been identified in accordance with the criteria outlined in Policy 4.5.3 of the Regional Policy Statement for Northland, and 3) recognising the following as being significant adverse effects to be avoided: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the destruction of the physical elements of Historic Heritage, and b) relocation of the physical elements of Historic Heritage, and c) alterations and additions to the form and appearance of the physical elements of Historic Heritage, and d) loss of context to the surroundings of Historic Heritage, taking into account the scale of any proposal, and 4) recognising that despite (2), there are not likely to be significant adverse effects if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the Historic Heritage has already been irreparably damaged as assessed by a suitably qualified and experienced heritage professional and there are significant health and safety or navigational safety risks if it were to remain, or b) alterations, additions, repair or maintenance will not result in the loss, or significant degradation of, any values contributing to it being Historic Heritage in accordance with Policy 4.5.3 of the Regional Policy Statement, or c) the context of the Historic Heritage in its present location has already been lost and any damage to the Historic Heritage during relocation can be avoided, and 5) determining the likely adverse effects of proposals by taking into account: 	<p>The Project has been designed to avoid pā sites located within the Proposed Designation and therefore any adverse effects on these significant archaeological sites including the characteristics, qualities and values of these identified significant sites. .</p> <p>Archaeological Authorities are being applied for to modify or destroy other archaeological sites impacted by the Proposed Designation (Appendix D5 of Volume B). Archaeological investigation and recording of any historical information or finds will be undertaken in relation to these sites prior to modification by construction activities. An Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (Appendix B, Volume D) has been undertaken to accompany and inform the Archaeological Authority Application's.</p> <p>Hapū will be involved in authorities and any accidental discoveries for the duration of the Project. Hapū will be involved in works subject to archaeological authorities and any handling of accidental discoveries for the duration of the Project.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.2.16.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the Historic Heritage values of the Historic Heritage Sites or Historic Heritage Areas as described in the assessment reports available on the Regional Council's website, and b) the outcomes of any consultation with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga (particularly where an item is listed by Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and/or is an archaeological site requiring an 'authority to modify'), the Department of Conservation or any other appropriate body with statutory heritage protection functions, and ii. tāngata whenua in instances where Historic Heritage has identified values of significance to tāngata whenua, and c) where considered necessary, a Historic Heritage impact assessment produced by a suitably qualified and experienced heritage professional, and d) any values identified in addition to those listed in Policy 4.5.3 of the Regional Policy Statement for Northland 2016 including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. vulnerability (the resource is vulnerable to deterioration or destruction or is threatened by land use activities), and ii. patterns (the resource is associated with important aspects, processes, themes or patterns of local, regional or national history), and iii. public esteem (the resource is held in high public esteem for its heritage or aesthetic values or as a focus of spiritual, political, national or other social or cultural sentiment), and iv. commemorative (the resource has symbolic or commemorative significance to past or present users or their descendants, resulting from its special interest, character, landmark, amenity or visual appeal), and v. education (the resource contributes, through public education, to people's awareness, understanding and appreciation of New Zealand's history and cultures), and 6) recognising that appropriate methods of avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects may include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) careful design, scale and location proposed in relation to Historic Heritage values, including proposed use and development adjacent to Historic Heritage, and b) the use of setback, buffers and screening from Historic Heritage, and c) reversing previous damage or disturbance to Historic Heritage, and d) improving the public use, value, or understanding of the Historic Heritage, and e) the development of management and conservation plans, and f) gathering and recording information on Historic Heritage by a suitably qualified and experienced heritage professional, and g) implementing the stabilisation, preservation and conservation principles of the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) New Zealand Charter Revised 2010, and 7) determining if an archaeological advice note or Accidental Discovery Protocol advice note should be included if there is a possibility of unrecorded archaeology being encountered or the proposal will or may affect recorded archaeological sites. An advice note will outline that work affecting archaeological sites is subject to an authority process under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, and 8) recognising that for the purposes of Section 95E of the RMA, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 	

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment												
	<p>2014 is an affected person in relation to resource consent applications under the RMA affecting:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) any listed items in this Plan, also listed under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, and b) are pre-1900 recorded and unrecorded archaeological sites. 													
<p>Policy D.2.17 Managing adverse effects on Natural Character, Outstanding Natural Landscapes and Outstanding Natural Features</p>	<p>Manage the adverse effects of activities on Natural Character, Outstanding Natural Landscapes and Outstanding Natural Features by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) avoiding adverse effects of activities as outlined in Table 17: Adverse effects to be avoided. <i>Table 17: Adverse effects to be avoided</i> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Place / value</th> <th>Location of the place</th> <th>Effects to be avoided</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Areas of Outstanding Natural Character Outstanding Natural Features Outstanding Natural Landscapes</td> <td>Coastal marine area and freshwater bodies in the coastal environment.</td> <td>Adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to make the place outstanding.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Natural Character (incl. High Natural Character) Other Natural Features and Landscapes</td> <td>The coastal marine area and freshwater bodies in the coastal environment.</td> <td>Significant adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to Natural Character or other natural features and landscapes.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Natural Character Outstanding Natural Features Outstanding Natural Landscapes</td> <td>Freshwater bodies outside the coastal environment.</td> <td>Significant adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to Natural Character or which make the Natural Character or landscape outstanding.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2) recognising that, in relation to Natural Character in water bodies and the coastal environment (where not identified as Outstanding Natural Character), appropriate methods of avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects may include: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) ensuring the location, intensity, scale and form of activities is appropriate having regard to natural elements and processes, and b) in areas of High Natural Character in the coastal environment, minimising to the extent practicable indigenous vegetation clearance and modification (seabed and foreshore disturbance, structures, discharges of contaminants), and c) in freshwater, minimising to the extent practicable modification (disturbance, structures, extraction of water and discharge of contaminants), and 3) recognising that, in relation to Outstanding Natural Features in water bodies outside the coastal environment, appropriate methods of avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects may include: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) requiring that the scale and intensity of bed disturbance and modification is appropriate, taking into account the feature's scale, form and vulnerability to modification of the feature, and b) requiring that proposals to extract water or discharge contaminants do not significantly adversely affect the characteristics, qualities and values of the Outstanding Natural Feature, and 4) recognising that uses and development form part of existing landscapes, features and water bodies and have existing effects. 	Place / value	Location of the place	Effects to be avoided	Areas of Outstanding Natural Character Outstanding Natural Features Outstanding Natural Landscapes	Coastal marine area and freshwater bodies in the coastal environment.	Adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to make the place outstanding.	Natural Character (incl. High Natural Character) Other Natural Features and Landscapes	The coastal marine area and freshwater bodies in the coastal environment.	Significant adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to Natural Character or other natural features and landscapes.	Natural Character Outstanding Natural Features Outstanding Natural Landscapes	Freshwater bodies outside the coastal environment.	Significant adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to Natural Character or which make the Natural Character or landscape outstanding.	<p>The Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) describes the pre-existing landscape and visual amenity values within the Proposed Designation area and includes details on how the Project will manage any adverse effects on the landscapes that the Project traverses.</p> <p>The Project affects one outstanding natural landscape mapped in the RPN in the Brynderwyn Hills.</p> <p>This Project will have unavoidable adverse landscape, visual and natural character effects. However, a LCPs will be prepared, outlining revegetation of cut and fill batters in specific areas within the Proposed Designation to manage adverse landscape effects. Overall, the Project will ensure that adverse effects on outstanding natural landscapes are well managed. Landscape and natural character mitigation measures such as retention of Kahikatea at the entrance to Waipu, and design of stream realignment and vegetation of summit and spoil sites where possible to soften impact on the ONL have been proposed to manage adverse effects, commensurate with specified infrastructure.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.2.17.</p>
Place / value	Location of the place	Effects to be avoided												
Areas of Outstanding Natural Character Outstanding Natural Features Outstanding Natural Landscapes	Coastal marine area and freshwater bodies in the coastal environment.	Adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to make the place outstanding.												
Natural Character (incl. High Natural Character) Other Natural Features and Landscapes	The coastal marine area and freshwater bodies in the coastal environment.	Significant adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to Natural Character or other natural features and landscapes.												
Natural Character Outstanding Natural Features Outstanding Natural Landscapes	Freshwater bodies outside the coastal environment.	Significant adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values that contribute to Natural Character or which make the Natural Character or landscape outstanding.												
<p>Policy D.2.18 Managing</p>	<p>Manage the adverse effects of activities on indigenous biodiversity by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) in the coastal environment: ... 	<p>The Project will be entirely outside of the coastal environment so (1) is not relevant.</p>												

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity	<p>2) outside the coastal environment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects so they are no more than minor on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. indigenous taxa that are listed as threatened or at risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists, and ii. areas of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna, that are significant using the assessment criteria in Appendix 5 of the Regional Policy Statement, and iii. areas set aside for full or partial protection of indigenous biodiversity under other legislation, and b) avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects so they are not significant on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation, and ii. habitats of indigenous species that are important for recreational, commercial, traditional or cultural purposes, and iii. indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are particularly vulnerable to modification, including wetlands, wet heathlands, headwater streams, spawning and nursery areas, and <p>3) recognising areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Significant Ecological Areas, and b) Significant Bird Areas, and c) Significant Marine Mammal and Seabird Areas, and <p>4) recognising damage, disturbance or loss to the following as being potential adverse effects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) connections between areas of indigenous biodiversity, and b) the life supporting capacity of the area of indigenous biodiversity, and c) flora and fauna that are supported by the area of indigenous biodiversity, and d) natural processes or systems that contribute to the area of indigenous biodiversity, and <p>5) assessing the potential adverse effects of the activity on identified values of indigenous biodiversity, including by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) taking a system-wide approach to large areas of indigenous biodiversity such as whole estuaries or widespread bird and marine mammal habitats, recognising that the scale of the effect of an activity is proportional to the size and sensitivity of the area of indigenous biodiversity, and b) recognising that existing activities may be having existing acceptable effects, and c) recognising that minor or transitory effects may not be an adverse effect, and d) recognising that where effects may be irreversible, then they are likely to be more than minor, and e) recognising that there may be more than minor cumulative effects from minor or transitory effects, and <p>6) recognising that appropriate methods of avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) careful design, scale and location proposed in relation to areas of indigenous biodiversity, and b) maintaining and enhancing connections within and between areas of indigenous biodiversity, and 	<p>Outside the coastal environment, avoidance or mitigation of adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity are outlined in relation to the loss of Very High or High vegetation types, impacts on natural inland wetlands with quality ecological habitat, stream realignments, habitats of indigenous fauna to be enhanced in recommended mitigation sites and management of protected species through Wildlife Act Authority and with mitigation and habitat protection as outlined in the assessment of the NPS-IB Objective in Table 1.4 (2).</p> <p>Significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna have been recognized and assessed throughout the assessment of the Project against the NPS-IB in Table 1.4 including Policy 7, which assesses indigenous biodiversity within SNAs; Policy 8 which assess indigenous biodiversity outside of SNAs and Policy 15 which assess highly mobile fauna and their habitats (3).</p> <p>The potential adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity, including the identified values of indigenous biodiversity, and appropriate methods of avoiding remedying or mitigating adverse effects have been assessed in detail by the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B), which is summarized in Section D7.1 of Volume B (4, 5, 6).</p> <p>Offsetting is recommended for residual adverse effects on wetlands, as assessed in relation to wetlands in Table 1.2 regarding the NPS-FM Policy 6, with the highest ecological value impacted by the Indicative Alignment) and to replace habitat to satisfy the avian offset requirements (7).</p> <p>Assessment of the Project in Table 1.4 (NPS-IB) discusses the improved information, monitoring and mitigation the Project will provide on indigenous biodiversity in the Brynderwyn Hills area (8).</p> <p>The Project will ensure that the adverse effects of the Project on indigenous biodiversity are well-managed.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.2.18.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c) considering the minimisation of effects during sensitive times such as indigenous freshwater fish spawning and migration periods, and d) providing adequate setbacks, screening or buffers where there is the likelihood of damage and disturbance to areas of indigenous biodiversity from adjacent use and development, and e) maintaining the continuity of natural processes and systems contributing to the integrity of ecological areas, and f) the development of ecological management and restoration plans, and 7) recognising that significant residual adverse effects on biodiversity values can be offset or compensated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) in accordance with the <i>Regional Policy Statement for Northland Policy 4.4.1</i>, and b) after consideration of the methods in (6) above, and 8) recognising the benefits of activities on biodiversity values that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) restore, protect or enhance ecosystems, habitats and processes, ecological corridors and indigenous biodiversity, and b) improve the public use, value or understanding of ecosystems, habitats and indigenous biodiversity. 	
D.3 Air		
Objective F.1.13 Air quality	Human health, ambient air quality, cultural values, amenity values and the environment are protected from significant adverse effects caused by the discharge of contaminants to air.	<p>The Project will prepare a Dust Management Plan (DMP) to ensure that discharges of contaminants to air do not cause significant adverse effects on human health, ambient air quality, cultural values, amenity values and the environment.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.13.</p>
Policy D.3.1 General approach to managing air quality	<p>When considering resource consent applications for discharges to air:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) ensure that discharges of contaminants to air do not occur in a manner that causes, or is likely to cause, a hazardous, noxious, dangerous or toxic effect on human or animal health or ecosystems, and 2) apply the best practicable option when managing the discharge of contaminants listed in the National Environmental Standards Air Quality, and 3) H.1 Stack height requirements when assessing height requirements for fuel burning devices of more than 40 kilowatts capacity, and 4) consider the use of air dispersion modelling where the effects of a discharge are likely to be significant on sensitive areas, and 5) take into account the Ambient Air Quality Guidelines (Ministry for the Environment, 2002) when assessing the effects of the discharge on ambient air quality, and 6) take into account the cumulative effects of air discharges and any constraints that may occur from the granting of the consent on the operation of existing activities, and 7) recognise that discharges to air may have adverse effects across the property boundary (including reverse sensitivity effects) and adverse effects on Natural Character, and 8) take into account the current environment and surrounding zoning in the relevant district plan including existing amenity values, and 9) consider the following factors when determining consent duration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) scale of the discharge including effects, and 	<p>The Project will prepare a DMP to ensure that discharges of contaminants to air do not occur in a manner that causes, or is likely to cause, a hazardous, noxious, dangerous or toxic effect on human or animal health or ecosystems as outlined in further detail in Sections C.6.3. and D13. of Volume B.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will be consistent with Policy D.3.1.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b) regional and local benefits arising from the discharge, and c) location of the discharge including its proximity to sensitive areas, and d) alternatives available, and <p>10) use national guidance produced by the Ministry for the Environment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the Good Practice Guide for Assessing and Managing Odour (Ministry of the Environment, 2016), and b) the Good Practice Guide for Assessing and Managing Dust (Ministry of the Environment, 2016), and c) the Good Practice Guide for Assessing Discharges to Air from Industry (Ministry for the Environment, 2016), or d) any subsequent update or revision of these national guidance documents, and <p>11) generally enable discharges of contaminants to air from industrial and trade premises provided the best practicable option for preventing or minimising the adverse effects of the discharge is adopted and significant adverse effects on human health, amenity values and ecosystems are avoided.</p>	
<p>Policy D.3.2 General approach to managing adverse effects of discharges to air</p>	<p>Adverse effects from the discharge of contaminants to air are managed by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating cross-boundary effects on dust, odour, smoke and spray-sensitive areas from discharges of dust, smoke, agricultural spray drift and odour; and 2) protecting dust, odour, smoke and spray-sensitive areas from exposure to dangerous or noxious levels of gases or airborne contaminants; and 3) recognising that land use change can result in reverse sensitivity effects on existing discharges to air, but existing discharges should be allowed to continue where appropriate. 	<p>The Project will ensure that adverse effects from the discharge of contaminants to air are managed through the preparation and implementation of a DMP, which will manage dust throughout all stages of the Project's construction activities.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.3.2.</p>
<p>Policy D.3.4 Dust and odour generating activities</p>	<p>When considering resource consent applications for discharges to air from dust or odour generating activities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) require a dust or odour management plan to be produced where there is a likelihood that there will be objectionable or offensive discharges of dust or odour at the boundary of the site where the activity is to take place, or where the activity is likely to cause a breach of the ambient air quality standard for PM10 in <i>Schedule 1 of the National Environmental Standard for Air Quality</i>. The dust or odour management plan must include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) a description of dust or odour generating activities, and b) potentially affected dust-sensitive areas or odour-sensitive areas, and c) details of good management practices that will be used to control dust or odour to the extent that adverse effects from dust or odour at the boundary of the site are avoided, remedied or mitigated, and 2) take into account any proposed use of low dust generating blasting mediums when assessing the effects of fixed or mobile outdoor dry abrasive blasting or wet abrasive blasting. <p>Note: <i>This policy does not apply to odour associated with the controlled discharge of gas containing an odorant (such as mercaptan) from pipelines and ancillary equipment.</i></p>	<p>A consent condition is proposed, requiring a DMP to be provided to manage dust throughout all stages of the Project's construction activities.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.3.4.</p>
<p>D.4 Land and water</p>		

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Objective F.1.1 Freshwater quantity	<p>Manage the taking, use, damming and diversion of freshwater so that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the life-supporting capacity, ecosystem processes and indigenous species including their associated ecosystems of freshwater are safeguarded and the health of freshwater ecosystems is maintained, and 2) the significant values, including hydrological variation in Outstanding Freshwater Bodies and natural wetlands are protected, and 3) the extent of littoral zones in lakes are maintained, and 4) rivers have sufficient flows and flow variability to maintain habitat quality, including to flush rivers of deposited sediment and nuisance algae and macrophytes and support the natural movement of indigenous fish and valued introduced species such as trout, and 5) flows and water levels support sustainable mahinga kai, recreational, amenity and other social and cultural values associated with freshwater bodies, and 6) adverse effects associated with saline intrusion and land subsidence above are avoided (except where the taking, use, damming or diversion is for groundwater management at the Marsden Point refinery, in which case this condition does not apply), and 7) it is a reliable resource for consumptive and non-consumptive uses. 	<p>The Project will require damming and diversion of freshwater. However, these will be managed appropriately to ensure that the life-supporting capacity, ecosystem processes and indigenous species including their associated ecosystems of freshwater are safeguarded and the health of freshwater ecosystems is maintained.</p> <p>A future resource consent will be applied for groundwater take for dust suppression, following detailed design and identification of suitable water take locations, as noted in the Assessment of Effects on Groundwater (Appendix D12 of Volume B).</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.1.</p>
Objective F.1.2 Water quality	<p>Manage the use of land and discharges of contaminants to land and water so that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Existing water quality is at least maintained, and improved where it has been degraded below the river, lake or coastal water quality standards set out in H.3 Water quality standards and guidelines, and 2) the sedimentation of continually or intermittently flowing rivers, lakes and coastal water is minimised, and 3) the life-supporting capacity, ecosystem processes and indigenous species, including their associated ecosystems, of fresh and coastal water are safeguarded, and the health of freshwater ecosystems is maintained, and 4) the health of people and communities, as affected by contact with fresh and coastal water, is safeguarded, and 5) the health and safety of people and communities, as affected by discharges of sewage from vessels, is safeguarded, and 6) the quality of potable drinking water sources, including aquifers used for potable supplies, is protected, and 7) the significant values of Outstanding Freshwater Bodies and natural wetlands are protected, and 8) kai is safe to harvest and eat, and recreational, amenity and other social and cultural values are provided for. 	<p>The Construction Water Assessment (Appendix D10 of Volume B) has assessed the potential changes to water quality during the construction phase of the Project as being related to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ the discharge of sediment from earthworks during both rain and flood events. ▪ the discharge of sediment from in-stream activities and changes to flow. ▪ discharges of other contaminants. <p>Mitigation measures include structural and non-structural controls; preparation of a CESCOP and site specific CESCOP; progressive stabilisation and controls on winter works; and a continuous improvement monitoring programme to assess the effectiveness of erosion and sediment controls to ensure that sedimentation of continually or intermittently flowing rivers is minimised.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.2.</p>
Objective F.1.3 Indigenous ecosystems and biodiversity	<p>In the coastal marine area and in freshwater bodies, safeguard ecological integrity by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) protecting areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, and 2) maintaining regional indigenous biodiversity, and 3) where practicable, enhancing and restoring indigenous ecosystems and habitats to a healthy functioning state, and reducing the overall threat status of regionally and nationally threatened or at risk species, and 4) preventing the introduction of new marine or freshwater pests into Northland and slowing the spread of established marine or freshwater pests within the region. 	<p>The Project will protect areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna in freshwater bodies as far as practicable to safeguard ecological integrity. Where instream habitats are affected by the placement of instream structures the requirement to include substrate material, rocks and baffles will provide an acceptable remedy and replacement habitat for aquatic fauna.</p> <p>Offset works within the mitigation areas will be subject to pest plant and fauna eradication. In a similar manner, where pest fish are caught during salvage in preparation for stream reclamation and</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<p>placement of instream structures, these will be humanely euthanised.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.3.</p>
<p>Objective F.1.4 Fish passage</p>	<p>The passage of fish is maintained, or is improved, by instream structures, except where it is desirable to prevent the passage of some fish species in order to protect desired fish species, their life stages, or their habitats.</p>	<p>Where deemed necessary and appropriate following NIWA and Auckland Council Guidelines, culverts have been designed to provide for indigenous fish passage in accordance with adopted national guidelines, as discussed in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7 of Volume B). This will ensure that passage of fish is maintained following the installation of instream structures.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.4.</p>
<p>Objective F.1.14 Hazardous substances and contaminated land</p>	<p>Protect human health, and minimise the risk to the environment, from:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) discharges of hazardous substances, and 2) discharges of contaminants from contaminated land. 	<p>The Project will undertake a Detailed Site Investigation (DSI) and implement a Contaminated Soil Management Plan (CSMP), for any medium risk sites impacted, and a Remediation Action Plan (RAP) if required.</p> <p>This will ensure that human health is protected and the risk to the environment is minimised from the discharges of contaminants from contaminated land.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.14.</p>
<p>Policy D.4.1 Maintaining overall water quality</p>	<p>When considering an application for a resource consent to discharge a contaminant into water or onto or into land where it may enter water or onto land where it may enter water:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) ensure that the quality of fresh and coastal water is at least maintained, and 2) where a water quality standard in H.3 Water quality standards and guidelines is currently met: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) ensure that the quality of water in a river, lake or the coastal marine area will continue to meet the standards in H.3 Water quality standards and guidelines; and b) consider whether any improvements to water quality are required in order to achieve F.1.2 Water quality; 3) where a water quality standard in H.3 Water quality standards and guidelines is currently exceeded, ensure that any resource consent for a new discharge will not, or is not likely to, cause or contribute to a further exceedance of a water quality standard in H.3 Water quality standards and guidelines; 4) where a water quality standard in H.3 Water quality standards and guidelines is currently exceeded and the exceedance of the water quality standard is caused or contributed to by an existing activity for which a replacement resource consent is being considered, ensure any replacement resource consent granted for the existing discharge includes a condition(s) that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) requires the quality of the discharge to be improved over the term of the consent to reduce the contribution of the discharge to the exceedance of the water quality standard in H.3 Water quality standards and guidelines; and b) sets out a series of time bound steps, demonstrating how the activity will be managed to achieve the water quality improvements required by (4)(a). 	<p>The Construction Water Assessment (Appendix D10 of Volume B) has assessed the potential changes to water quality during the construction phase of the Project that may result from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ discharge of sediment from earthworks during both rain and flood events. ▪ discharge of sediment from in-stream activities and changes to flow. ▪ discharge of other contaminants. <p>There will be continuous improvement monitoring programme across the Project's construction works in order to assess the effectiveness of erosion and sediment controls. These conditions further include contingency provisions for new / further substantial controls to be retrofitted into the planned and constructed ESCs should a discharge occur that is not within the acceptable limits for the receiving environment (i.e. meeting the turbidity or zone of mixing standards).</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.3.4</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<p>5) ensure that the discharge will not cause an acute toxic adverse effect within the zone of reasonable mixing</p> <p>6) where a discharge will, or is likely to, cause or contribute to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) an exceedance of the coastal sediment quality guidelines in H.3.4 Coastal sediment quality guidelines, or b) a transitory exceedance of the toxicants, metals and metalloids standard in Table 22: Water quality standards for ecosystem health in rivers, and the activity is associated with the establishment, operation, maintenance or upgrade of Regionally Significant Infrastructure, c) determine whether higher levels of contaminants in the particular location affected by the discharge can be provided for while still achieving F.1.2 Water quality, and set appropriate levels of contaminants in accordance with best practice methodology to safeguard the ecosystem values present at the location affected by the discharge; and <p>7) where existing water quality is unknown, or the effect of a discharge on water quality is unknown, the activity must be managed using a precautionary approach, which may include adaptive management.</p> <p>Note: For the purpose of (6)(b) of this policy, best practice methodology can be determined by reference to ANZECC2000 Australian and New Zealand Guidelines for Fresh and Marine Water Quality Number 4, Volume 1 or any replacement guidelines.</p>	
<p>Policy D.4.5 Transitional policy under Policy A4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2017</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) When considering an application for a discharge, the consent authority must have regard to the following matters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the extent to which the discharge would avoid contamination that will have an adverse effect on the life-supporting capacity of freshwater including on any ecosystem associated with freshwater, and b) the extent to which it is feasible and dependable that any more than minor adverse effect on freshwater, and on any ecosystem associated with freshwater resulting from the discharge will be avoided. 2) When considering an application for a discharge, the consent authority must have regard to the following matters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the extent to which the discharge would avoid contamination that will have an adverse effect on the health of people and communities as affected by their contact with freshwater, and b) the extent to which it is feasible and dependable that any more than minor adverse effect on the health of people and communities as affected by their contact with freshwater resulting from the discharge will be avoided. 3) This policy applies to the following discharges (including a diffuse discharge by any person or animal): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) a new discharge, or b) a change or increase in any discharge of any contaminant into freshwater, or onto or into land in circumstances that may result in that contaminant (or, as a result of any natural process from the discharge of that contaminant, any other contaminant) entering freshwater. 4) Condition (1) of this policy does not apply to any application for consent first lodged before the <i>National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2011</i> took effect on 1 July 2011. 5) Condition (2) of this policy does not apply to any application for consent first lodged before the <i>National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2014</i> took effect. 	<p>The Project will incorporate an Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP), including Site Specific ESCP's which will address erosion and sediment control measures and devices and open area limits over time and season. The implementation of the ESCPs will ensure that any discharges will avoid contamination that will have an adverse effect on the life-supporting capacity of freshwater and on the health of people and communities.</p> <p>Based on this, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.5.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Policy D.4.6 Discharge of hazardous substances to land or water	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Where a substance is approved under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 to be discharged to land or water, good management practices must be used to avoid, as far as practicable, accidental spillages and adverse effects on: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) non-target organisms, and b) the use and consumption of water by humans or livestock, and 2) where a substance is not approved under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 to be applied to land or into water, activities involving the use, storage or disposal of those hazardous substances must be undertaken using the best practicable options to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) as a first priority, avoid a discharge (including accidental spillage) of the hazardous substance onto land or into water, including reticulated stormwater systems, and b) as a second priority, ensure, where there is a residual risk of a discharge of the hazardous substance, including any accidental spillage, it is contained on-site and does not enter surface waterbodies, groundwater or stormwater systems. 	<p>The Construction Water Assessment (Appendix D10 of Volume B) has assessed the potential changes to water quality during the construction phase of the Project due to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ discharge of other contaminants. <p>There will be a continuous improvement monitoring programme to assess the effectiveness of erosion and sediment controls to avoid discharges and contain them if they do accidentally occur.</p> <p>In terms of water quality during the operational phase of the Project, there are constructed wetlands and wetland swales proposed which will provide both treatment and extended detention. This will ensure that stormwater runoff from the road corridor is managed appropriately.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.6</p>
Policy D.4.7 Discharges from contaminated land	<p>Discharges of contaminants from contaminated land to air, land or water are managed or remediated to a level that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) allows contaminants to remain in the ground or in groundwater, where it can be demonstrated that the level of residual contamination beyond the site boundary is not reasonably likely to result in an unacceptable risk to human health or the environment, and 2) mitigates adverse effects on potable water supplies, and 3) avoids, remedies or mitigates adverse effects on aquatic ecosystem health, water quality, human health and amenity values, while taking into account all of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the physical constraints of the site and operational practicalities, and b) the financial implications of investigation, remediation, management and monitoring options, and c) the use of best practice contaminated land management, including the preparation and consideration of preliminary and detailed site investigations, remedial action plans, site validation reports and site management plans for the identification, monitoring and remediation of contaminated land, and d) whether adequate measures are in place for the transport, disposal and tracking of contaminated soil and other contaminated material removed from a site to prevent adverse effects on the environment. 	<p>The Project will implement a CSMP or remediation action plan if required, where contaminant concentrations exceed human health acceptance criteria.</p> <p>This will ensure that adverse effects of contaminants on aquatic ecosystem health, water quality, human health and amenity values are avoided, where practicable, and remedied or mitigated through a CSMP or remediation action plan.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.7.</p>
D.4.19 Transitional policy under Policy B7 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2017	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) When considering any application, the consent authority must have regard to the following matters: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the extent to which the change would adversely affect safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of freshwater and of any associated ecosystem, and b) the extent to which it is feasible and dependable that any adverse effect on the life-supporting capacity of freshwater and of any associated ecosystem resulting from the change would be avoided. 2) This policy applies to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) any new activity, and b) change in the character, intensity or scale of any established activity – that involves any taking, using, damming or diverting of freshwater or draining or any wetland which is likely to result in any more than minor adverse change 	<p>As noted in Table 1.2 above, the Project is consistent or partially consistent with the relevant objectives and policies of the NPS-FM, and therefore, the Project will also be overall partially consistent with this policy.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<p>in the natural variability of flows or level of any freshwater, compared to that which immediately preceded the commencement of the new activity of the change in the established activity (or in the case of a change in an intermittent or seasonal activity, compared to that on the last occasion on which the activity was carried out).</p> <p>3) This policy does not apply to any application for consent first lodged before the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2011 took effect on 1 July 2011.</p> <p>Note: The policy applies until the provisions in this plan that give effect to Policy B1 (allocation limits) and Policy B2 (allocation) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2017 have become operative.</p>	
<p>Policy D.4.21 Land drainage</p>	<p>Land drainage activities that require consent must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) maintain bed and bank stability, and 2) ensure that peatlands are not adversely affected, and 3) ensure that significant adverse effects on groundwater levels are avoided, and 4) ensure the effects of ground subsidence from dewatering are avoided, or where avoidance is not possible, remedied or mitigated, and 5) maintain the values of natural wetlands, and 6) maintain existing fish passages and where possible, encourage development of new fish passage opportunities. 	<p>The Project may require dewatering for the construction of pier foundations for bridges, culverts, stormwater ponds, pipelines and associated structures. Dewatering will cease after installation is completed and groundwater levels reduced by temporary dewatering are expected to recover post-construction.</p> <p>The groundwater in the three west wetland arms of Wetland Q08/696 will be monitored to test whether there are impacts due to groundwater drawdown and should be undertaken for 3 years post-earthwork cutsas noted in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7 of Volume B).</p>
<p>Policy D.4.22 Natural wetlands – requirements</p>	<p>Activities affecting a natural wetland:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) must maintain the following important functions and values of wetlands: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) water purification and nutrient attenuation, and b) contribution to maintaining stream flows during dry periods, and c) peak stream flow reduction, and d) providing habitat for indigenous flora and fauna, including ecological connectivity to surrounding habitat, and e) recreation, amenity and Natural Character values, and 2) avoid, remedy, or mitigate adverse effects on important wetland functions and values so they are not significant, or 3) must provide biodiversity off-setting or environmental biodiversity compensation, so that residual adverse effects on the important functions and values of wetlands are no more than minor. 	<p>The Project will avoid works within wetlands as far as practicable, to ensure that the important functions and values of wetlands can be maintained.</p> <p>However, where effects on wetlands cannot be avoided or remedied, biodiversity off-setting is proposed.</p>
<p>Policy D.4.23 Natural inland wetlands</p>	<p>The loss of extent of natural inland wetlands is avoided, their values are protected, and their restoration is promoted, except where:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the loss of extent or values arises from any of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the customary harvest of food or resources undertaken in accordance with tikanga Māori; b) wetland maintenance, restoration, or biosecurity (as defined in the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management) activities; c) scientific research; d) the sustainable harvest of sphagnum moss; e) the construction or maintenance of wetland utility structures (as defined in the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020); 	<p>The Project is specified infrastructure that will provide significant national and regional benefits so the exception in 2(a), (b), (c) and (d) applies. The Project will provide significant national and regional benefits with a functional need for it to be in that location as demonstrated by the Alternatives Assessment process detailed in Section C5.2 of Volume B.</p> <p>The Project will avoid natural inland wetlands as far as practicable. However, where the Project will impact on a number of natural inland wetlands that are unable to be avoided, ecological offsetting is proposed.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f) the maintenance or operation of specified infrastructure, or other infrastructure (as defined in the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020); g) natural hazard works (as defined in the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020); or <p>2) the Regional Council is satisfied that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the activity is necessary for the construction or upgrade of specified infrastructure; and b) the specified infrastructure will provide significant national or regional benefits; and c) there is a functional need for the specified infrastructure in that location; and d) the effects of the activity are managed through applying the effects management hierarchy; or <p>3) the Regional Council is satisfied that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the activity is necessary for the purpose of urban development ... <p>4) the Regional Council is satisfied that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the activity is necessary for the purpose of quarrying activities; and ... 	<p>(3) relates to urban environments and (4), (5), (6) and (7) relate to quarrying so are not relevant to the Project.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.23.</p>
<p>Policy D.4.24 Wetland – values</p>	<p>When considering resource consents for activities in wetlands, recognise:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) the benefits of wetland creation and restoration, and the enhancement of wetland functions, and 2) that the values of induced wetlands or reverted wetlands are likely to relate to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) the length of time the wetland has been in existence (ecological values are generally lower in newly established wetlands), and b) whether long-term viability of the wetland relies on maintenance works to maintain suitable hydrological conditions (wetlands that do not require maintenance are of greater value), and 3) that the consent duration should be for as long as active restoration or enhancement works are required. 	<p>Where the proposed works are not able to avoid Wetlands 8, 16, and 24, an offset is recommended.</p> <p>With offsetting being successful, the effects on natural inland wetlands with indigenous representative wetland value will likely be neutral or positive, as the offset wetlands will be more diverse and will be protected physically via fencing.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.24.</p>
<p>Policy D.4.25 Freshwater fish</p>	<p>When considering resource consent applications for activities in freshwater bodies recognise:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) that in the absence of alternative evidence, most Northland continually or intermittently flowing rivers and some lakes and natural wetlands provide habitat for threatened or at risk indigenous fish species, and 2) that all fish species have varying degrees of sensitivity to habitat disturbance, changed water flow and degraded water quality, particularly increased turbidity or sedimentation, and 3) the need to maintain the ability for non-pest fish species to effectively move up and downstream of the activity site, and 4) opportunities to reduce the risk of spreading or introducing pest species, and 5) the benefits of avoiding: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) activities in continually or intermittently flowing rivers during fish migration periods, and b) spawning habitat disturbance, particularly during spawning periods. 	<p>The Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7 of Volume B) has identified the habitat values and fish species present in the water bodies encountered by the Project.</p> <p>Erosion and sediment controls and stormwater treatment will be implemented to reduce the potential for habitat disturbance.</p> <p>Works in streams including culverts will be installed to maintain the ability for non-pest and indigenous fish species to effectively move through the catchment including to headwater streams where habitat occurs and their presence is confirmed, .</p> <p>Biosecurity protocols will be adopted to prevent the spread of pest plants and animal species. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.25.</p>
<p>Policy D.4.26 Benefits of freshwater structures, dams and diversions</p>	<p>Recognise the significant benefits activities in water bodies can provide to local communities, Māori and the region, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) socio-economic well-being and resilience of communities or industry, and 2) Regionally Significant Infrastructure, and 	<p>The Project is Regionally Significant Infrastructure, with works required to be undertaken within water bodies. However, the Project will bring significant benefits to local communities, Māori and the region through:</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	3) enhanced fish passage and ecological connectivity between the coastal marine area and the upstream extent of water bodies, and 4) flood protection and the safeguarding of public health and safety, and 5) public access along, over or in the water body, and 6) enabling community resilience to climate change, and 7) enhancing recreation opportunities including walking, bird watching, fishing, game bird hunting and boating, and 8) education and scientific research, and 9) enhancing amenity and Natural Character.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ providing improved connectivity, accessibility and reliability along the state highway corridor which is an important regional and national freight route, enabling regional growth and bringing significant economic benefits ▪ providing culverts designed for indigenous fish passage, enhancing ecological connectivity between downstream habitats and migratory / spawning headwaters. <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.26.</p>
Policy D.4.27 Land preparation, earthworks and vegetation clearance	<p>When assessing an application for a resource consent for an earthworks, vegetation clearance or land preparation activity and any associated discharge of a contaminant, ensure that the activity:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) will be done in accordance with established good management practices, and 2) avoids significant adverse effects, and avoids, remedies or mitigates other adverse effects on: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) drinking water supplies, and b) areas of high recreational use, and c) aquatic ecosystem health, indigenous biodiversity in water bodies and coastal water and receiving environments that are sensitive to sediment or phosphorus accumulation. 	<p>The proposed earthworks will be undertaken with appropriate erosion and sediment control measures and site management practices to minimise actual or potential effects on the environment.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.27.</p>
Policy D.4.30 Rivers	<p>The loss of river extent and values is avoided, unless the Regional Council is satisfied:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) that there is a functional need for the activity in that location; and 2) the effects of the activity are managed by applying the effects management hierarchy. <p>Note: Effects management hierarchy <i>is as defined in the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020, Condition 3.21</i></p>	<p>The Project will require works to be undertaken within and/or near streams and rivers, including those that provide habitat for freshwater species. However, works within streams and rivers will be avoided as far as practicable.</p> <p>Where works within streams and rivers cannot be avoided, as there is a functional need for the Project to be in those locations, culverts will be designed to ensure there is no loss in value or condition, as noted in the Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology (Appendix D7 of Volume B).</p> <p>Overall, the Project will adequately manage the effects on river and stream extent and values and therefore the Project is consistent with Policy D.4.30.</p>
D.6 Natural Hazards		
Objective F.1.10 Natural hazard risk	<p>The risks and impacts of natural hazard events (including the influence of climate change) on people, communities, property, natural systems, infrastructure and the regional economy are minimised by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) increasing the understanding of natural hazards, including the potential influence of climate change on natural hazard events and the potential impacts on coastal biodiversity values, and 2) becoming better prepared for the consequences of natural hazard events, and 3) avoiding inappropriate new development in 100-year flood hazard areas and coastal hazard areas, and 4) not compromising the effectiveness of existing natural and man-made defences against natural hazards, and 5) enabling appropriate hazard mitigation measures to be implemented to protect existing vulnerable development, and 	<p>The Project will ensure that the risks and impacts of natural hazard events on people, communities, property, natural systems, infrastructure and the regional economy are minimised by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Improving resilience of the SH1 network through the provision of an alternative route that is more resilient to natural hazards and the effects of climate change ▪ Implementing best practice design to reduce the potential flood risks outside the Proposed Designation boundary ▪ Not compromising the effectiveness of existing natural and man-made defences against natural hazards. ▪ Designing and constructing the Project to be resilient to the effects of flooding.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<p>6) promoting long-term strategies that reduce the risk of natural hazards impacting on people, communities and natural systems, and</p> <p>7) recognising that in justified circumstances, critical infrastructure may have to be located in natural hazard prone areas, and</p> <p>8) anticipating and providing for, where practicable, landward migration of coastal biodiversity values affected by sea level rise and natural hazard events.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adopting an observation-based design to manage geotechnical risk, including land instability. Such risks will be actively managed as design progresses, with early identification, targeted investigation and integration of mitigation strategies into the design and construction planning. Recognising that the Project is critical infrastructure and has an operational and functional need to operate in, be located in and traverse particular locations and environments, including flood hazard areas and areas of land instability. <p>Based on this, the Project is consistent with Objective F.1.10.</p>
Policy D.6.4 Flood hazard management – flood defences	Recognise the significant benefits that flood defences can play in reducing flood hazard risk to people, property and the environment.	<p>The Project will include flood defences, such as culverts which will maintain the existing catchment hydrology, keep flows in-catchment and avoid exacerbating downstream flooding.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will be consistent with Policy D.6.4.</p>
Policy D.6.5 Flood hazard management – development within floodplains	Development in flood hazard areas and continually or intermittently flowing rivers (including high-risk flood hazard areas) must not increase the risk of adverse effects from flood hazards on other property or another person's use of land or property.	<p>The Project will involve works within flood hazard areas and continually or intermittently flowing rivers. However, mitigation measures will be implemented to reduce or manage potential flood risks. Overall, this will ensure that the Project will not increase the risk of adverse effects from flood hazards on other property or another person's use of land or property.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy D.6.5.</p>

3. Kaipara District Planning Documents

3.1. Operative Kaipara District Plan (2013) (OKDP)

Table 8: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the OKDP.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
2.4 District Wide Objectives		
Objective 2.4.1	To maintain and enhance opportunities for sustainable resource use, to enable economic development and growth.	<p>The Project will play a vital role in enhancing the region's economic development and growth, as the Project will provide an efficient state highway corridor that enables regional growth and access to key markets.</p> <p>The improvement in resilience and reliability risk, particularly through the Brynderwyn Hills, will support increased economic activity in the Northland region. The economic benefits of the Project are discussed in Section C5 of Volume A.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will create opportunities for growth and economic development, demonstrating consistency with Policy 5.2.3.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 2.4.1.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Objective 2.4.3	To recognise the importance of providing for the relationship of Māori, including their culture and traditions, with their ancestral lands, water, sites, waahi tapu and other taonga.	The Project recognises the importance of providing for the relationship of Māori, including their culture and traditions, with their ancestral lands, water, sites, waahi tapu and other taonga. Hapū, including Te Uri o Hau have been working together with NZTA during early phases of the Project on field investigations, alternative assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 2.4.3.
Objective 2.4.4	To recognise and protect from inappropriate use and development those environments of the District which are the most sensitive to land use and development and which significantly contribute to the District's, Region's and/or Nation's identity.	The Project will recognise and protect those environments of the District which are the most sensitive to land use and development and which significantly contribute to the District's, Region's and Nation's identity. These environments include the area mapped within the Kaipara Harbour Overlay which the southern extent of the Proposed Designation traverses (between Pukekaroro and Bullock Hill) and the indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous species located around Pukekaroro. However, the Project will provide for specified infrastructure which is not inappropriate use or development, as the Project is a linear infrastructure with a functional and operational need to be located in those specific areas. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 2.4.4.
Objective 2.4.5	To recognise and enhance the amenity and character of the District, while providing for sustainable resource use.	The District's amenity and character values have been protected where practicable, during optioneering assessments for the Project. The Project will incorporate mitigation measures, such as revegetation, which will enhance those values or mitigate adverse effects where impacts are unavoidable. Overall, the Project will be consistent with Objective 2.4.5.
Objective 2.4.6	To protect and enhance those buildings, sites, objects and natural features and areas that contribute to the District's heritage, ecological and landscape values.	The Project will protect and enhance, as far as practicable, those buildings, sites, objects and natural features and areas that contribute to the District's heritage, ecological and landscape values. There is one historic heritage site, the Coates Monument (H65) that is located within the Proposed Designation. The Indicative Alignment will not require any modification or works to this monument and therefore will continue to be protected. The Project does not traverse within natural features and areas that contribute to the District's landscape values, such as Outstanding Natural Landscapes and Features identified under the OKDP. The Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B) has taken into account the natural features and areas that contribute to the District's ecological areas, including identifying areas with indigenous vegetation, with very high ecological value. This is shown in Appendix O of the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology. The Project will avoid these areas as much as practicable. Where avoidance is not possible, appropriate mitigation measures will be implemented to ensure these values are protected and maintained.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		Overall, the Project is considered to be partially consistent with Objective 2.4.6.
Objective 2.4.9	To enable the development and operation of utilities, utility networks and the transport network (including the state highway network) throughout the District, particularly where this is undertaken in conjunction with land use development and change.	The Project will contribute to the development and operation of the transport network throughout the District. By enhancing the state highway network particularly its resilience, which will, in the long term, provide improved connectivity and accessibility, it will also underpin future growth, ensuring that development is well-supported by resilient and efficient transport links. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 2.4.9.
Objective 2.4.10	To take a precautionary approach to managing hazards and their potential effects on communities and the natural environment.	The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) has assessed the flooding effects created by the Project based on the 1% AEP flood event with climate change (RCP 6.0, 2110) and mitigation measures recommended to ensure potential effects on communities and the natural environment is appropriately managed. Therefore, the Project has taken a precautionary approach to managing hazards and their potential effects on communities and the natural environment. Further, an observations-based design has been adopted for the Project, which is a precautionary approach to managing geotechnical risk, such as land instability. An observations-based design is best practice for managing uncertainty and ensuring safe and efficient construction in complex terrain. Taking this into consideration, the Project is consistent with Objective 2.4.10.
2.5 District Wide Policies		
Policy 2.5.9	By providing for the development and operation of network utilities and the transport network in all areas of the District where the potential adverse effects can be appropriately avoided, remedied or mitigated.	The Project consists of the development and operation of a network utility and the land transport network, where potential adverse effects will be appropriately avoided, remedied and mitigated, as discussed in Sections D1 to D15 of Volume B. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 2.5.9.
Chapter 3 - Land Use and Development Strategy		
Objective 3.4.5	To provide appropriate infrastructure and servicing in advance of or alongside future residential and business development.	The Project will provide appropriate infrastructure in the form of a state highway and will support future residential and business development in Northland. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 3.4.5.
Chapter 4 - Overlays		
Objective 4.4.9	<i>Kaipara Harbour</i> To recognise and provide for the protection of habitats and ecological values.	The Project will avoid habitats and ecological values as much as practicable. However, where they cannot be avoided, mitigation measures, including revegetation and habitat enhancement will be implemented to ensure that habitats and ecological values are protected. Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective 4.4.9.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Policy 4.5.14	By managing the scale, location and design of activities in the Kaipara Harbour Overlay.	The Project will be partially located in the Kaipara Harbour Overlay, particularly at the southern extent of the Indicative Alignment and Proposed Designation. Activities in this area, and throughout the Project, have been rigorously tested in Alternatives Assessments to manage the scale, location and design of the Project to ensure an appropriate balance is struck between benefits and adverse effects of the Project. Therefore, the Project will be consistent with Policy 4.5.14.
Chapter 5 - Tangata Whenua Strategy		
Objective 5.5.2	To recognise the importance of providing for the relationship of Māori, including their culture and traditions, with their ancestral lands, water, sites, waahi tapu and other taonga.	Hapū, including Te Uri o Hau have been working together with NZTA in the early stages of the Project in relation to field investigations, alternatives assessments, route refinement and preparation of CIAs. This will ensure that the relationship of Māori, including their culture and traditions, with their ancestral lands, water, sites, waahi tapu and other taonga is provided for. Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective 5.5.2.
Policy 5.6.1	Recognising the partnership with Tangata Whenua by: 1. Consultation is undertaken with Te Uri o Hau and Te Roroa on those matters that may affect their taonga, or their use, development and protection of the natural and physical environment (recognising Kaitiaki); and 2. Ensuring that active consideration is given to the impacts of development on taonga. This includes Tangata Whenua involvement in consent processing / hearings.	As noted above, hapū, relevant to the project area (Te Uri o Hau) have been working together with NZTA in the early stages of the Project. This will ensure that active consideration is given to the impacts of the Project on taonga. Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 5.6.1.
Policy 5.6.2	By recognising and protecting the values of Areas of Significance to Māori	The Project has avoided the Areas of Significance to Māori mapped in the OKDP. This will ensure that their values continue to be protected. Further, Te Uri o Hau have been working together with NZTA in the early stages of the Project, including providing input on areas of significance to Māori, that may not be mapped and identified in the OKDP. NZTA has sought to protect the values of areas of cultural significance to hapū through the optioneering process, where practicable. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 5.6.2.
Chapter 6 - Ecological Areas		
Objective 6.5.1	To maintain and enhance the life supporting capacity of ecosystems, and the extent and representativeness of the District's indigenous biological diversity	The Assessments of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology, Freshwater Ecology, and Avifauna Ecology (Appendices D6, D7, and D8 of Volume B) have proposed mitigation measures where required. Proposed Project mitigation will ensure that the life supporting capacity of ecosystems is maintained following construction and where required the implementation of any offset measures. The extent and representativeness of the District biological diversity will be maintained with implementation of mitigation, offset and if required compensation.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		Therefore, the Project is assessed to be partially consistent with Objective 6.5.1.
Objective 6.5.2	To maintain ecological values through the protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna while allowing appropriate subdivision, use and development.	<p>The Project will avoid areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna to the extent practicable. However, where they cannot be avoided, mitigation measures will be in place to ensure that overall ecological values will be maintained. The Project is considered an appropriate use due to the regional significance of the state highway.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Objective 6.5.2.</p>
Objective 6.5.3	To promote active management of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna.	<p>The Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B) has identified areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna as well as mitigation measures to ensure that adverse effects created by the Project are appropriately managed.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Objective 6.5.3.</p>
Objective 6.5.4	To protect the natural character of the coast, rivers and lakes and their margins within the District by avoiding, remedying or mitigating the adverse effects of surface water activities.	<p>The Project involves activities in the beds of waterbodies. The Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) has assessed the effects of the Project on the natural character of rivers, streams and wetlands as moderate to very high effects prior to mitigation.</p> <p>However, mitigation measures are proposed, such as the preparation of an LDP and LCP as part of an OPW to mitigate adverse effects on the characteristics, qualities and values of the natural character of wetland, lake and river margins.</p> <p>Therefore, this will ensure that the natural character of rivers and their margins are appropriately mitigated.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective 6.5.4.</p>
Policy 6.6.2	By managing the scale, intensity, and location of subdivision and land development activities in areas of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitats of indigenous fauna.	<p>The Project will avoid areas of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitats of indigenous fauna as far as practicable. However, due to the scale of the Project, there will be some areas of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitats of indigenous fauna that cannot be avoided. In these areas, appropriate mitigation measures have been proposed and will be implemented to ensure that effects on areas of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitats of indigenous fauna are adequately managed. These mitigation measures are outlined in the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B), including, but not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing native vegetation at the indicative Mitigation and Release Sites. ▪ Replacement planting of kauri trees and any indigenous plant species with 'Very High' or 'High' value. ▪ Implementation of Biosecurity protocols ▪ Activities throughout the Project have been rigorously tested in Alternatives Assessments to manage the scale and location of the

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<p>Project to ensure an appropriate balance is struck between benefits and any actual or potential adverse effects of the Project.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 6.6.2.</p>
Policy 6.6.2b	<p>Where disturbance of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna cannot be avoided, it should be undertaken in a way that, minimises and/or mitigates adverse effects as far as practicable, by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensuring that any disturbance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ minimises any edge effects; ○ avoids the removal of specimen trees; ○ does not result in linkages with other areas being lost; ○ avoids adverse effects on threatened species; ○ minimises disturbance of root systems of remaining vegetation; ○ does not result in the introduction of exotic weed species or pest animals; and ○ does not result in the intentional or unintentional release of weeds or pest animals or the abandonment of domestic pets; • Encouraging and where appropriate requiring the exclusion of domestic cats and dogs (except for working dogs as defined in the Dog Control Act 1996) in areas of high kiwi density (Appendix F to the Maps); • Encouraging and where appropriate requiring active pest control and removal and the provision of stock proof fencing to avoid the grazing of such areas; and • Encouraging planting and restoration. Eco-sourcing is preferred practice when planting indigenous plants and in particular, when undertaking revegetation or restorative planting. It serves to maintain genetic diversity and increase plant survival because plants are accustomed to their local environment. 	<p>Adequate mitigation measures will be implemented to ensure that adverse effects on significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna are minimised and/or mitigated, as far as practicable. Due to the linear nature of the Project and complex landscape and ecological environment, complete avoidance cannot be practicably achieved.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy 6.6.2b.</p>
Policy 6.6.3	<p>By managing earthworks and <i>vegetation clearance</i> in all areas of the District in order to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on significant ecological areas, recognising there is complete information on the exact geographic location of all these valued areas may not be available.</p>	<p>The Project will require earthworks and vegetation clearance in some Significant Natural Areas / significant ecological areas in the Kaipara District. However, these will be avoided as much as practicable. Where they cannot be avoided, mitigation measures are proposed to ensure adverse effects on Significant Natural Areas are appropriately managed, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites” to increase overall area of native forest and reducing fragmentation effects <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 6.6.3.</p>
Chapter 7 - Natural Hazards		
Objective 7.5.1	<p>To control subdivision and development so that it does not induce natural hazards or exacerbate the effects of natural hazards.</p>	<p>The Project has been designed while taking into consideration flood modelling and will implement mitigation measures to ensure that it does not induce or exacerbate the effects of flooding. Geotechnical risks will be managed using an observation-based approach as detailed design progresses.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective 7.5.1.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Objective 7.5.2	To ensure that the role in hazard mitigation played by natural features is recognised and protected.	<p>The Project recognises the natural features that play a role in hazard mitigation. The Project's design proposes wetlands and wetland swales to provide extended detention of water, which helps to manage stormwater flow and erosion, and therefore ensure that flood levels are not increased. The wetlands and wetland swales will be designed in accordance with best practice stormwater. The wetlands will be sized to provide extended detention of stormwater.</p> <p>The Indicative Alignment and stormwater systems, such as the wetlands, wetland swales and overland flow paths are sized and designed to ensure that it mitigates adverse flooding effects, including taking into account climate change projections.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P11.</p>
Objective 7.5.4	To consider natural hazards at the time of any subdivision, land use or development or when there is a significant change in land use proposed (for example a new Growth Area).	<p>The Project has considered natural hazards and the effects on flooding as a result of the increase in impervious areas, as well as works within the flooding risk areas, as discussed in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B). Geotechnical risks will be managed using an observation-based approach as detailed design progresses.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective 7.5.4.</p>
Policy 7.6.1	<p>By considering the potential for development, subdivision and land use activities including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Vegetation clearance; Draining of wetlands; Changes in overland flow paths and storm water; Changes to riparian margins; Earth works; Buildings and building setbacks; and Land reclamation; <p>to exacerbate any natural hazard on-site or off-site, and avoiding such activities, unless it can be demonstrated that the adverse effects can be mitigated, remedied or avoided.</p>	<p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) has taken into account increased peak flow due to the increase of impervious areas and proposed earthworks. Mitigation measures utilising the best practice are proposed.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy 7.6.1.</p>
Policy 7.6.3	By considering the potential adverse impacts of development on flood flow paths of rivers and the efficient functioning of natural drainage systems in subdivision, land use and development.	<p>The Project will create new impervious surfaces that will increase stormwater runoff volumes and peak flows. The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) has noted that wetlands and swales will provide extended detention.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy 7.6.3.</p>
Chapter 8 - Hazardous Facilities and Contaminated Sites		
Objective 8.5.3	To administer the use, management and development of contaminated sites in a way that controls adverse effects on the environment, human health and safety, pursuant to the National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants to Soil to Protect Human Health.	The Proposed Designation is through predominantly rural and rural-residential land uses and therefore the potential for HAIL sites to be disturbed during construction is low. The Project will ensure that the use and development of contaminated land is managed to minimise adverse effects on the environment and prevent adverse effects on

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		human health and safety through implementing an unexpected discovery protocol during all earthworks. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 8.5.3.
Chapter 11 - Transport Network		
Objective 11.5.1	To maintain a safe and efficient Transport Network that enables the District to communicate, connect and do business with minimal conflicts between the environment, adjoining land uses, traffic and people.	The Project will provide a safe and efficient transport network, as detailed in the Assessment of Transport Effects (Appendix D1 of Volume B). Potential conflicts with the environment, adjoining land uses, traffic and people have been considered in various sections of the assessment of effects (Part D of Volume B) and in the alternatives assessments for this Project Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective 11.5.1.
Policy 11.6.1	By managing the design and construction of the Transport Network to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects on the environment.	Refer to the assessments of the Project against Chapter 6 and the District-Wide Matters in Chapter 2 above detailing the integration between the Project and rural landscape, natural character, and ecological habitats. The Project's Indicative Alignment is located a significant distance from most PPFs. Mitigation is proposed, including ensuring the Detailed Design of the Project complies with the relevant operational noise criteria, which may include using low noise type of asphalt surface for specific stretches of the Indicative Alignment and providing a report to the relevant local authorities within 12 months of installation of any noise mitigation measures to ensure compliance with the relevant standards. This mitigation will ensure that the characteristics and amenity values of the rural zone can be maintained. The Project will therefore be consistent with Policy 11.6.1.

3.2. Proposed Kaipara District Plan 2025 (PKDP)

Table 9: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the PKDP.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
INF - Infrastructure		
INF-O1	Effective, resilient, efficient and safe infrastructure across the Kaipara District that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Provides essential and secure services, including in emergencies; 2. Facilitates local, regional, national or international connectivity; 3. Contributes to the economy and support a high standard of living; 4. Integrates with subdivision, use and development; and 5. Enables people and communities to provide for their health, safety and wellbeing. 	The Project will provide effective, resilient, efficient and safe infrastructure that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Will provide essential and secure services, including in emergencies as it will be more resilient to natural hazards and the impacts derived from climate change ▪ Will facilitate local and regional connectivity as it will connect Auckland and Northland, supporting economic growth and productivity ▪ Will contribute to the economy as it will support the growth of freight capacity between Auckland and Northland ▪ Will enable people and communities to provide for their health, safety and wellbeing.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective INF-O1.
INF-O2	The adverse effects of infrastructure on the environment are avoided, remedied or mitigated, while recognising: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The functional need or operational need of infrastructure; 2. That positive effects of infrastructure may be realised locally, regionally or nationally. 	The Project's adverse effects will be avoided, remedied or mitigated as discussed in Sections D1.2 to D1.14 of Volume B. There is a functional and operational need for the Project, as indicated in Sections D1.2 to D1.14 of Volume B, and the Project will bring local and regional benefits, including economic, social, and cultural benefits. Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective INF-O2.
INF-O3	The safety, efficient operation, maintenance, repair or upgrading of infrastructure is not constrained or compromised by new incompatible land use, subdivision or development.	As outlined in Table 1.5 above the Project will not constrain or compromise the safe, efficient operation, maintenance or repair of the National Grid. The Project is therefore consistent with Objective INF-O3.
INF-O4	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The national significance and benefits of the National Grid are recognised and provided for; and 2. The National Grid is not compromised by other subdivision, use and development. 	As outlined in Table 1.5 above the Project will not compromise the National Grid and recognises its significance and benefits. The Project is therefore consistent with Objective INF-O4.
Recognising the benefits of, and providing for infrastructure		
INF-P1	Recognise the benefits of infrastructure by: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Allowing the development, upgrade, operation, maintenance, repair or removal of infrastructure; and 2. Providing for the functions and responsibilities of infrastructure, including as lifeline utilities during an emergency. 	The Project involves the development and operation of infrastructure and operates as a lifeline utility during an emergency. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P1.
INF-P3	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Have particular regard to the benefits that can be gained from the development and use of regionally significant infrastructure; and 2. Protect the effectiveness and efficiency of existing and planned regionally significant infrastructure. 	The Project is regionally significant infrastructure that will bring a wide range of benefits, as discussed in Section C5 of Volume A, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Being more resilient to natural hazards will lead to an estimated 79% reduction in the time the road is closed due to weather events ▪ Providing a safer transport connection through better alignment and road design, with a predicted reduction of 79% in deaths and serious injuries ▪ Improving travel efficiency with faster journeys resulting in significant time savings for business travellers, freight transport and other road users due to the planned alignment and road design Significant economic benefits to individuals and firms from travel time, reliability, resilience and accident cost savings, valued at approximately \$1.2 billion (NPV). Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P3.
INF-P4	Recognise the benefits of new technologies in infrastructure that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Improve access to, and efficient use and development of, networks and services; 2. Allow for the re-use of redundant services and structures; 3. Increase resilience, safety or reliability of networks and services; or 4. Result in environmental benefits and enhancements. 	The Project has been designed to be resilient and fit for purpose and will improve access to, and efficient use and development of, the transport network and other services. The Project will also result in environmental benefits and enhancement. For example, there will be mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative "Mitigation

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<p>and Release Sites”: to increase the area of native forest at the mitigation sites, provide alternative habitat and reduce fragmentation effects. There will also be maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting to enable successful establishment.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P4.</p>
INF-P5	<p>Provide for new regionally significant infrastructure within an Overlay where:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is a demonstrated functional or operational need for the infrastructure to be located within the Overlay; and 2. It is demonstrated through an options assessment that locating within an Overlay is the best practicable option, having particular regard to the financial implications, social, cultural and environmental effects of the preferred option, compared to other alternative options. 	<p>The Project has undergone a robust Alternatives Assessment process during the route refinement stage. There is a functional and operational need for the Project to be located in the specific area.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P5.</p>
Managing adverse effects of infrastructure		
INF-P6	<p>Minimise adverse effects of infrastructure on the environment, while having regard to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The functional need and operational need of the network utility; 2. The extent to which adverse effects have been addressed through site, route or method selection; 3. The necessity of the infrastructure; 4. The duration or frequency of adverse effects; and 5. The location of existing infrastructure, including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The complexity and connectedness of the networks and services; and b. The potential for co-location and shared use of network utility corridors. 	<p>The adverse effects of the Project have been minimised as much as practicable while having regard to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The Project’s functional and operational need; ▪ The Project’s route selection was an outcome of the alternatives assessment process, which took into account cultural considerations, noise and vibration, landscape and visual character and other environmental effects; and ▪ The Project is necessary as it is a critical part of the Northland Corridor, and will address the long-standing and worsening safety, resilience, and reliability issues associated with the existing SH1 route through the Brynderwyn Hills. <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P6.</p>
Managing adverse effects on infrastructure		
INF-P12	<p>Protect the safe and efficient operation, maintenance and repair, upgrading, removal and development of Regionally Significant Infrastructure from being unreasonably compromised by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Only allowing sensitive activities within the Gas or Petroleum Pipeline Corridor where these are of a scale and nature that will not compromise the gas or petroleum products transmission network or result in reverse sensitivity effects; 2. Requiring any buildings or structures to be of a nature and scale and to be located and designed to maintain safe distances from Regionally Significant Infrastructure; 3. Managing earthworks in close proximity to Regionally Significant Infrastructure; 4. Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects of subdivision, land use or development of a site that contains or is adjacent to any Regionally Significant Infrastructure other than the National Grid, including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The impact of subdivision layout and design on the operation, maintenance and repair, and potential upgrade and development of the infrastructure; b. The extent to which the design and layout of the subdivision demonstrates that a suitable building platform(s) for a dwelling can be provided; 	<p>The Project, in some areas, may be located in close proximity or intersect to Transpower’s electricity transmission network.</p> <p>The proposed earthworks associated with the Project and near other Regionally Significant Infrastructure, such as Transpower’s electricity transmission lines and structures will be managed through ongoing consultation with Transpower.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P12.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. The extent to which the subdivision design and consequential development will minimise the potential reverse sensitivity effects on and amenity and nuisance effects of the infrastructure; and 5. Requiring subdivision of a site that contains or is adjacent to any Regionally Significant Infrastructure other than the National Grid to be designed to avoid or mitigate any adverse effects on access to, and the safe and efficient operation and maintenance and repair of, that infrastructure. 	
INF-P13	<p>Protect the safe and efficient operation, maintenance and repair, upgrading, removal and development of the National Grid by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Avoiding sensitive activities, buildings, structures and earthworks within the National Grid Yard that may compromise the National Grid; 2. Only allowing subdivision within the National Grid Subdivision Corridor where it can be demonstrated that any adverse effects on and from the National Grid, including public health and safety, will be avoided, taking into account: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The impact of the subdivision layout and design on the operation and maintenance, and potential upgrade and development of the National Grid, including the ability for continued access to existing transmission assets for maintenance, inspections and upgrading; b. The ability of any potential future development to comply with New Zealand Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances NZCEP 34:2001; c. The extent to which the design and layout of the subdivision demonstrates that a suitable building platform(s) for a principal building or dwelling can be provided outside of the National Grid Yard for each new lot; d. The risk to the structural integrity of the National Grid; e. The extent to which the subdivision design and consequential development will minimise the risk of injury and/or property damage from the National Grid and the potential reverse sensitivity on and amenity and nuisance effects of the National Grid assets; f. The nature and location of any proposed vegetation to be planted in the vicinity of the National Grid. g. The outcome of any consultation with Transpower; and 3. Maintaining access to the structures. 	<p>The Project will not compromise the operation, maintenance and repair, upgrading, removal and development of the National Grid. Access to Transpower's structures will be maintained throughout construction and operational phases of the Project.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P13.</p>
Three waters infrastructure		
INF-P15	<p>Encourage and promote water conservation measures and, where appropriate, low impact stormwater design and facilities.</p>	<p>The Project incorporates low impact stormwater design, including wetlands, wetland swales and treatment swales, which will provide extended detention and treatment of water.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P15.</p>
INF-P16	<p>Ensure that stormwater and drainage infrastructure for subdivision, land use and development:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adopts, where appropriate, a best-practice low impact design approach to the management of stormwater; 2. Manages stormwater with a preference for at-source management; 3. Retains pre-development hydrological conditions as far as practicable; 4. Does not increase the flow of stormwater runoff onto adjoining properties; and 	<p>The Project has taken into account key design principles, derived from the relevant statutory framework and current best-practice guidance to inform an indicative operational stormwater design for the Indicative Alignment, including BOP stormwater practice.</p> <p>Therefore, the indicative design adopts a best-practice low impact design approach to the management of stormwater, including implementing water sensitive design. The indicative stormwater design includes features like wetlands, wetland swales and</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	5. Provides a stormwater catchment management plan for future urban development.	<p>treatment swales to help manage water flow and improve water quality.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will ensure that the runoff will be adequately managed so there is no adverse increase in stormwater runoff on adjoining properties.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy INF-P16.</p>
CL – Contaminated Land		
CL-O1	Subdivision, use and development of contaminated land is managed to protect human health and safety and the environment from unacceptable risk.	<p>The Proposed Designation is through predominantly rural and rural-residential land uses and therefore the potential for HAIL sites is low. The Project will ensure that the use and development of contaminated land is managed to protect human health and safety and the environment from unacceptable risk through implementing an unexpected discovery protocol during all earthworks and requirements for soils to meet adopted human health criteria prior to re-use.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective CL-O1.</p>
CL-O2	Remediation and/or site management of contaminated land contributes to the health and wellbeing of communities and increases development opportunities for future use and development.	<p>A CSMP (and Remedial Action Plan(s), if required) will be prepared for medium risk sites that are impacted.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective CL-O2.</p>
CL-P1	Identify sites potentially containing contaminated land, including sites with contamination from current and historical land uses and activities, by using the Northland Regional Councils Selected Land-use Register (SLR) and co-ordinating with the Regional Council in the recording and management of contaminated land.	<p>As described by the Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects (Appendix D9), potentially contaminated land has been identified using the following sources / methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Review of historical aerial photographs. ▪ Review of property files provided by KDC and WDC. ▪ Use of the NRC SLUR database. <p>Therefore, the Project has followed guidelines for identification of contaminated sites in accordance with CL-P1.</p>
CL-P2	Unless for the purpose of remediation, discourage the disturbance of contaminated land, where the level, type and toxicity of the contamination could adversely affect human health and safety and the environment.	<p>The results from the field sampling were below adopted human health criteria, as noted in the Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects. Appropriate mitigation measures are proposed, which include undertaking a DSI, preparing a CSMP for any medium risk sites impacted, and a Remedial Action Plan if the CSMP identifies contaminated soils requiring remediation.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy CL-P2.</p>
CL-P3	<p>Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on the health of people and the environment from the management or remediation of contaminated land by ensuring that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Contaminated land is managed and/or remediated to ensure that contaminants are at a level acceptable for the proposed land use. 2. A best practice approach to remediation is applied, which does not pose a more significant risk to human health than if the remediation had not occurred. 3. Contaminated land management approaches associated with the use, subdivision and development of contaminated land include where appropriate: 	<p>As discussed above, the field sampling results undertaken for the Project have concluded that the identified contamination hotspots are below adopted human health criteria. A DSI will be undertaken following detailed design, and a CSMP prepared for any medium risk sites impacted and a RAP, if the CSMP identifies contaminated soils requiring remediation. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy CL-P3.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Undertaking a site investigation of any land identified as actually or potentially contaminated, prior to any new subdivision or change of use of land, that could result in an increase in any adverse effects from the contamination of land; b. Remedial action plans; c. Site validation reports; d. Site management plans as appropriate for identifying, monitoring and managing land; and e. Preliminary site investigations. <p>4. Disposal of contaminated soil must be carried out in a manner that avoids further adverse effects on human health or on the environment.</p> <p>5. Use or development of contaminated land must not damage or destroy any contaminant containment works, unless comparable or better containment is provided, or monitoring demonstrates that the containment is no longer required.</p> <p>6. Any preliminary or detailed site investigation reports, remedial action plans, site validation reports and ongoing site management plans are prepared in accordance with the Ministry for the Environment Contaminated Land Management Guidelines #1 and #5 and are provided to both Kaipara District Council and the Northland Regional Council for their records.</p>	
NH - Natural Hazards		
NH-O1	The risks from natural hazards to people, property, infrastructure and natural systems, including the likely effects of climate change on natural hazard risk, are minimised to provide for the health, safety and resilience of communities and the environment.	<p>The Project will ensure that the risks from flooding and landslides to people, property, infrastructure and natural systems, including the likely effects of climate change, are minimised through adequate mitigation measures to provide for the health, safety and resilience of communities and the environment.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective NH-O1.</p>
NH-O2	Infrastructure is located, designed and maintained to be resilient to natural hazards.	<p>The Project has been developed to achieve resilience. It will be designed with the appropriate stormwater drainage and geotechnical features to achieve a state highway that is safe and resilient to natural hazards and fit for purpose into the future.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective NH-O2.</p>
NH-P1	Use the best available information, including regional mapping and site-specific investigations, to assess and manage the risks of natural hazards.	<p>The Project's Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) used the November 2025 Te Hana to Whangārei flood model to assess and manage the flooding risks.</p> <p>Remote mapping and terrain instability assessments are being carried out to inform observation-based design, which will allow for ongoing refinement of design during construction to continue managing geotechnical risks.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P1.</p>
NH-P2	Recognise that natural hazards including erosion, land instability, and flooding/overland flow may occur outside known and mapped natural hazard areas.	The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) has developed a flood model, recognising that flooding may occur outside known and mapped natural hazard areas.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<p>Remote mapping and terrain instability assessments are being carried out to ensure a comprehensive understanding of the locations of geotechnical risks to inform project direction and / or inform appropriate mitigation measures.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P2.</p>
<p>NH-P4</p>	<p>Manage subdivision, land use and development so that natural hazard risk is not increased, and is minimised and mitigated, having regard to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The nature, frequency and scale of the natural hazard and the sensitivity of the land use or development to the natural hazard; 2. The effects of climate change; 3. Not increasing or transferring natural hazard risk to other people, property, infrastructure and the environment beyond the site, including through earthworks such as excavation and filling; 4. The location of building platforms and access, types of buildings including relocatable buildings) and structures and their design; 5. Location and design of infrastructure and services, including on-site wastewater disposal; 6. Activities that involve the use and storage of hazardous substances; 7. The long-term functionality and integrity of natural systems and structural mitigation assets; and 8. Opportunities to reduce risks from natural hazards relating to existing activities. 	<p>As discussed, the existing SH1 in the Brynderwyn Hills lacks resilience and has been severely impacted by weather events over the past few years. The Project will be designed to significantly improve the resilience of the roading network of the region.</p> <p>The Project has had regard to the effects of climate change on flooding, taking into account the 1% annual exceedance probability with climate change projections, as discussed in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B). The flood model results have shown that there may be increases to the maximum flood level outside of the Proposed Designation. However, mitigation measures are implemented to ensure that flooding risks are minimised.</p> <p>In terms of land instability, the Project will adopt an observation-based design to manage geotechnical risk. Remote mapping and terrain instability assessments are being carried out to inform the Project's design, which will allow for ongoing refinement of design during construction to continue managing risk. This is best practice for managing uncertainty and ensuring safe and efficient construction in complex terrain.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P4.</p>
<p>NH-P5</p>	<p>Support an adaptive planning approach to managing the risks from natural hazards, including consideration of viable options to progressively adapt to change.</p>	<p>The Project supports an adaptive planning approach to manage the risks of natural hazards, such as land instability, as it implements an observations-based design, which is a key strategy for managing geotechnical risk. The observations-based design will allow for ongoing refinement of design during construction, particularly for cut slopes, fill embankments and drainage systems. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P5.</p>
<p>NH-P6</p>	<p>Manage new subdivision, land use and development to avoid or mitigate the risks of flood hazards by requiring:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. New subdivision to identify building platforms that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Are located outside the spatial extent of a High-Risk River Flood Hazard Area; b. Will not be subject to flooding in a 1 in 100-year flood event; and c. Are designed and engineered to be resilient to flood hazards; 2. New buildings that will accommodate sensitive activities to be located outside of a High-Risk River Flood Hazard Area; 3. Within a River Flood Hazard Area: 	<p>The proposed earthworks located within the floodplain will not divert flood flow into surrounding properties.</p> <p>As noted in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B), cross drainage structures such as culverts have been designed to allow the continued flow of existing overland flow paths, ensuring that the capacity and function of these overland flow paths can be retained without causing damage to property or the environment.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P6.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. All new buildings designed to accommodate sensitive activities to have a minimum freeboard of at least 500mm above the 1 in 100-year flood height; b. New commercial and industrial buildings to have a minimum freeboard of at least 300mm above the 1 in 100-year flood event or alternatively are designed and constructed so they will be resilient to flood hazards having regard to matters including the frequency, depth and velocity of flood waters; c. Areas for storage and containment of hazardous substances to be designed so that they are not inundated in a 1 in 100-year flood event; d. Earthworks (other than earthworks associated with flood control works) are assessed as not diverting flood flow onto surrounding properties and not reducing flood plain storage capacity within the 1 in 10-year flood hazard area; e. Buildings, building platforms, access and services to be located and designed to minimise the need for hazard protection structures; f. The provision of safe vehicle access within the site during a flood event; and <p>4. The capacity and function of overland flow paths to convey stormwater flows safely to be retained without causing damage to property or the environment.</p>	
NH-P8	<p>Manage and minimise the risk of land instability and geotechnical hazards by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Requiring an assessment of the potential for land instability and other geotechnical hazards in new subdivisions; 2. Avoiding areas of known land instability and geotechnical hazards, where practicable; and 3. Requiring engineering and measures to mitigate instability hazards and geotechnical risks. 	<p>The Project has incorporated engineering and measures in its design to mitigate instability hazards and geotechnical risks. Observation-based design will be a key strategy for managing geotechnical risk and will allow for ongoing refinement of design during construction to continue managing risk, particularly for cut slopes, fill embankments and drainage systems. This is best practice for managing uncertainty and ensuring safe, efficient construction in complex terrain. Where avoidance of land instability is not feasible, stabilisation measures including earth nails, rock fall nets and retaining may be required. The design will incorporate monitoring and mitigation strategies to manage long-term risks.</p> <p>This will ensure that the risk of land instability and geotechnical hazards will be managed and minimised, consistent with Policy NH-P8.</p>
NH-P9	<p>Manage earthworks activities within Coastal Erosion Hazard Areas and Coastal Flood Hazard Areas, and River Flood Hazard Areas by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Controlling the volume and area of earthworks, including excavation and fill; and 2. Ensuring that earthworks in Coastal Hazard Areas and High-Risk Flood Hazard Areas are undertaken so that hazard risks are not increased or transferred to other properties. 	<p>The Project, including earthworks within the existing floodplain, together with the proposed mitigation measures outlined in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) will not increase hazard risks or transfer adverse flooding impacts to other properties. Where buildings are identified as at risk of flooding, actions such as implementing diversion structures, undertaking building inspections (to determine floor level) in accordance with the mitigation recommendations.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P9.</p>
NH-P10	<p>Manage new infrastructure by ensuring it:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Is not located in a Coastal Erosion Hazard Area or Coastal Flood Hazard Area, or River Flood Hazard Areas unless there is a functional need or operational need to locate in that area and this location is the most appropriate to service the needs of the community; 	<p>The Project will not be located within the Coastal Erosion Hazard Areas and Coastal Flood Hazard Areas under the Proposed Kaipara District Plan. The Project will be partially located within the River Flood Hazard Zones as there is a functional and operational need for the state highway to be located in this specific area. The Project will be designed and constructed to be resilient</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Is designed and constructed to be resilient to the effects of natural hazards, recognising: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Not all natural hazards are known or mapped; b. Some natural hazard events may result in the temporary disruption to the operation of the infrastructure; c. Potential changes in hazards and a risk, including as a result of sea level rise and climate change; and 3. Does not transfer hazard risks to other locations and mitigates risks to people, property, other infrastructure and the environment. 	<p>to the effects of flooding, as noted in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B).</p> <p>The Project will adopt an observation-based design to manage geotechnical risk. Remote mapping and terrain instability assessments are being carried out to inform the Project's design, which will allow for ongoing refinement of design during construction to continue managing risk.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P10.</p>
NH-P11	<p>Protect existing natural systems and features that buffer or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Avoiding the modification, alteration or loss of natural systems and features that compromises their function as natural defences, including as a defence against long term effects such as sea level rise and climate change; and 2. Promoting the restoration and enhancement of such natural systems and features. 	<p>The existing natural systems and features that buffer or mitigate the adverse effects of natural hazards are protected as far as practicable, such as wetlands. However, where these cannot be avoided, an offset will be applied.</p> <p>This will ensure that their function as natural defences will be replaced to their pre-existing extent.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is partially consistent with Policy NH-P11.</p>
NH-P12	<p>Consider new hazard protection structures to protect existing development and existing and new infrastructure where:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Natural systems and features will not provide adequate protection from the natural hazard; 2. They are the only practical means to protect: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Existing infrastructure or new infrastructure that has a functional or operational need to be in the location; or b. Existing settlements and development. 3. The structure is suitable for the location and does not transfer the risk and effects of natural hazards to other locations; 4. Any hazard protection structures considered necessary to protect private assets are not located on public land unless there is significant public or environmental benefit in doing so; and 5. Alternative responses to the hazard (including soft protection measures, restoration or enhancement of natural defences against coastal hazards and abandonment of assets) are demonstrated to be impractical or have significantly greater adverse effects on the environment. 	<p>Retaining structures and erosion protection will be required in areas of cut slopes which require stabilisation measures. This will protect new infrastructure that has a functional and operational need to be in those specific locations.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P12.</p>
Historic Heritage		
HH-O1	<p>Historic heritage that reflects the District's diverse history, and which fosters community awareness, appreciation and wellbeing is identified, protected and maintained for future generations.</p>	<p>The Project will avoid sites of historic heritage as much as practicable to protect the historic heritage that reflects the District's diverse history and fosters community awareness, appreciation and wellbeing.</p> <p>There is only one historic heritage site identified in the PKDP, the Coates Memorial (HH-BRY-01), which is noted by the Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (Appendix D5 of Volume B) as a monument remembering Joseph Gordon Coates, 25th prime minister of New Zealand. This site is located within the Proposed Designation, but is not impacted by the Indicative Alignment, and</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<p>no works are proposed to this monument. There are no other historic heritage sites identified in the PKDP that are relevant to the Project.</p> <p>In terms of archaeological sites, the Project will avoid these as much as practicable. However, where sites cannot be avoided, archaeological authorities are being sought to modify or destroy all other archaeological sites, with a HHMP as a condition.</p> <p>All pā sites in the Proposed Designation will be avoided.</p> <p>Archaeological investigation and recording of any historical material will be undertaken for each of the sites included within the Archaeological Authority to add to the appreciation and historical knowledge in the area.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is assessed to be partially consistent with Policy HH-O1.</p>
HH-P2	<p>Enable scheduled heritage items to be maintained, repaired and altered (including additions, earthquake strengthening, fire protection and accessibility upgrades) to facilitate their continued use or adaptive reuse, provided that the works:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Do not compromise the historic heritage values of the items; and 2. Are consistent with the scale, detailing, style, materials and character of the historic heritage item. 	<p>There is one scheduled heritage item identified in the PKDP, being the Coates Monument (HH-BRY-01). There are no works proposed to this monument and therefore the Project will not compromise the historic heritage values of this item.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy HH-P2.</p>
Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity		
ECO-01	<p>Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna are protected.</p>	<p>The Project will avoid works within significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna as much as practicable, to ensure that they are protected. However, where they cannot be avoided, appropriate mitigation measures are proposed to offset or compensate for these effects, as discussed in the Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B).</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is assessed to be partially consistent with Objective ECO-01.</p>
ECO-02	<p>Adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity are managed to maintain its extent and diversity in a way that provides for the social, economic and cultural well-being of people and communities.</p>	<p>The Project will ensure that adequate mitigations measures are implemented during and after construction so adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity are appropriately managed to maintain its extent and diversity where practicable. The Project will provide for the social, economic and cultural wellbeing of people and communities as outlined in the benefits of the Project discussed in Section C5 of Volume A and as assessed in Table 1.4 (NPS-IB) Objective 1(b)(iv).</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective ECO-02.</p>
ECO-03	<p>The restoration of indigenous biodiversity is promoted and enabled.</p>	<p>The Project will incorporate mitigation planting and enhancement of existing native vegetation at the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites” which will contribute to protecting and restoring indigenous biodiversity.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Objective ECO-03.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
ECO-O4	Landowners act as stewards in the protection, maintenance and restoration of indigenous biodiversity.	<p>NZTA will become the future landowner of the areas of indigenous biodiversity as part of this Project. NZTA will act as stewards in the protection, maintenance and restoration of indigenous biodiversity through the following, but not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Minimising loss of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat, where practicable, through detailed design and the adoption of efficient construction methodologies. ▪ Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites”. ▪ Vegetation management protocols to avoid direct mortality to bats. ▪ Minimising loss of kauri trees, where practicable, through detailed design and the adoption of efficient construction methodologies and a kauri tree replacement planting. ▪ The Project will ensure that machinery and equipment used to support / enable construction activities will be checked and cleaned before being transported to, from and within spatially distinct ecological environments to avoid the spread of plant pathogens (as required by the National Pest Management Plan for Kauri). ▪ Maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting. <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective ECO-P4.</p>
ECO-P2	<p>Outside the coastal environment:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects of subdivision, land use and development to ensure adverse effects are no more than minor on; <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Threatened and At-Risk indigenous species; b. Areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna; c. Areas of indigenous biodiversity protected under other legislation; and 2. Avoid, remedy, or mitigate, offset or compensate adverse effects of subdivision, land use and development to ensure there are no significant adverse effects on: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation; and b. Indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems that are important for recreational, commercial, traditional or cultural purposes or are particularly vulnerable to modification. 	<p>Based on the desktop review, there were 11 Nationally or Regionally ‘At-Risk’ or ‘Threatened’ plant species within the Proposed Designation. 10 species were confirmed within the Proposed Designation during site walkovers.</p> <p>Mitigation measures will include, but are not limited to, the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Minimising native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss, where practicable, through detailed design and the adoption of efficient construction methodologies. ▪ Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at indicative “mitigation and release sites”. <p>With mitigation measures implemented, this will ensure that adverse effects will be appropriately managed.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy ECO-P2.</p>
ECO-P3	<p>Manage subdivision, land use and development to protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna and maintain indigenous biodiversity in a way that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not unreasonably restrict existing primary production activities, particularly on highly productive land; 2. Recognises the operational need or functional need of regionally significant infrastructure to traverse or locate within areas of significant indigenous vegetation 	<p>There is an operational and functional need for the Project to traverse areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna, as identified through the Alternatives Assessment process undertaken during the Project’s optioneering process.</p> <p>However, the Project will protect significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitat of indigenous fauna as far as practicable.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy ECO-P3.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<p>and significant habitat of indigenous fauna where there are no practicable alternative locations;</p> <p>3. Allows for operation, use and maintenance of existing structures, including infrastructure; and</p> <p>4. Enables land to be used and developed to support the social, economic and cultural well-being of people and communities.</p>	
ECO-P4	<p>Promote and enable activities that restore and enhance indigenous biodiversity, including by:</p> <p>1. Recognising and providing for the role of landowners as stewards in the restoration of indigenous biodiversity;</p> <p>2. Enabling the removal or management of pest plant and animal species; and</p> <p>3. Enabling biosecurity works.</p>	<p>The Project will incorporate mitigation planting and enhancement of existing native vegetation at the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites” which will contribute to protecting and restoring indigenous biodiversity. Pest plants and species within the Proposed Designation will be managed to prevent further degradation of existing biodiversity, and on the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites” both prior to and (for the purpose of ensuring success) following implementation of offsets.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Policy ECO-P4.</p>
Natural Character		
NATC-01 Preservation and protection of natural character	<p>The natural character of wetland, lake and river margins is preserved, and protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.</p>	<p>The Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) has assessed the effects of the Project on the natural character of rivers, streams and wetlands.</p> <p>Mitigation measures are proposed, such as minimisation of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss; replacement planting for kauri trees and any indigenous plant species with ‘Very High’ or ‘High’ value; implementation of biosecurity protocols mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites”; and maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting.</p> <p>Based on this, the Project is consistent with Policy NATC-P1.</p>
NATC-P1 Preservation and protection of natural character	<p>Avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate all other adverse effects of subdivision, use and development on the characteristics, qualities and values of the natural character of wetland, lake and river margins.</p>	<p>As discussed above, the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) has assessed the effects of the Project on the natural character of rivers, streams and wetlands. While the Project will have moderate to very high effects, none are considered to be significant.</p> <p>Mitigation measures are proposed, such as minimisation of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss; replacement planting for kauri trees and any indigenous plant species with ‘Very High’ or ‘High’ value; implementation of biosecurity protocols mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites”; and maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting.</p> <p>Based on this, the Project is consistent with Policy NATC-P1.</p>
NATC-P2 Indigenous vegetation clearance and earthworks	<p>Enable indigenous vegetation clearance and earthworks within wetland, lake and river margins where it is for:</p> <p>1. The repair or maintenance of lawfully established activities;</p> <p>2. Safe clearance for existing overhead powerlines;</p> <p>3. Health and safety of the public;</p>	<p>The Project is not directly one of the activities described by NATC-P2 (1) – (5). Indirectly however, the Project will result in significant improvements to the health and safety of the public by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ A reduction in deaths and serious injuries on the corridor by approximately 79%, from an annual average of 2.7 to 0.6.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Biosecurity reasons; and 5. The sustainable non-commercial harvest for customary activities. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The design directly addresses head on crashes which account for 30% of all crashes on the corridor. ▪ Improve access to economic and social opportunities improving the quality of life for Northland residents. <p>Refer to Section C5, Volume A for a full list of Project benefits.</p>
NATC-P3 Buildings and structures	<p>Enable buildings or structures, and additions and alterations to existing buildings or structures within wetland, lake and river margins where:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is a functional need or operational need for a building or structures to be in that location; 2. Public access, customary access and recreational use is maintained or enhanced; and 3. Any adverse effects on natural character are avoided, remedied or mitigated in accordance with NATC-P1. 	<p>There is a functional and operational need for the structures to be located within wetlands and river margins, such as culverts. Mitigation measures as discussed in the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) will be implemented to ensure that adverse effects on natural character are avoided, remedied or mitigated.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NATC-P3.</p>
NATC-P4 Restoration and enhancement	<p>Encourage the restoration and enhancement of wetland, lake and river margins where it will achieve improvement in natural character values.</p>	<p>The Project involves activities in the beds of waterbodies. The Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) has assessed the effects of the Project on the natural character of rivers, streams and wetlands as moderate to very high effects.</p> <p>To reduce the magnitude of effects of the Project on these values a number of mitigation measures are proposed, such as minimisation of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat loss; replacement planting for kauri trees and any indigenous plant species with 'Very High' or 'High' value; implementation of biosecurity protocols; mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative "Mitigation and Release Sites"; and maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting.</p> <p>This approach will ensure that the natural character of rivers is not reduced, or notable residual adverse effects exist, following completion of construction.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NATC-P4.</p>
NATC-P5 Assessment of resource consents	<p>Have regard to the following matters when assessing the effects of resource consent applications for subdivision, land use and development on the natural character of wetland, lake and river margins:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The presence or absence of buildings, structures or infrastructure; 2. The temporary or permanent nature of any adverse effects; 3. The location, scale and design of any proposed development; 4. Any means of integrating the building, structure or activity; 5. The ability of the environment to absorb change; 6. The need for and location of earthworks or indigenous vegetation clearance; 7. The operational need or functional need of any regionally significant infrastructure to be in the particular location; 8. Any viable alternative locations for the activity or development; 9. Any historical, spiritual or cultural association held by tangata whenua; 	<p>A comprehensive description of the actual and potential adverse effects of the Project on the natural character of wetland and river margins is provided within the following subsections of the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 4.2.4, in relation to Waipu. ▪ 4.3.4, in relation to the northern approaches to the Brynderwyn Hills. ▪ 4.4.3, in relation to the Brynderwyn Hills northern slopes and summit section. ▪ 4.5.3, in relation to the Brynderwyn Hills southern slopes ONL. ▪ 4.6.3, in relation to the southern approaches to the Brynderwyn Hills; and

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	10. The likelihood of the activity exacerbating natural hazards; 11. The opportunity to enhance public access and recreation; 12. The ability to improve the overall water quality; and 13. Any positive contribution the development has on the characteristics, qualities and values of natural character.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 4.7.3, in relation to the volcanic hills and Pukekaroro Stream Valley. <p>Those assessments are contextual to the environment to which they relate and may not all exhibit values listed under NATC-P6, but are appropriate to the scale and context of the Project.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NATC-P6.</p>
EW – Earthworks		
EW-O1	Earthworks are enabled where they are required to facilitate the efficient subdivision, use and development of land, while managing adverse effects, including effects on public safety, surrounding land and infrastructure.	<p>The proposed earthworks are required to facilitate the efficient development of land to support the construction of a state highway. Adverse effects arising from the earthworks will be adequately managed, as discussed in Sections D1.2 to D1.14 of Volume B.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective EW-O1.</p>
EW-P1	Enable earthworks where they provide for: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Urban land uses and development within urban zones; 2. Rural land uses and development within the rural zones; 3. Conservation and recreation activities; 4. Land drainage and flood control works; and 5. The construction, maintenance, operation and upgrading of infrastructure. 	<p>The proposed earthworks will provide for the construction, maintenance and operation of infrastructure to the extent these are necessary for the construction of the Project.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy EW-P1.</p>
EW-P2	Manage the adverse effects of earthworks by ensuring: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Earthworks occur in a coordinated and integrated manner; 2. The scale of the earthworks is consistent with the scale and form of development anticipated within the zone; 3. The stability of land is maintained, including the stability of adjoining land, infrastructure, buildings and structures; 4. The area, height or depth, location and slope of the earthworks are of an appropriate scale that will ensure the following potential adverse effects are minimised: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Visual amenity as a result of cut or fill faces and retaining structures; b. Dust from the site; c. The alteration of natural landforms and features; and d. The safe and efficient operation of the transport network and on local amenity values as a result of traffic movements; and 5. The area where earthworks have occurred is reinstated in a timely manner to minimise adverse effects on land stability and the visual amenity of the surrounding area; 6. Earthworks do not occur in locations where this would result in significant adverse effects on cultural or ecological values; and 7. Adverse effects on cultural values are avoided or appropriately managed where sensitive material is discovered (including human remains and archaeological sites) during earthworks. 	<p>The adverse effects of the Project on visual amenity arising from the cut and fill faces and the alteration of natural landforms and features have been assessed in the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B).</p> <p>The potential adverse dust effects will be addressed through the preparation of a DMP.</p> <p>The Assessment of Transport Effects (Appendix D1 of Volume B) has assessed the safe and efficient operation of the transport network as a result of traffic movements associated with the earthworks.</p> <p>The Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (Appendix D5 of Volume B) has recommended all pā sites to be avoided, and HNZPT archaeological authorities will be applied for all other sites in the Proposed Designation, ensuring that earthworks will not occur in locations where it would result in significant adverse effects on cultural values.</p> <p>As outlined in the assessment of Policy 6.6.3 above, the Project will require earthworks in some SNA / significant ecological areas in the Kaipara District however they will be avoided as much as practicable. Where they cannot be avoided, mitigation measures are proposed to ensure adverse effects on Significant Natural Areas are appropriately managed, including:</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative “Mitigation and Release Sites” to increase overall area of native forest and reducing fragmentation effects <p>Overall, the assessments have concluded that potential adverse effects will be minimised subject to implementation of the recommended mitigation measures.</p> <p>Based on this, the Project is consistent with Policy EW-P2.</p>
EW-P5	Ensure that earthworks do not compromise the safe, effective and efficient operation of infrastructure.	<p>The proposed earthworks associated with the Project will not compromise the safe, effective and efficient operation of infrastructure.</p> <p>Further, any adverse dust and traffic effects arising from the earthworks will be appropriately managed via a DMP and the implementation of a Construction Traffic Management Plan to ensure that earthworks do not compromise the safe, effective and efficient operation of infrastructure.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy EW-P5.</p>
NOISE – Noise		
NOISE-O1	Adverse effects of noise on amenity values and the health, safety and wellbeing of people and communities are managed to be reasonable and consistent with the anticipated outcomes for the receiving environment.	<p>The Project’s Indicative Alignment is located at a significant distance from most PPFs. Mitigation is proposed in the form of low noise road surface LN3 for some sections of the Indicative Alignment to ensure that adverse operational noise effects are less than minor, as discussed in the Assessment of Operational Noise Effects (Appendix D3 of Volume B). This will ensure that adverse effects of noise on amenity values and the health, safety and wellbeing of people and communities are managed to be reasonable and consistent with the anticipated outcomes for the receiving environment.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective NOISE-O1.</p>
NOISE-P1	Enable activities to generate noise that is compatible with the anticipated amenity, function and purpose of the zone and any receiving zone.	<p>As discussed above, the Project’s Indicative Alignment is located at a significant distance from most PPFs. Mitigation is proposed in the form of low noise road surface LN3 for some sections of the Indicative Alignment to ensure that adverse operational noise effects are less than minor, as discussed in the Assessment of Operational Noise Effects (Appendix D3 of Volume B). The noise generated by the Project will be compatible with the anticipated amenity and purpose of the zone, being primarily rural and residential purposes.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NOISE-P1.</p>
NOISE-P5	Adopt the best practicable option for noise from construction work to ensure the level, timing and duration of the noise and level of disruption is reasonable.	<p>The Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects (Appendix D2 of Volume B) has recommended best practice general mitigation and management measures as set out in a Construction Noise and Vibration Plan. With these mitigation measures implemented, the Project will ensure that noise and vibration levels generated by the construction of the Project will be reasonable.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		Therefore, the Project will be consistent with Objective NOISE-P5.

4. Whangārei District Planning Documents

4.1. Whangārei District Plan Operative in Part 2022 (WDP)

Table 10: Assessment against the relevant objectives and policies of the WDP.

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
District Wide Matters: District Growth and Development		
DGD-O2 Rural Areas	Protect the range of amenity values and characteristics in the Rural Area.	<p>The Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) has noted that the road will be a prominent feature on the farmland slopes and will intensify the transport character of the corridor and detract from rural amenity values. However, adverse amenity effects will be mitigated through the preparation of a LDP and LCP, including, but not limited to, revegetation of the cut and fill batters in specific areas within the Proposed Designation.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will be partially consistent with Objective DGD-O2.</p>
DGD-O4 Historic Heritage and Sense of place	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Identify and protect historic heritage resources. Maintain and enhance other characteristics, qualities and features that are valued by the community and contribute to the District's unique identity and sense of place 	<p>The Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (Appendix D5 of Volume B) has detailed the archaeological sites within the Proposed Designation. To mitigate adverse effects, the Project will avoid all pā sites within the Proposed Designation and archaeological authorities have been sought (Volume D of the Application) to modify or destroy all other archaeological sites in the Proposed Designation with a Historic Heritage Management Plan as a condition of the authorities.</p> <p>This will ensure that Whangarei District's historic heritage resources are protected where appropriate.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will be partially consistent with Objective DGD-O4.</p>
DGD-O5 Incompatible Activities and Reverse Sensitivity	Avoid conflict between incompatible land use activities from new subdivision, use and development.	<p>The Project will have mitigation measures to ensure operational noise and vibration effects are managed to be reasonable and consistent with the anticipated outcomes for the receiving environment, as discussed in the assessment against the NOISE chapter's objectives and policies above. This will ensure that the Project avoids conflict between incompatible land use activities.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will be consistent with Objective DGD-O5.</p>
DGD-O6 Indigenous Biodiversity	Identify and protect the values and attributes of indigenous biological diversity (Significant Natural Areas) and maintain the extent and diversity of other indigenous biodiversity.	<p>The Assessments of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology and Freshwater Ecology (Appendices D6 and D7 of Volume B) have detailed the values and attributes of indigenous biological diversity.</p> <p>Where the identified Significant Natural Areas cannot be avoided, mitigation measures will be implemented to ensure that their values and attributes are maintained as much as practicable. This includes, but is not limited to, replacement planting of indigenous plant species with 'Very High' or 'High' value and mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative "Mitigation and Release Sites".</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Objective DGD-O6.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
DGD-O8 Cultural Values	Ensure that growth and development takes into account Māori cultural values.	Hapū partners, including Patuharakeke and Te Parawhau have been involved in the Project since October 2024, including the assessment of alternatives, site visits, site investigations (e.g. geotechnical and ecology) and in the evaluation of cultural values. Their involvement ensures that growth and development take into account Māori cultural values and is therefore consistent with Objective DGD-O8.
DGD-O10 Hazards	Minimise the risks and impacts of natural hazard events, including the influence of climate change, on people, property and infrastructure.	<p>The Project takes into account the risks and impacts of flooding and assesses the flood impacts of the Project based on the 1% Annual Exceedance Probability (AEP) rainfall event, including the effect of climate change, as discussed in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B).</p> <p>The Project has also adopted an observation-based design to manage geotechnical risk, including the risks and impacts of land instability. Observation-based design is best practice for managing uncertainty and ensuring safe and efficient construction in complex terrain.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective DGD-O10.</p>
Regionally Significant Infrastructure Provisions		
DGD-RSI-O1 Identification and Protection	Regionally significant infrastructure is identified and protected.	<p>The Project is regionally significant infrastructure and will create significant social, economic and cultural benefits. The Proposed Designation will protect the state highway route, and facilitate future construction, operation and maintenance of the Project.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective DGD-RSI-O1.</p>
DGD-RSI-O2 Recognised Benefits	The benefits of regionally significant infrastructure are recognised and provided for.	<p>The Project is a regionally significant infrastructure that will bring a range of benefits, as discussed in Section C5 of Volume A, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Providing a more resilient and reliable transport connection between Auckland and Whangārei, by providing an alternative route to the existing Brynderwyn Hills section of SH1 and ensure more reliable access during extreme weather events. ▪ Providing a safer transport connection between Auckland and Whangārei and is expected to result in a predicted reduction of approximately 79% in deaths and serious injuries. ▪ Providing a more efficient and reliable transport connection between Auckland and Whangārei, creating travel time savings worth an estimated \$795 million (NPV). ▪ Increasing economic activity, supporting higher levels of output (GDP) and employment by providing a more resilient, reliable, safer and efficient connection linking Auckland and the Northland region. ▪ Improving connectivity and accessibility between Auckland and Northland, including improved access to economic and social opportunity, leading to a higher standard of living and quality of life. <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective RSI-O2.</p>
DGD-RSI-O3 Adverse Effects	Avoid, remedy, mitigate or offset adverse effects arising from the development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of regionally significant infrastructure.	<p>The Project implements mitigation measures to ensure that any adverse effects are principally avoided, remedied, mitigated or offset, as discussed in Sections D1.2 to D1.14 of Volume B.</p> <p>For example, this includes the following:</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reliance on NZTA's Network and Safety Performance Monitoring Programme to mitigate operational transport effects ▪ Preparation of a Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan to mitigate adverse construction noise effects and using low noise road surface in specific areas ▪ Recontouring of land, replanting, and revegetating to mitigate adverse landscape and visual effects ▪ Avoidance of pā sites and the preparation of an Historic Heritage Management Plan <p>Residual adverse effects and mitigation is discussed in the assessment of Policy 6 of the NPS-FM (Table 1.2) and Policy 4.4.1 of the RPSN (Table 2.1) relating to offsetting for residual adverse effects on Wetland 24, high value indigenous vegetation, frogs and potentially stream loss.</p> <p>Overall, the Project will ensure that the majority of adverse effects arising from the development, operation and maintenance of the Project will be avoided, remedied, mitigated or offset in a manner consistent with Objective DGD-RSI-O3.</p>
<p>Policy DGD-RSI-P1 Benefits of Regionally Significant Infrastructure</p>	<p>To recognise and provide for the social, economic and cultural benefits of regionally significant infrastructure by enabling its ongoing operation, maintenance, development, and upgrading where adverse effects are managed.</p>	<p>The Project is regionally significant infrastructure that will provide for social, economic and cultural benefits, while adverse effects will be adequately managed through avoidance, remediation, mitigation and /or offset framework in accordance with legislative requirements. These benefits are discussed in Section C5 of Volume A and include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increasing economic activity, supporting higher levels of output (GDP) and employment by providing a more resilient, reliable, safer and efficient connection linking Auckland and the Northland region. ▪ Improving connectivity and accessibility between Auckland and Northland, including improved access to economic and social opportunity, leading to a higher standard of living and quality of life. ▪ Continued engagement with hapū. <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy DGD-RSI-P1.</p>
<p>Policy DGD-RSI-P2 New Regionally Significant Infrastructure</p>	<p>Manage adverse effects created by new network utilities and regionally significant infrastructure by avoiding, remedying, mitigating, or offsetting (where offered or agreed to), while taking into account the following matters:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Benefits of the activity. 2. Any recognition within a national policy statement. 3. Constraints that limit the design and location of the activity. 4. Whether the proposal is a regionally significant infrastructure lifeline utility which meets the foreseeable needs of Northland. 5. The extent to which the adverse effects of the activity can be practicably reduced including any positive effects on the subject site or elsewhere (provided that the positive effects accrue to the community of interest and/or resource affected). 6. Any monitoring programme for identified significant adverse effects with uncertain outcomes which can be addressed by an adaptive 	<p>The adverse effects created by the Project have been adequately avoided, remedied, mitigated and/or offset taking into account the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The social, economic and cultural benefits that the Project will create following completion, and in part during construction; ▪ The constraints that limit the design and location of the activity, as described in Section C5.2 of Volume B; ▪ The Project is a regionally significant infrastructure lifeline utility which meets the foreseeable needs of Northland and connections between the Northland and Auckland regions, particularly through the Brynderwyn Hills, where the existing highway poses a high resilience risk experiencing regular short and long-term closures due to ongoing weather events. <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy DGD-RSI-P2.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<p>management regime where the infrastructure assists in achieving efficient land use.</p> <p>7. Whether the infrastructure proposal helps to achieve consolidated development and efficient use of land.</p> <p>8. Ensuring damage to or loss of the relationship of iwi with ancestral sites, sites of significance, wāhi tapu, customary activities and/or taonga is avoided or otherwise agreed to by the affected iwi or hapū.</p>	
<p>DGD-RSI-P3 Managing Adverse Effects of Existing Regionally Significant Infrastructure</p>	<p>To manage adverse effects created by the operation, maintenance and upgrading of existing network utilities and regionally significant infrastructure by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Allowing adverse effects that are not significant while the maintenance or upgrading is being undertaken. 2. Allowing any adverse effects that, after the conclusion of the maintenance or upgrading, are the same or similar to the adverse effects that existed before the maintenance or upgrading was undertaken. 3. Avoiding, remedying, mitigating, or offsetting (where offered or agreed to) adverse effects, if DGD-P17.1 or DGD-P17.2 do not apply. 4. Taking into account the following matters: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Benefits of the activity. b. Any recognition within a national policy statement. c. Constraints that limit the design and location of the activity. d. Whether the proposal is a regionally significant infrastructure lifeline utility which meets the foreseeable needs of Northland. e. The extent to which the adverse effects of the activity can be practicably reduced including any positive effects on the subject site or elsewhere (provided that the positive effects accrue to the community of interest and/or resource affected). f. Any monitoring programme for identified significant adverse effects with uncertain outcomes which can be addressed by an adaptive management regime where the infrastructure assists in achieving efficient land use. g. Whether the infrastructure proposal helps to achieve consolidated development and efficient use of land 	<p>The Project will adequately manage adverse effects, ensuring that they are either avoided, remedied, mitigated or offset as discussed in Sections D1.2 to D1.14 of Volume B.</p> <p>The benefits of the Project are outlined in Section C5 of Volume A. The Project is contained in the GPS on Land Transport (2024). The Project is a regionally significant infrastructure lifeline utility which meets the foreseeable needs of Northland, particularly through the Brynderwyn Hills, where it poses a high resilience risk experiencing regular short and long-term closures due to ongoing weather events.</p> <p>Extensive assessment of the constraints that may limit the design and location of the Project have been assessed in Alternatives Assessments (Section C5.2 of Volume B).</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy DGD-RSI-P3.</p>
<p>District Wide Matters: Energy, Infrastructure and Transport</p>		
<p>Objective NTW-O3 Provision of Network Utility Operations</p>	<p>The orderly, efficient and effective installation, operation, maintenance and minor upgrading of network utility operations throughout the District, to enable people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being and for their health and safety.</p>	<p>The Project involves the construction and operation of a state highway which will enable people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety. This includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Improving connectivity and accessibility between Auckland and Northland, including improved access to economic and social opportunity, leading to a higher standard of living and quality of life, and therefore providing for people and communities' social wellbeing;

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increasing economic activity, supporting higher levels of output (GDP) and employment by providing a more resilient, reliable, safer and efficient connection linking Auckland and the Northland region, and therefore providing for people and communities' economic wellbeing; ▪ Continued engagement with hapū. <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective NTW-O3.</p>
Objective NTW-O4 Adverse Effects and Network Utility Operation	<p>The protection of the environment from, as far as practicable, the potential adverse effects of network utility operations, particularly effects on the health and safety of communities, the natural character of the environment, sites of historical and cultural significance, and the amenity values of the surrounding area.</p>	<p>The potential adverse effects of the Project, particularly effects on the health and safety of communities, the natural character of the environment, sites of historical and cultural significance, and the amenity values of the surrounding area have been addressed in Part D of Volume B.</p> <p>Overall, the potential adverse effects will be adequately managed by the mitigation measures proposed and will ensure the environment is protected from the potential adverse effects, as far as practicable.</p> <p>Based on this, the Project is consistent with Objective NTW-O4.</p>
Objective NTW-O5 Protection of Network Utility Operations	<p>The protection of network utility operations from the adverse effects of adjacent land use and development.</p>	<p>As the Project, being a state highway, is not a sensitive land use, adverse effects of adjacent land use and development on the Project will be minimal.</p> <p>The Project will ensure that access to the existing Transpower infrastructure and electricity towers is maintained and is not compromised and will therefore avoid adverse effects on the electricity transmission network.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective NTW-O5.</p>
Policy NTW-P5 Safe and Efficient Use and Development of the National Grid and Adjacent Land	<p>To ensure safe and efficient use and development of the national grid and adjacent land by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Avoiding sensitive activities within the national grid corridor; 2. Ensuring that land use, subdivision and development do not compromise the operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the national grid; 3. Managing subdivision to facilitate good amenity and urban design outcomes near the national grid; and 4. Not foreclosing operation or maintenance options or, to the extent practicable, the carrying out of routine and planned upgrade works. 	<p>The Project will continue to ensure safe and efficient use and development of the national grid and adjacent land as it will maintain access to the existing Transpower infrastructure and electricity towers. This will ensure that the operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the national grid is not compromised.</p> <p>The Project will provide for a new state highway, which is not a sensitive activity. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NTW-P5.</p>
Policy NTW-P10 Provision of Network Utility Operations Services	<p>The orderly and efficient provision of network utility operations should be enabled, and the essential nature and operational needs of network utility operations should be taken in to account, when assessing the location, design and operation of these services.</p>	<p>The Project is a network utility operation and has an operational need in its current location, as identified through the Alternatives Assessment process discussed in Section C5.2 of Volume B.</p> <p>NZTA also has a statutory objective under section 94 of the LTMA to undertake its functions in a way that contributes to an effective, efficient, and safe land transport system in the public interest.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NTW-P10.</p>
Policy NTW-P11 Environmental Effects of Network Utility Operations	<p>Network utility operations should be sited, designed and operated in such a way that the adverse effects on the environment will be avoided, remediated or mitigated, as far as practicable. When siting and designing network utility facilities, particular regard should be made to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Areas of Outstanding Landscape value; 	<p>The Project's location and design have taken into account areas of Outstanding Landscape value, significant ecological areas, ridgelines and heritage buildings as discussed in the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) and the Assessment of Effects on Archaeology (Appendix D5 of Volume B). Where those assessments have identified actual or potential effects, a series of mitigation measures</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Outstanding Natural Features; Significant Ecological Areas; The natural character of the coastal environment; Ridgelines and skylines; Heritage Buildings, Sites and Objects; Sites of Significance to Māori. 	<p>are included and have been taken into account in the mitigation measures or conditions of consent proposed by NZTA in Appendix E of Volume B. Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NTW-P11.</p>
Policy NTW-P12 Amenity Values of Network Utility Operations	<p>The adverse effects of network utility operations should be avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as reasonably practicable in accordance with the amenity values of the different Zones. In the Residential Zones, the Settlement Zone, the Strategic Rural Industries Zone, the commercial centres and in the Open Space and Recreation Zones, telecommunication and electrical services should be underground or by wireless link, where practicable. In other environments, undergrounding or wireless links should be encouraged, but where this is not practicable, feasible services should be sited and designed so as to minimise adverse effects on amenity values.</p>	<p>A Landscape Design Plan and Landscape Concept Plans will be prepared to ensure the adverse effects of the Project are avoided, remedied or mitigated as far as reasonably practicable in accordance with the amenity values of the different Zones. This will mitigate the landscape, visual amenity values in the rural Zone.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NTW-P12.</p>
Policy NTW-P13 Health and Safety of Network Utility Operations	<p>Network utility operations should be installed, sited, designed, operated, maintained and upgraded in compliance with the relevant (national, international or industry) standards, codes of practice or guidelines in order to avoid, remedy or mitigate potential adverse effects on the health and safety of people.</p>	<p>The Project will be designed and operated in accordance with relevant standards and guidelines to ensure that any potential adverse effects on the health and safety of people are avoided, remedied or mitigated and is therefore consistent with Policy NTW-P13.</p>
Policy NTW-P15 Subdivision, Use and Development	<p>Subdivision, use and development of land should not compromise the safe and efficient operation of, and access to, existing and proposed network utility operations.</p>	<p>The Project will not compromise the safe and efficient operation of, and access to, existing and proposed network utility operations, such as Transpower's existing electricity transmission network. The Project will ensure that access to transmission structures is maintained throughout both construction and operational phases.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NTW-P15.</p>
Transport		
TRA-O1 Transport Network	<p>Provide and maintain a safe, efficient, accessible and sustainable transport network while avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on the environment, adjoining land uses and the surrounding amenity and character.</p>	<p>The Assessment of Transport Effects (Appendix D1 of Volume B) has concluded that the operational transport effects created by the Project are positive, helping improve safety and resilience and increasing the capacity of the existing state highway network.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective TRA-O1.</p>
TRA-O5 Urban Design	<p>Design and locate transport infrastructure in a manner that is consistent with the amenity and urban design outcomes anticipated for the zone.</p>	<p>The WDP states that the Rural Production Zone exhibits a high degree of privacy, rural outlook, spaciousness, and quietness.</p> <p>The Project is not an urban, rural or rural residential form of development and therefore the design standards related to interface between the transport network and property are not necessarily applicable. In a similar manner, neither the TRA- and RPROZ- sections of the WDP contain statements that describe how major transport infrastructure must be developed so as to interface with the underlying zones, but rather focus on the interface (and reverse sensitivity effects) between sensitive land use, major infrastructure and regionally significant industry. Regardless, design of the Project has taken into account operational noise effects and compatibility with existing land uses.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<p>The assessment in Section D4.2 of Volume 2 concludes that all PPF's in all zones crossed by the Indicative Alignment will generally receive significantly reduced noise levels following the move of SH1 traffic away from these receivers, with the exception of several locations in Zone 1 where mitigation treatments can be applied through low-noise generating pavements to reduce these increases. With mitigation, the Project will not have an adverse effect on those properties.</p> <p>The Project is therefore consistent with TRA-O5.</p>
<p>TRA-P1 Design, Construction and Maintenance</p>	<p>To design, construct and maintain roads, cycleways, walkways, public transport infrastructure, car parks and pedestrian access in a manner that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Provides a safe and efficient transport network. 2. Enables the efficient provision of network utility infrastructure while providing for suitable streetscape amenity including lighting and landscaping. 3. Has regard to the future capacity and growth of the transport network. 4. Is multi-modal and provides for the needs of all users, as appropriate for the surrounding environment and the function of the road within the transport network hierarchy. 5. Avoids no exit roads where through roads and connected networks can be designed, particularly in commercial and industrial areas. 6. Provides pedestrian and cyclist access to connect roads and public spaces where they would offer a shorter route. 7. Ensures accessways to multiple sites are constructed to an acceptable standard and vested as a public road where appropriate. 8. Appropriately manages stormwater to ensure the risk of flooding is not increased and water quality is maintained. 	<p>The Project will provide a safe and efficient transport network, as detailed in the Assessment of Transport Effects (Appendix D1 of Volume B).</p> <p>Appropriate stormwater controls are proposed to ensure the risk of flooding is not increased following the completion of construction nor water quality further degraded, as detailed in the Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B).</p> <p>The design for the Project has an appreciable amenity and streetscape consistent with the function of the corridor as a high-volume route between Auckland and Northland. A landscape framework for the integration of the Project into the local context will guide the design development of the Project so that it can be integrated into the landscape.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy TRA-P1.</p>
<p>TRA-P2 Roads</p>	<p>Allow new public roads or major roading upgrades to public roads where the location and design of the road:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Provides for the needs of all users, as appropriate for the surrounding environment and the function of the road within the transport network hierarchy. 2. Minimises adverse effects on surrounding sensitive activities, including severance effects and streetscape amenity. 3. Maintains or enhances the safety and efficiency of the transport network. 4. Does not compromise, and where possible provides, connections to surrounding areas, particularly for buses, pedestrians, and cyclists. 5. Provides sufficient area for landscaping and tree planting in appropriate areas while balancing the need to maintain safety and provide underground services and footpaths. 6. Contributes to positive urban design outcomes within the Urban Area. 	<p>The Project will provide for the needs of all users that require use of the state highway corridor and the modes of transport used by those people and communities.</p> <p>Adverse effects on surrounding sensitive activities, including severance effects and streetscape amenity, have been addressed in Part D of Volume B.</p> <p>The Project will not compromise connections to surrounding areas, including for pedestrians and cyclists.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy TRA-P2.</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
Contaminated Land		
Objective CL-O1 Adverse Effects on the Environment	The use, management and development of contaminated sites in a way that ensures that the adverse effects on the environment are avoided, remedied or mitigated to acceptable environmental levels.	<p>The Proposed Designation is through predominantly rural and rural-residential land uses and therefore the potential for HAIL sites is low. The Project will ensure that the use and development of contaminated land is managed so that the adverse effects on the environment are avoided, remedied or mitigated to acceptable environmental levels through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Undertaking a DSI. ▪ Preparing a CSMP for any medium risk sites impacted and for the accidental discovery at BH2B_1160 and a RAP, if the CSMP identifies contaminated soils requiring remediation. ▪ Preparing a Site Validation Report following the completion of a RAP (if required). ▪ Specifying management of soil (reuse framework) and groundwater, with possible groundwater treatment measures required for area impacted at BH2B_1160. <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective CL-O1.</p>
Objective CL-O2 Adverse Effects on Human Health and Safety	Minimisation of the adverse effects of contaminated sites on human health and safety.	<p>The Project will ensure that the use and development of contaminated land is managed so that the adverse effects on human health and safety are avoided, remedied or mitigated to acceptable environmental levels through implementing the mitigation measures outlined above.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective CL-O2.</p>
Policy CL-P2 Remediation	To avoid subdivision, use or development of contaminated land that presents a risk to health, safety or the environment, unless contamination is remedied or mitigated to acceptable environmental levels	<p>The Project will incorporate the mitigation measures outlined above. This will ensure that if contaminated land will present a risk to health, safety or the environment, soil contamination will be remedied or mitigated to acceptable environmental levels.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy CL-P2.</p>
Policy CL-P3 Removal of Matter	To contain the extent of contamination by avoiding the removal of soil or matter from a contaminated site, or where appropriate, to allow the excavation of contaminated material and to ensure that such material is stored, transported and disposed of in an appropriate manner.	<p>If contaminated material is found during construction, the excavated contaminated material will be stored, transported and disposed of in an appropriate manner in accordance with the recommendations of a CSMP and/or RAP, and therefore the Project is consistent with Policy CL-P3.</p>
Natural Hazards		
Objective NH-O1 Adverse Effects of Natural Hazards	The adverse effects of natural hazards on people, property and the environment are avoided, as far as practicable, or otherwise remedied or mitigated.	<p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) has assessed the existing flood model scenario and the design scenario as a result of the Project. Based on this, a range of mitigation measures are proposed to reduce or manage the potential flooding effects, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Providing a report to Council prior to works starting to demonstrate that the Project will not, as far as reasonably practicable, increase water levels in the 100 year ARI event by more than: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 100mm vertically in areas that are outside the Proposed Designation at the time of construction and outside the banks of a watercourse or wetland; and ○ 0mm above floor level of any habitable building in areas outside the site

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Providing a report to Council prior to works starting to demonstrate that any headwater ponding upstream of any Project culvert in the 100 year ARI event is contained within either land within the Proposed Designation at the time of construction or an existing watercourse, wetland or floodplain. <p>In terms of land instability, the Project will adopt an observations-based design to manage geotechnical risk. This will allow for ongoing refinement of design during construction to continue managing land instability risk.</p> <p>Considering the above, the Project is consistent with Objective NH-O1.</p>
Policy NH-P1 Natural Hazard Effects	<p>To ensure that subdivision, use and development do not increase the risk from, occurrence of, or the adverse effects of natural hazards.</p>	<p>The Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects (Appendix D11 of Volume B) has noted that there may be an increase in maximum flood levels to existing roads and assets outside the Proposed Designation. Therefore, mitigation measures will be implemented, as discussed above, and in Section D11.2.2 of Volume B.</p> <p>To mitigate and manage potential land instability risk, the Project will implement an observation-based design, which is best practice for managing uncertainty and ensuring safe and efficient construction in complex terrain.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P1.</p>
Policy NH-P2 Location of Activities	<p>To avoid subdivision, use and development in identified natural hazard areas where the natural hazard is likely to impact adversely upon human health and safety, property and infrastructure.</p>	<p>It is not possible for the Project to avoid natural hazards altogether and the Project is in close proximity, on and over existing water bodies. The Project will however ensure that human health, safety, property and infrastructure are not adversely impacted by flooding (including climate change induced events) through appropriate mitigation measures, such as providing a report to Council prior to works starting to demonstrate that any headwater ponding upstream of any Project culvert in the 100 year ARI event is contained within either land within the Proposed Designation at the time of construction or an existing watercourse, wetland or floodplain.</p> <p>Parts of the Project will need to be located within areas subject to landslide risk. The Project will adopt an observation-based design to manage this geotechnical risk.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P2.</p>
Policy NH-P7 Flood Flow Paths	<p>To ensure that subdivision, use and development does not obstruct the flood flow paths of rivers and the efficient functioning of natural drainage systems.</p>	<p>There will be proposed works required within the flood flow paths of rivers, including the location of the road embankments and placement of culverts. However, adequate mitigation measures will be in place to ensure that this does not create additional flooding risks, such as a report being provided to Council prior to works starting to demonstrate that the Project will not, as far as reasonably practicable, increase water levels in the 100 year ARI event.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with Policy NH-P7.</p>
Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity		
Objective ECO-O1 Maintain and Enhance Ecosystems and Biodiversity	<p>Maintenance and enhancement of the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems, and the biodiversity of the District.</p>	<p>The Project will maintain and enhance the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems and the biodiversity of the District, following implementation of mitigation and/or offset measures. For example, the loss of native vegetation and native fauna species habitat will be minimised through detailed design and construction methodology. Any loss of indigenous plant</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		<p>species with 'Very High' or 'High' Value will be replaced at a ratio of 1:1. Further there will be mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative "Mitigation and Release Sites" to increase the area of native forest at the mitigation sites, provide alternative habitat and reduce fragmentation effects.</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective ECO-O1.</p>
Objective ECO-O2 Protection of Significant Indigenous Vegetation and Fauna	Protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.	<p>The Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology (Appendix D6 of Volume B) has detailed areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna. To protect these areas to the extent practicable, the design has avoided high value habitats of significant flora and fauna. However, where they cannot be avoided, mitigation measures are proposed, including replacement planting for kauri trees and any indigenous plant species with 'Very High' or 'High' value, and mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation at the indicative "Mitigation and Release Sites".</p> <p>The Project is not considered to be inappropriate as it will provide a more resilient life-line utility, while managing the protection of significant habitats. Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Objective ECO-O2.</p>
Policy ECO-P1 Significant Indigenous vegetation and Significant Habitats of Indigenous Fauna	To recognise as significant, and provide protection for, indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna, including indigenous wetlands, which are of Moderate, Moderate-High, High and Outstanding value using the criteria set out in ECO-SCHED1.	The indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna have been recognised and provided protection based on the approach of the Ecological Impact Assessment Guidelines (2nd Edition) published by the EIANZ.
Policy ECO-P3 Enhancement	To promote the enhancement of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna that have been, or may be, degraded by inappropriate subdivision, use and development.	<p>As discussed above, the Project will enhance some areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna through mitigation planting and enhancement of existing vegetation, and maintenance and monitoring requirements for mitigation planting.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Objective ECO-O2.</p>
Policy ECO-P4 Effects	To avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of land use activities on areas of indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna, including areas of value to tangata whenua, as determined by ECO-SCHED1, so as to maintain its ecological values.	<p>Maintenance of ecological value requires minimal intervention, to the extent necessary to avoid further degradation of values. As discussed, the Project cannot avoid the modification or clearance of some freshwater and terrestrial habitats for flora and fauna, however, impacts on the values and ecological conditions of habitats affected by the Project will be mitigated and enhanced at the indicative "Mitigation and Release Sites".</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Policy ECO-P4.</p>
Natural Features and Landscapes		
Objective NFL-O5 Existing Land Use and Development	Recognise existing land use and development, including regionally significant infrastructure, form part of the characteristics and qualities of the environment where they are located in or on Outstanding Natural Features and Outstanding Natural Landscapes.	<p>The existing state highway (to the east of the Project) traverses the Outstanding Natural Landscapes through the Brynderwyn Hills and therefore forms part of the characteristics and qualities of the environment. The Project, and its associated character and effects on the ONL takes into account the nature and magnitude of change, including cumulative matters, in assessing landscape, natural character and amenity effects (refer to the assessments at D5.2 and D5.3 (Volume B) and the Assessment of Landscape and Natural Character Effects, Subsections 4.2 - 4.7 (Appendix D4)).</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		Therefore, the Project is consistent with Objective NFL-O5.
Policy NFL-P5 Effects of Subdivision, Use and Development	<p>Subdivision, use and development in or on an Outstanding Natural Landscape shall be located and designed to avoid, adverse effects on characteristics and qualities of the landscape and/or visual effects by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Being integrated with identified characteristics and qualities of Outstanding Natural Landscapes; 2. Avoiding sensitive landforms such as ridgelines, headlands and peninsulas; 3. Being responsive to natural contours; 4. Being visually unobtrusive; 5. Maintaining established areas and patterns of indigenous vegetation cover; and 6. Avoiding permanent earthworks scarring. 	<p>The Proposed Designation passes through the Brynderwyn Hills ONL for approximately 800m between CH 19800 and 20600. Within this location, the Project will have the following adverse effects on the ONL's landscape values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reductions in natural values due to the clearance of native forest, with batters and associated clearance extending beyond the road footprint due to the steep slopes and stepped batters required. ▪ The extent and visibility of batters will be visible in the landscape and detract from aesthetic values. ▪ The Project will have cumulative effects in conjunction with the existing SH1 batters on the prominence and landform of the hillside. <p>To address adverse effects on the ONL, the Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects (Appendix D4 of Volume B) has discussed mitigation measures to mitigate adverse effects on the Outstanding Natural Landscape, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Preparation of an LDP and LCP to be submitted as part of the Outline plan of Works application to relevant local authorities. <p>Therefore, the Project is partially consistent with Policy NFL-P5.</p>
General District-Wide Matters: Earthworks		
EW-O2 Kauri Dieback Disease	<p>Avoid the spread of plant pathogens including <i>Phytophthora Agathidicida</i> (Kauri Dieback Disease).</p>	<p>The Project will ensure that machinery and equipment used to support / enable construction activities will be checked and cleaned before being transported to, from and within spatially distinct ecological environments to avoid the spread of plant pathogens (as required by the National Pest Management Plan for Kauri).</p> <p>Overall, the Project is consistent with Objective EW-O2.</p>
General District-Wide Matters: Noise and Vibration		
NAV-O1 Objective 1	<p>To enable a mix of activities to occur from a range of zones, while ensuring that noise and vibration is managed within appropriate levels for the health and wellbeing of people and communities, and for the amenity and character of the local environment.</p>	<p>As described in the Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects (Appendix D2) the Project will manage construction noise and vibration by ensuring works comply with relevant noise and vibration standards where practicable, and otherwise requiring preparation of a schedule to set out the BPO for minimising any noise and vibration effects that cannot comply with the aforementioned criteria.</p> <p>As noted in the Assessment of Operational Noise Effects (Appendix D3 of Volume B), mitigation measures will be in place to ensure that operational noise is appropriate (for example, g use of low noise type of asphalt surface for specific stretches of the Indicative Alignment). This outcome will be secured through the conditions, requiring a report to be provided to the relevant local authorities within 12 months of installation of any noise mitigation measures to ensure compliance with the relevant standards. Notwithstanding, it is recognised that rural environments are actively worked for primary production, and transient noise associated with machinery is not unusual or unanticipated in these environments.</p> <p>Therefore, the proposed mitigation approach will ensure that noise and vibration is managed within appropriate levels for the health and wellbeing</p>

Reference	Objective / Policy	Comment
		of people and communities, and for the amenity and character of the local environment and the Project is consistent with Objective NAV-O1.
NAV-P3 Policy 3	<p>To ensure that high noise generating activities located in noise sensitive areas maintain the characteristic amenity values of each zone by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishing noise limits that are consistent with anticipated noise and vibration levels in each zone. b. Requiring high noise generating activities to provide suitable mitigation measures to maintain appropriate noise levels for the health and wellbeing of people and communities, and for the amenity and character of the local zone. 	<p>The Project's Indicative Alignment is located at a significant distance from most PPFs. Mitigation is proposed, including ensuring the Detailed Design of the Project comply with the relevant operational noise criteria, which may include using low noise type of asphalt surface for specific stretches of the Indicative Alignment and providing a report to the relevant local authorities within 12 months of installation of any noise mitigation measures to ensure compliance with the relevant standards. This mitigation will ensure that the characteristics and amenity values of the rural zone can be maintained.</p> <p>Therefore, the Project is consistent with NAV-P3 Policy 3.</p>

Appendix D

Technical Assessments

D1 - Assessment of Transport Effects

D2 - Assessment of Construction Noise and Vibration Effects

D3 - Assessment of Operational Noise Effects

D4 - Assessment of Landscape and Visual Effects

D5 - Assessment of Effects on Archaeology

D6 - Assessment of Effects on Terrestrial Ecology

D7 - Assessment of Effects on Freshwater Ecology

D8 - Assessment of Effects on Avifauna Ecology

D9 - Assessment of Contaminated Land Effects

D10 - Construction Water Assessment

D11 - Assessment of Operational Stormwater and Flooding Effects

D12 - Assessment of Effects on Groundwater

Appendix E

Proposed Conditions (NoR and RC)

NORTHLAND CORRIDOR – BRYNDERYWN HILLS SECTION OF THE ALTERNATIVE TO THE BRYNDERWYN HILLS PROJECT – PROPOSED DESIGNATION CONDITIONS

Draft as at 2 April 2026

Designation to construct, operate, maintain and improve a state highway and associated infrastructure for the Brynderwyn Hills section of the Alternative to the Brynderwyn Hills project.

Definitions

Term	Definition
AS2187-2:2006	Australian Standard 2187-2:2006 Explosives – Storage and use - Part 2: Use of explosives.
Active Nest	A nest containing or suspected to contain one or more nesting bird(s) and/or viable nest contents, being one or more egg(s) and/or chick(s) as identified by a Suitably Qualified Person.
Best Practicable Option	Has the meaning in s2 of the RMA.
Completion of Construction	When construction of the Project (or relevant part of the Project) is complete, and the Project (or relevant part of the Project) is open for public use.
Consents	The resource consents issued by the Expert Panel authorising the Project (reference #RC01-RC05)
Council	[Kaipara District Council / Whangārei District Council]
Designation	The designation(s) subject to these conditions, included in the Kaipara District Plan / Whangārei District Plan.

Term	Definition
Establishment Works	<p>Preliminary activities undertaken in advance of construction activities commencing, including within a particular stage or geographic area, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. site-wide geotechnical investigations and material reuse testing and earthwork methodology; b. topographical surveys; c. ecological, cultural, archaeological and heritage surveys; d. baseline monitoring; e. contaminated land testing; f. protection of and/or relocation of utilities; g. formation of access tracks and haul roads, or reconfiguration of existing of tracks or roads; h. development of construction yards and main site offices; i. property fencing and demarcation of areas where construction activities will not occur; and j. clearance of vegetation associated with establishment works (and clearing buildings and other features).
First Gas	First Gas Limited
Gas Pipeline	First Gas Limited Maungaturoto Gas Mainline
Iwi Representatives	Representatives authorised on behalf of Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board and Te Parawhau (as relevant to their respective rohe).
ISO 4866:2010	ISO 4866:2010 Mechanical vibration and shock – Vibration of fixed structures – Guidelines for the measurement of vibrations and evaluation of their effects on structures
Management Plans	Refers to the management plans required by Conditions [DX].
National Grid Transmission Assets	Henderson to Marsden A (220kV high voltage transmission line) (HEN-MDN-A).
NZS6803	New Zealand Standard 6803:1999: Acoustics – Construction Noise.
NZS6806	New Zealand Standard 6806:2010 Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads.

Term	Definition
Occupied buildings used for activities sensitive to noise	Any dwelling, visitor accommodation, boarding house, marae, papakāinga, supported residential care, care centres, and classrooms in education facilities occupied by receivers of noise.
Outline Plan	An outline plan prepared in accordance with s176A of the RMA.
PPF	Habitable spaces in buildings used for residential activities, marae, spaces within buildings used for overnight patient medical care, teaching areas and sleeping rooms in buildings used as educational facilities; and playgrounds that are part of educational facilities that are within 20m of buildings used for teaching purposes.
Project	The construction, operation and maintenance of the Brynderwyn Hills section of the Alternative to the Brynderwyn Hills project.
Project Works	Activities undertaken to construct the Project.
Requiring Authority	New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi.
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991.
Sensitive Site	A sensitive site includes houses and low-rise residential buildings, theatres, schools, and other similar buildings occupied by people. A site is sensitive in relation to blasting.
Suitably Qualified Person	A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability and competence in the relevant field of expertise.
Transpower	Transpower NZ Ltd
Wildlife Approval	The approval issued by the Expert Panel under the Wildlife Act 1953 for the Project (Reference WA#).
Working Day	Has the meaning in s2 of the RMA.

GENERAL CONDITIONS

- D1 Project Works shall not be undertaken in the following “Avoid Areas” shown on the Map in Appendix [x].
- D2 The Designation will lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the District Plan.

D3 Following Completion of Construction, Conditions [DX]-[DX] cease to have effect and do not apply to any subsequent work associated with the ongoing operation and maintenance of the Project.

OUTLINE PLAN OF WORKS AND MANAGEMENT PLANS

D4 An Outline Plan(s) may be submitted in stages to reflect any proposed staging (eg. activity, location or timing) of the Project Works, and if submitted in stages, the scope is to be commensurate with the nature, scale and effects of the proposed works of that stage.

D5 A Management Plan(s) required by these conditions will be included and processed as part of Outline Plan(s), and may therefore be staged as described in Condition [D4].

D6 A Management Plan(s) may be updated at any time by submitting an amendment to Council for information. However, where a change to a Management Plan may result in more than minor adverse effects, the amendment must be submitted to Council as an update to the Outline Plan prior to implementation of the amendment.

D7 The requirement for an Outline Plan for Establishment Works is waived under section 176A(2)(c) of the RMA.

D8 A Management Plan(s) shall be implemented for the duration of the specific activities and / or stage to which it relates.

D9 Management Plans, Schedules, plans and reports required by Conditions [D16], [D18], [D23], [D35], [D37] and [D44] shall be prepared by Suitably Qualified Person(s).

D10 Management Plans, plans and reports required by Conditions [D23], [D35] and [D37] shall be prepared in consultation with Iwi Representatives, include a summary of this consultation and outline either how feedback has been incorporated, or if not, the reasons for that.

CONSTRUCTION NOISE AND VIBRATION

Noise Criteria

D11 Construction noise shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS6803 and shall, as far as practicable, comply with the following criteria:

(a) Occupied buildings used for activities sensitive to noise:

	Time period		
		dB L _{Aeq}	dB L _{AFmax}
Weekdays	0630-0730	55	75
	0730-1800	70	85
	1800-2000	65	80

	2000-0630	45	75
Saturdays	0630-0730	45	75
	0730-1800	70	85
	1800-2000	45	75
	2000-0630	45	75
Sundays and public holidays	0630-0730	45	75
	0730-1800	55	85
	1800-2000	45	75
	2000-0630	45	75

(b) Other occupied buildings:

Time period	dB L _{Aeq}
0730-1800	70
1800-0730	75

Vibration Criteria

D12 Construction vibration shall be measured in accordance with ISO 4866:2010 and as far as practicable, comply with the following criteria:

Receiver	Location	Detail	Category A	Category B
Buildings occupied by activities sensitive to noise	Inside the building	Night-time 2000h – 0630h	0.3mm/s PPV	1mm/s PPV
		Daytime 0630h – 2000h	1mm/s PPV	5mm/s PPV
Other occupied buildings	Inside the building	Daytime 0630h – 2000h	2mm/s PPV	5mm/s PPV
All other buildings	Building Foundation	Vibration – transient	5mm/s PPV	BS 5228-2 Table B.2
		Vibration – continuous	5mm/s PPV	BS 5228-2 50% of Table B.2 values

Blasting noise and vibration criteria

D13 Any blast shall be designed to comply with the following noise and vibration limits:

Category	Type of blasting operations	Peak component particle velocity (PPV)	Peak sound pressure level
Sensitive Site	Operations lasting longer than 12 months or more than 20 blasts	5 mm/s for 95% blasts per year, 10 mm/s maximum unless agreement is reached with the occupier that a higher limit may apply	115 dBL for 95% blasts per year, 120 dBL maximum unless agreement is reached with the occupier that a higher limit may apply
Occupied non-Sensitive Sites	All blasting	25 mm/s maximum unless agreement is reached with occupier that a higher limit may apply.	125 dBL maximum unless agreement is reached with occupier that a higher limit may apply.

Construction Noise and Vibration Management Outcomes

D14 During the Project Works, the following noise and vibration management measures shall be implemented:

(a) Best Practicable Option management and mitigation to be applied on and off-site to avoid generating unnecessary noise and vibration;

(b) Measures to communicate with receivers within Occupied buildings used for activities sensitive to noise within 200m of:

(i) Project Works; and

(ii) blasting activities, about the timing, duration and frequency of blasting prior to blasting taking place; and

(c) A training programme for staff undertaking activities that may generate adverse noise and vibration effects so that they are aware of potential noise and vibration effects and how these are to be managed.

D15 For the duration of Project Works, a report shall be submitted to the Council annually describing how the measures in Condition [D14] have been implemented over the past 12 months.

Site-specific Schedules

D16 If a construction activity during Project Works is predicted or measured to result in an exceedance of the noise and/or vibration criteria in Conditions [D11] to [D13], a Schedule shall be prepared in consultation with the owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule. The objective of a Schedule is to set out the Best

Practicable Option for minimising the noise and/or vibration effects of an activity that cannot practicably comply with the criteria in Conditions [D11] to [D13].

- D17 A Schedule shall include, as a minimum, the following details:
- (a) the start and finish dates, equipment and methodology for the activity;
 - (b) a plan showing the location of the activity and the receivers to be affected by a measured or predicted exceedance;
 - (c) for each identified receiver, the predicted noise and/or vibration levels and durations of the exceedance;
 - (d) the proposed site-specific noise and/or vibration mitigation measures that are proposed to be adopted and any mitigation options that have been discounted as being impracticable, and the reasons why;
 - (e) a summary of the consultation undertaken with each identified receiver, and how consultation has been considered;
 - (f) the locations, times and types of any monitoring;
 - (g) where an activity is predicted to exceed the Category A vibration criteria in Condition [D12], a requirement to offer to undertake a pre-activity building condition survey in accordance with the requirements of Condition [D21];
- D18 A Schedule shall be prepared if a construction activity during Project Works is proposed to occur within:
- (a) 50m of the National Grid Transmission Assets; or
 - (b) 20m of the Gas Pipeline (where operational);

Condition D19 has been intentionally left blank.

- D20 Each Schedule required by Conditions [D16] and [D18] shall be submitted to Council for information at least 5 Working Days, except in unforeseen circumstances, prior to the start of the activity to which the Schedule applies, and shall be implemented for the duration of that activity.

Building condition survey

- D21 If an exceedance of the Daytime Category A vibration criteria in Condition [D12] is predicted to occur due to the Project Works, the Requiring Authority shall:
- (a) Engage with receivers expected to be, or actually, affected by the exceedance;
 - (b) Offer to undertake a pre-construction building survey to any buildings affected by the exceedance;
 - (c) If the offer in (b) is accepted, conduct a condition survey. The survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person and shall document the condition of the building and structures following best practice, using written descriptions, photographs and measurements as required. The survey shall also confirm the Line 1, 2 or 3 classification(s) of the building(s) in accordance with DIN4150-3;

(d) Where a pre-construction building survey has been undertaken in accordance with (c), offer to undertake a post-construction building condition survey following completion of the exceeding activity;

(e) If the offer in (d) is accepted, conduct a post-construction building survey. The survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person as soon as practicable and shall identify any damage (being detrimental cosmetic or structural damage to the building) that has occurred as a result of the Project Works (as assessed by a Suitably Qualified Person);

(f) Where damage to a building is identified as resulting from the Project Works in accordance with (e), within 10 Working Days of completion of the post-construction building survey, offer to the owners of the building to fix that damage; and

(g) If the offer is accepted, fix the damage without undue delay following acceptance of the offer.

D22 If an offer made under Condition [D21](b), (d) or (f) is not responded to within four weeks of the offer being made, the offer will be deemed to have not been accepted (unless the Requiring Authority agrees to a longer time period in the particular circumstance). If an offer is not accepted within twelve weeks of the offer being made, it will be deemed to have not been accepted.

LANDSCAPE

Landscape Planting

D23 Before starting Project Works, a **Landscape Concept Plan (LCP)** shall be prepared. The LCP shall include drawings and descriptions (where appropriate) of the landscape planting to be implemented during the Project Works.

D24 The LCP shall, where practicable, include drawings or a description of the following matters:

(a) Retention of existing substantial, native vegetation;

(b) Use of eco-sourced native vegetation; and

(c) Planting specifications (including sourcing, site preparation and planting, specifications such as density, species composition, and species micro-siting).

D25 The LCP shall include the following elements as shown on the maps in Appendix [x], where relevant:

(a) If the Kahikatea / Tōtara Stands, replacement planting of kahikatea / tōtara;

(b) Revegetation of cut and fill batters in the following locations:

(i) if the alignment crosses the Bush-clad Escarpment, in proximity to the Puriri Downs Stream or the wetland; and

(ii) the summit area, northern slopes and northern approaches of the Brynderwyn Hills;

(c) Revegetation of any spoil disposal sites located in the Summit Area of the Brynderwyn Hills;

(d) Planting of stream diversions in the Tributary of the Pukekaroro Stream:

(e) If the meander loop of the Waihoihoi River is diverted, recreation of an equivalent meander loop, including planting of indigenous riparian vegetation;

(f) A 10m wide riparian buffer on the southern side of the Piroa Stream;

(g) Where cuts are proposed to occur through the Saddle of the Volcanic Hills north of Kaiwaka, planting of indigenous plant species in the following areas:

(i) on cut batters; and

(ii) within the upper parts of the tributary valley of the Pukekaroro Stream; and

(h) A description of how the landscape planting required by this condition will integrate with any planting required by Conditions [D28] and conditions of the Consents.

D26 The LCPs shall be implemented during the Project Works.

D27 Planting implemented through the LCPs under Condition [D26] shall:

(a) where practicable, be undertaken within the first planting season following Completion of Construction;

(b) have pest plant control for a five-year period following planting; and

(c) have replacement planting as necessary for a five-year period or until 80% canopy cover is achieved (whichever is less).

ECOLOGY

Indigenous vegetation

D28 Mitigation planting shall be undertaken at the following ratios where the Project results in the loss of:

(a) kauri (*Agathis australis*) greater than 50cm in diameter at breast height (1.4m) – at a ratio of at least 50:1; and

(b) areas greater than 0.25 hectares of Very High indigenous plant species – at a ratio of 1:1 (area).

D29 Any mitigation planting required by Condition [D28] shall be determined by a Suitably Qualified Person and shall meet the following requirements:

(a) undertaken within two years of the loss;

(b) be planted in suitable locations, at appropriate spacing for the relevant plant species;

(c) eco-sourced from the same ecological district as the indigenous plant species lost, or a neighbouring ecological district; and

(d) of a suitable species and plant composition to address the indigenous plant species lost.

D30 Any mitigation planting required by the Wildlife Approvals shall satisfy the requirements of [D28].

D31 Any mitigation planting shall be maintained for a period of five years.

Bats

D32 During vegetation clearance, protocols shall be implemented to avoid direct mortality to bats. The protocols shall:

(a) be consistent with the Department of Conservation 'Protocols for minimising the risk of felling bat roosts' (Version 4, October 2024); and

(b) include physical delineation of works, communication procedures and protective banding to minimise the risk of accidental or unnecessary vegetation removal.

D33 Before the start of Project Works, a report shall be prepared outlining the protocols that will be implemented during any vegetation clearance, and how these will be consistent with the requirements of Condition [D32].

D34 The report prepared in accordance with [D34] shall be provided to Council for information.

Avifauna

Vegetation clearance

D35 Before starting Project Works, an **Avifauna Management Plan (AMP)** shall be prepared. The purpose of the AMP is to appropriately manage adverse effects on indigenous bird species.

D36 The AMP shall include:

(a) Methods that will be implemented to undertake pre-construction surveys before clearing vegetation (excluding grazed pasture) during the bird breeding season (August to February inclusive). The pre-construction survey methods shall include a description of:

(i) Habitats of indigenous bird species known or anticipated to be within the Designation that are proposed for removal (including trees, rank grass and shrubs); and

(ii) Methods for visually observing and inspecting the indigenous bird species habitat within three days prior to felling to identify any Active Nests (including checking cavities and hollows for nesting birds (e.g. morepork, kingfisher and kaka)); and

(b) An incidental discovery protocol to be implemented if an Active Nest is discovered within 100m of the Project Works;

(c) With respect to Active Nests:

(i) “exclusion zones” that shall be established and maintained around any Active Nest identified during the pre-construction surveys;

(ii) methods requiring “exclusion zones” to be established and maintained when any Active Nest is identified through implementation of the incidental discovery protocols;

(iii) requirements that no vegetation clearance or earthworks activities shall occur inside any exclusion zone until a Suitably Qualified Person has confirmed that the nest has failed or the chicks have hatched and left the nest. The AMP shall require that exclusion zones are marked clearly with temporary cordoning for the attention of construction workers and are established in accordance with the following parameters:

(A) within 50m or 100m (in all directions) for all indigenous bird species that hold a classification of ‘Threatened’ or ‘At Risk’ in accordance with the New Zealand Threat Classification System (depending on the species); and

(B) within 25m (in all directions) for all other indigenous bird species (excluding spurwinged plover (*Vanellus miles*) and pūkeko (*Porphyrio melanotus melanotus*); or

(C) a distance that is less than the distance(s) set out in (A) and/or (B), that is recommended by the Suitably Qualified Person; and

(d) Methods for a Suitably Qualified Person to monitor Active Nests to confirm when the chicks have left the nest or the nest has failed. Once the chicks have left the nest or the nest has failed, the exclusion zones may be disestablished.

D37 The AMP shall be implemented for the duration of Project Works.

OPERATIONAL CONDITIONS

OPERATIONAL NOISE

D38 The Project shall be designed or have noise mitigation measures constructed so that the predicted operational noise levels comply with the predicted operational Noise Criteria Categories in Table [2] at each of the identified PPFs. If at the start of Project Works, any of the PPFs listed in Table [2] do not exist or are on land owned by the Crown, this condition no longer applies to that PPF. Compliance is to be assessed using traffic forecasts provided by a Suitably Qualified Person for a high growth scenario in a 2054 design year.

D39 If noise mitigation measures are required to be implemented outside of the Designation to comply with Condition [D38] (including any building modifications), the Requiring Authority must provide to the owners(s) of the property on which the PPF is located written notice:

(a) outlining the required noise mitigation measures;

(b) offering to undertake those noise mitigation measures; and

(c) advising that the owner has six weeks to decide whether to accept those noise mitigation measures.

D40 If an offer made under Condition [D39] is not responded to within the four weeks after the offer was made, the offer will be deemed to have not been accepted (unless the Requiring Authority agrees to a longer time period in the particular circumstance).

D41 Noise mitigation measures are not required to be implemented to address operational noise impacts at a PPF and will be deemed in compliance with Condition [D38] if:

(a) an offer made under Condition [D39] is not accepted; or

(b) deemed not to be accepted under Condition [D40]; or

(c) the owner of the property on which the PPF cannot (after reasonable inquiry) be found prior to the Completion of Construction.

D42 Within 12 months of installation of any noise mitigation measures to achieve compliance with Condition [D38], a report shall be prepared demonstrating compliance with Condition [D38] and provided to the Council for information. This report shall include a description of any acoustic mitigation implemented to mitigate operational noise to within the Noise Criteria Category specified in Table [2].

Table [2] – Noise Category Criteria

PPF Address	Noise Criteria Category	New or altered road category (as per NZS6806)
3817 State Highway 1	A	Altered
Lot 1 DP 179379 State Highway 1	A	Altered
4212A State Highway 1	A	Altered
10 Brooks Road	A	Altered
4164 State Highway 1	A	Altered
7 Finlayson Brook Road	A	New
3781 State Highway 1	A	New
3819 State Highway 1	A	New
3783 State Highway 1	A	New
3821 State Highway 1	A	New
90 Glenmohr Road	A	New

PPF Address	Noise Criteria Category	New or altered road category (as per NZS6806)
39 Tiria Lane	A	New
4068 State Highway 1	A	New
57 Tiria Lane	A	New
11 Tiria Lane	A	New
123 Ahuroa Road	A	New
159 Ahuroa Road	A	New
112 Ahuroa Road	A	New
36 Finlayson Brook Road	A	New
164 Ahuroa Road	A	New
8 Waipu Gorge Road	A	New
4482 State Highway 1	A	New
4476 State Highway 1	A	New
95 Glenmohr Road	A	New
4212 State Highway 1	A	New
4480 State Highway 1	A	New
57 The Braigh	A	New
69 The Braigh	A	New
9 Robert Bruce Place	A	New
232 Glenmohr Road	A	New
89A The Braigh	A	New
89 The Braigh	A	New
91 The Braigh	A	New
62 Ryan Road	A	New
54 The Braigh	A	New
44 The Braigh	A	New
64 The Braigh	A	New

PPF Address	Noise Criteria Category	New or altered road category (as per NZS6806)
39 The Braigh	A	New
60 The Braigh	A	New
85 Millbrook Road	A	New
48B The Braigh	A	New
58 The Braigh	A	New
48A The Braigh	A	New
33 Tiria Lane	A	New
12 Brooks Road	B	New
40 The Braigh	A	New
36 The Braigh	A	New
33 The Braigh	A	New
4683 State Highway 1	A	Altered
4683A State Highway 1	A	Altered
4800 State Highway 1	A	Altered
2941A State Highway 1	A	New
2941B State Highway 1	A	New
Lot 2 DP 196115 State Highway 1	A	Altered
2414B State Highway 1	A	Altered
2730 State Highway 1	A	Altered
2395 State Highway 1	A	Altered
2523B State Highway 1	A	Altered
2523A State Highway 1	A	Altered
33 Baldrock Road	A	Altered
Lot 3 DP 196115 State Highway 1	A	New

PPF Address	Noise Criteria Category	New or altered road category (as per NZS6806)
Lot 5 DP 196115 State Highway 1	A	New
Lot 4 DP 196115 State Highway 1	A	New
Lot 7 DP 196115 State Highway 1	A	New
Lot 6 DP 196115 State Highway 1	A	New
Lot 1 DP 407949 State Highway 1	A	New
Lot 2 DP 407949 State Highway 1	A	New

**NORTHLAND CORRIDOR – BRYNDERWYN HILLS SECTION OF THE ALTERNATIVE
TO THE BRYNDERWYNS HILLS – PROPOSED CONTAMINATION CONSENT
CONDITIONS**

Draft as at 2 April 2026

This resource consent authorises the Consent Holder to undertake soil disturbing activities for the construction, operation and maintenance of the Brynderwyn Hills section of the Alternative to the Brynderwyns project under the Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011).

DEFINITIONS

Abbreviation/term	Meaning/definition
CLMG1	Ministry for the Environment <i>Contaminated land management guidelines No 1: Reporting on contaminated sites in New Zealand</i> (Revised 2021).
CLMG5	Ministry for the Environment <i>Contaminated land management guidelines No 5: Site investigation and analysis of soils</i> (Revised 2021)
Completion of Construction	When construction of the Project (or the relevant part of the Project) is complete, and the Project (or the relevant part of the Project) is open for public use.
Consent Holder	New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi
Council	[Kaipara District Council / Whangarei District Council]
Designation(s)	The designation(s) for the Project, included in the [Kaipara District Plan / Whangārei District Plan].
Iwi Representatives	Representatives authorised on behalf of Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board and Te Parawhau (as relevant to their respective rohe)
Management Plan(s)	Refers to the management plans and reports required by Conditions [RC10] and [RC15].
Project	The construction, operation, maintenance and improvement of the Brynderwyn Hills section of the Alternative to the Brynderwyns project.
Project Works	Activities undertaken to construct the Project.
Site	The area defined by the boundary of the Designation(s).
Suitably Qualified Person	A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability and competence in the relevant field of expertise.
NRC	Northland Regional Council
Working Day	Has the meaning in s2 of the RMA.

Consent lapse and expiry

RC1 This consent shall lapse 20 years from the date of commencement unless it has been given effect, surrendered or been cancelled at an earlier date.

Management Plan Process

RC2 The Management Plans listed in **Table [1]** shall be prepared in accordance with the relevant conditions of this consent.

RC3 Management Plans may be updated at any time by submitting the amendment in writing for the Council's information. However, where a change is proposed to a Management Plan that was provided for certification and will result in more than minor adverse effects, the amendment shall be submitted in writing to Council for certification.

Table 1:

Management Plan	Requirements that the Management Plans shall be certified against	When to submit	Implementation period
Contaminated Site Management Plan (CSMP)	Conditions [RC4(d)] and [RC9]	At least 30 Working Days before the start of soil disturbing activities to Council for certification Following certification, provided to NRC for information	For the duration of Project Works
Remedial Action Plan (RAP)	Conditions [RC4(d)] and [RC11]	If required in accordance with Condition [RC13], at least 30 Working Days before the contaminated site is disturbed to Council for certification Following certification, provided to NRC for information	For the duration of Project Works subject to the RAP

- RC4 Management Plans shall be:
- (a) Prepared by Suitably Qualified Persons;
 - (b) Submitted, within the timeframes set out in **Table 1** to:
 - (i) Council for certification that the Management Plans satisfy the requirements of the conditions as outlined in **Table 1**; and
 - (ii) NRC for information, following certification;
 - (c) Implemented for the period outlined in **Table 1**; and
 - (d) Prepared in consultation with relevant Iwi Representatives. Where Management Plans are provided for certification, they shall include a summary of consultation undertaken with Iwi Representatives in the preparation of the Management Plan, and outline either how feedback has been incorporated, or if not, the reasons for that.
- RC5 If a Management Plan (or amendment) has been submitted to Council for certification, and the number of Working Days specified in the “When to submit column” in **Table 1** has passed and the Council has not provided certification or advised that the Management Plan or amendment does not meet the requirements for certification, the Management Plan will be deemed to have been certified.
- RC6 Management Plans and the Site Validation Report required by Condition [RC14] may be prepared in stages to reflect specific construction activities or any proposed staging of the Project Works. If the Management Plans are submitted in stages, the scope of the Management Plan is to be commensurate with the nature, scale and effects of the proposed work or activity for that stage of the Project Works.

Detailed Site Investigation

- RC7 A **Detailed Site Investigation (DSI)** shall be undertaken before the start of Project Works within an area of the Site by a Suitably Qualified Person:
- (a) In accordance with the requirements of section [2.3] of CLMG1 and CLMG5; and
 - (b) In any of the locations where Project Works are proposed to occur that are identified in Appendix [X].
- RC8 A copy of the DSI shall be provided to Council for information within 10 Working Days of completion.

Contaminated Site Management Plan

- RC9 A **Contaminated Site Management Plan (CSMP)** shall be prepared. The purpose of the CSMP is to identify measures to manage potential risks from disturbance of contaminated soils (including from unexpected discovery) to the health of workers and the environment.
- RC10 The CSMP shall be prepared in accordance with the requirements of section 1.3 and 2.4 of the CLMG1 and include:
- (a) A summary of results of soil sampling as part of the DSI in accordance with Condition [RC7];

- (b) Health and safety and environmental management procedures to be implemented (at locations where soil sampling has indicated that contamination is expected) during the Project Works, including but not limited to:
 - a. Personal protection and monitoring;
 - b. On-Site soil management practices, including stockpile management and stormwater and sediment controls;
 - c. A framework and protocols for reuse of contaminated soils, including measures to manage risks from any identified hydrocarbon and metal impacted material;
 - d. Off-Site soil transport and disposal;
 - e. On-Site management controls and practices confirmed for contaminated groundwater; and
- (c) Contingency measures to apply in the event of accidental/unexpected discovery of contaminated soils.

Remedial Action Plan

RC11 If the CSMP identifies contaminated soils that will be disturbed during Project Works requiring remediation within the Site, a **Remedial Action Plan (RAP)** shall be prepared. The purpose of the RAP is to identify a remedial strategy and controls to mitigate the risk posed by any contaminants identified in the CSMP.

RC12 The RAP shall be prepared in accordance with the requirements of section 1.3 and 2.7 of the CLMG1 and include:

- (a) The remediation or management goal;
- (b) Remediation methodology, including rationale, with a clear and systematic plan for works;
- (c) Contingency measures if the remediation methodology fails to reach the remediation or management goal; and
- (d) Proposed Site validation sampling plan and reporting.

Site Validation Report

RC13 Following completion of Project Works in an area to which a RAP applies, a **Site Validation Report (SVR)** shall be prepared. The purpose of the SVR is to validate that the objectives of the RAP have been achieved.

RC14 The SVR shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person in accordance with the requirements of section 1.3 and 2.8 of CLMG1.

RC15 The SVR shall include:

- (a) The location and dimensions of the excavations (of contaminated soils) carried out, including a relevant site plan;
- (b) Records of any unexpected contamination encountered during the Project Works;
- (c) Soil validation results where remediation has been carried out or where unexpected contamination has been encountered;
- (d) Copies of the disposal dockets for the material removed from the Site and any clean fill imported onto the Site;

- (e) The requirements for ongoing monitoring and management (if any contamination is contained on Site).

RC16 Within 6 months of Completion of Construction, the Consent Holder must provide the SVR to the Council for certification that it satisfies the requirements of Conditions [RC14]-[RC15]. Following certification by Council, a copy of the SVR must be provided to NRC for information purposes.

**NORTHLAND CORRIDOR – BRYNDERWYN HILLS SECTION TO THE ALTERNATIVE TO
THE BRYNDERWYN HILLS – PROPOSED REGIONAL RESOURCE CONSENT
CONDITIONS**

Draft as at 2 April 2026

These resource consents authorise the Consent Holder to undertake the following activities for the purposes of the construction, operation, maintenance and improvement of the Brynderwyn Hills section of the Alternative to the Brynderwyn Hills project.

The resource consents granted authorise the following activities:

- (a) Land disturbing activities (including earthworks, vegetation clearance, vegetation planting, roading, tracking, stockpiling and disposal of fill) under section 9 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) and associated discharges of contaminants to land and into water and air under section 15 of the RMA (RC01).
- (b) Works in, on, under or over Watercourses under section 13 of the RMA (RC02) including:
 - (i) the use, placement and erection of structures (including bridges, culverts, discharge outlets and associated erosion control structures);
 - (ii) reclamation of the beds of Watercourses; and
 - (iii) any associated bed disturbance.
- (c) The taking, damming and diversion of water under section 14 of the RMA (RC03).
- (d) The discharge of stormwater under section 15 of the RMA during operation of the Project (RC04).
- (e) Activities under the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater Management) Regulations 2020 (NES-FW) (RC01-RC05).

These activities may occur in, on or over land designated by the New Zealand Transport Agency for the construction, operation and maintenance of a State Highway near the intersection of SH1 and SH12 and through the Brynderwyn Hills to Waipū.

Definitions

Term	Definition
Completion of Construction	When construction of the Project (or the relevant part of the Project) is complete, and the Project (or relevant part of the Project) is open for public use.
Consents	Consents RC01 – RC05 (unless otherwise specified).
Consent Holder	New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi.
Council	Northland Regional Council.
Designation(s)	The designation(s) for the Project included in the Kaipara District Plan and the Whangārei District Plan.

ESC	Erosion and Sediment Control.
First Gas	First Gas Limited.
Gas Pipeline	First Gas Limited Maungaturoto Gas Mainline.
GD05	Erosion and Sediment Control Guide for Land Disturbing Activities in the Auckland Region; June 2016; Guideline Document 2016/005 (incorporating Amendment 3).
Highly Sensitive Receptors	Locations where there are activities that are sensitive to dust effects, such as dwellings, schools, marae, hospitals, child-care and aged-care facilities.
Iwi Representatives	Representatives authorised on behalf of Te Uri o Hau, Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board and Te Parawhau (as relevant to their respective rohe).
Major Cut	The excavation or installation of a structure greater than 2m below the water table.
Management Plan(s)	The management plans and reports required by Conditions [RCX], [RCX].
National Grid Transmission Assets	Henderson to Marsden A (220kV high voltage transmission line) (HEN-MDN-A).
Existing Wetland(s)	Wetlands identified in Appendix [x].
NZTA ESC Guidelines	NZ Transport Agency <i>Erosion and sediment control guidelines for state highway infrastructure</i> (September 2024).
NZTA STWS	NZ Transport Agency <i>Stormwater Treatment for Road Infrastructure</i> (May 2010).
Project	The construction, operation, maintenance and improvement of the Brynderwyn Hills section of the Alternative to the Brynderwyn Hills project.
Project Works	Activities undertaken to construct the Project.
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991.
Site	The area defined by the boundary of the Designation(s).
Suitably Qualified Person	A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability and competence in the relevant field of expertise.
Transpower	Transpower New Zealand Limited.

TSS	Total Suspended Solids.
Trigger Event	An event in which there is (or is forecast to be) rainfall intensity of 25mm in any 24 hour period or 15mm in any 1 hour period.
Watercourse(s)	Perennial and intermittent rivers and streams but not overland flow paths, conveyance channels or Wetlands.
Wetland(s)	Includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions (excluding constructed wetlands).
Wildlife Approval	The approval issued by the Expert Panel under the Wildlife Act 1953 for the Project (Reference WA#).
Working Day(s)	Has the same meaning as s2 of the RMA.

GENERAL

Consent lapse and expiry

These conditions apply to all Consents, unless otherwise specified.

- RC1 The Consents shall lapse 20 years from the date of their commencement unless they have been given effect, surrendered or been cancelled at an earlier date.
- RC2 Consents RC01 shall expire 20 years from the date of its commencement.
- RC3 Consents RC02-RC05 shall expire 35 years from the date of their commencement.
- RC4 Following Completion of Construction, Conditions [RCX]-[RCX] cease to have effect and do not apply to any subsequent work associated with the ongoing operation and maintenance of the Project.

MANAGEMENT PLANS

- RC5 The Management Plans listed in **Table 1** shall be prepared in accordance with the relevant conditions of the Consents.

Table 1

Management Plan	Requirements that the Management Plans shall be certified against	When to submit to Council for certification	Implementation period
Dust Management Plan	RC6(d), RC[17]-RC[18]	20 Working Days before the start of Project Works	For the duration of Project Works.

Erosion and Sediment Control Plan	RC6(d), RC[20] and RC[22]	40 Working Days before the start of Project Works	For the duration of Project Works.
Site Specific Erosion and Sediment Control Plans	RC6(d), RC[29]	At least 10 Working Days before starting land disturbing activities in a specific area of the Site	For the duration of Project Works in the area of the Site subject to the SSES CP
Stormwater Detailed Design Report	RC6(d), RC[50] and [51]	40 Working Days before construction of the permanent stormwater management system.	For the duration of construction of the permanent stormwater management system.
Wetland Management Plan (WMP)	RC6(d), RC[43]-[47]	20 Working Days before the start of Project Works	Until 2 months following Completion of Construction.

RC6 A Management Plan(s) shall be:

- (a) prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s);
- (b) submitted to Council for certification that the Management Plan(s) satisfies the requirements of the conditions as outlined in **Table 1**;
- (c) implemented for the period outlined in **Table 1**, for the specific activities and / or stage to which it relates; and
- (d) prepared in consultation with relevant Iwi Representatives. Where a Management Plan(s) is provided for certification, it must include a summary of consultation undertaken with Iwi Representatives in the preparation of the Management Plan(s), and outline either how feedback has been incorporated, or if not, the reasons for that.

RC7 A Management Plan(s) may be updated at any time by submitting an amendment to Council for information. However, where a change to a Management Plan may result in more than minor adverse effects, the amendment must be submitted to Council for certification prior to implementation of the amendment.

RC8 If a Management Plan(s) (or amendment) has been submitted to Council for certification, and the number of Working Days specified in the "When to submit for certification column in **Table 1** has passed and Council has not provided certification or advised that the Management Plan or amendment does not meet the requirements for certification, the Management Plan will be deemed to have been certified.

RC9 A Management Plan(s) may be prepared in stages to reflect specific construction activities or any proposed staging of the Project Works. If the Management Plan(s) is submitted in stages, the scope of the Management Plan is to be commensurate with the nature, scale and effects of the proposed work or activity for that stage of the Project Works.

CONSTRUCTION METHODOLOGY

Conditions RC10-RC15 apply to Consent RC01-RC03 and RC05.

- RC10 Where a haul road crosses a Watercourse, a temporary bridge must be installed if practicable, and otherwise a temporary culvert. All temporary bridges and culverts shall be removed as soon as practicable following completion of Project Works, and the morphology of the Watercourse (including depth, width, gradient pattern, substrate and bank form) shall be reinstated to what it was prior to installation of the temporary bridge or culvert, to the extent practicable.
- RC11 If temporary culverts are anticipated to be in a Watercourse for more than two weeks during the period November to December, prior to installation, a Suitably Qualified Person shall confirm that the culvert design will provide fish passage in accordance with best practice, unless that person deems it unnecessary to do so because:
- (a) there is no upstream fish habitat at the time the culvert is installed;
 - (b) there are other existing barriers to fish passage at the time the culvert is installed;
- or
- (c) there is no (or expected to be no) flow of water within the Watercourse while the temporary culvert is in place.
- RC12 All machinery that is used for Project Works in or near freshwater environments shall be checked and cleaned for freshwater pests (in accordance with the Check, Clean, Dry' method and the National Pest Control Agencies A series, best practice guidelines 'A16 Keep it Clean – Machinery and Vehicle Hygiene Guidelines and Logbook to Prevent the Spread of Pests and Weeds' (2015 (minor revisions April 2020)) before it is brought onto the Site;
- RC13 Prior to any dewatering or diversion in a section of Watercourse deemed by a Suitably Qualified Person to support a viable population of such fish, a Suitably Qualified Person shall salvage and transfer indigenous freshwater fish.
- RC14 Procedures must be implemented:
- (a) to avoid the risk of concrete leachate discharges to Watercourses or Existing Wetlands (including no concrete batching or preparation within 50m of any Watercourse or Existing Wetland, pouring concrete outside of running water, covering new concrete surfaces to prevent run off and using prefabricated concrete pipes and structures where practicable);
 - (b) for the storage of fuels, lubricants, hazardous and/or dangerous materials to avoid discharges to Watercourses and Existing Wetlands; and

(c) for operating machinery to ensure spillages of fuel, oil and similar contaminants are prevented, particularly during refuelling and machinery services and maintenance (which shall be carried out away from any surface water).

RC15 Where practicable, instream crossing devices (ie. bridges or culverts) shall be avoided in the Watercourse identified on the map in Appendix [X].

LAND DISTURBING ACTIVITIES

Conditions RC16-RC29 apply to Consent RC01.

Dust management

RC16 A **Dust Management Plan (DMP)** shall be prepared. The purpose of the DMP is to outline measures so that Project Works shall not, as far as reasonably practicable, cause objectionable or offensive dust effects beyond the Site.

RC17 The DMP shall include:

- (a) a description of the main potential sources of dust emissions from the Project Works and the proximity of Highly Sensitive Receptors to these sources;
- (b) measures to minimise dust emissions from Project Works, including any specific measures to manage dust-generating works in proximity to Highly Sensitive Receptors;
- (c) contingency methods for controlling any identified objectionable or offensive dust effects beyond the Site; and
- (d) measures to manage dust effects on National Grid Transmission Assets.

RC18 Transpower shall be consulted during preparation of the DMP regarding [RC17(d)]. The DMP shall include a summary of consultation undertaken with Transpower, and outline how feedback has been incorporated into the DMP, and if not, the reasons for that.

Erosion and Sediment Control

Erosion and Sediment Control Plan

RC19 An **Erosion and Sediment Control Plan (ESCP)** shall be prepared. The purpose of the ESCP is to set out the measures to be implemented during construction to minimise erosion and the discharge of sediments from the Project Works.

RC20 The ESC outcomes that shall be achieved as far as reasonably practicable in the ESCP are:

- (a) Minimising erosion and discharges from earthworks and Watercourses to protect receiving environments.
- (b) Maximising the use of non-structural ESC measures.
- (c) The implementation of progressive stabilisation to minimise exposed earthworks.

RC21 The ESCP shall be prepared:

- (a) In accordance with GD05 or updated version except as otherwise provided in these conditions.
- (b) To give effect to Conditions [RC23]-[RC27].

RC22 The ESCP shall include the following information:

- (a) Details of construction methods.
- (b) Incident management protocols.
- (c) Rainfall forecasting, planning and response.
- (d) ESC decommissioning procedures.
- (e) The identification of staff who will be responsible for ESC compliance.
- (f) Design details for managing the treatment, disposal and/or discharge of contaminants.
- (g) Chemical (or organic) treatment design and details including batch dosing.
- (h) A continuous improvement programme that describes ESC monitoring requirements and plans for the continuous improvement of ESC measures on Site.
- (i) Pumping procedures where dewatering is required.
- (j) Methodology, timing, staging and sequencing of works in Watercourses including culvert extensions and replacements, and any ESC measures to be employed to mitigate the effects on Watercourses.

Erosion and Sediment Control standards

RC23 All construction yard areas shall achieve the detention requirements as detailed within the NZTA ESC Guidelines.

RC24 The ESC shall include the installation of a last line of defence, which shall include protection of the freshwater receiving environments with additional bunding, silt fence, super silt fence or alternative.

RC25 Earthworks shall be subject to stabilisation in a progressive manner as earthworks are completed. If an area is not subject to earthworks activity for a maximum 14 day period it shall be stabilised. This shall include temporary earthworks activities, spoil sites and completed sections of vertical cut faces and fill batters.

RC26 Earthworks may be carried out during the winter period 1 May to 30 September inclusive provided that an updated **Site Specific Erosion and Sediment Control Plan** (SSESCP) has been submitted to Council for certification outlining:

- (a) The nature and location of the specific works proposed to be undertaken in the winter period; and
- (b) Measures to comply with the SSESCP certified in accordance with Condition [RC6(b)] applicable to the area.

RC27 Unless a SSESCP for earthworks during the winter periods been certified by Council in a particular area in accordance with Condition RC[26], all areas shall be stabilised in accordance with Condition [RC25].

Site Specific Erosion and Sediment Control Plans

RC28 A SSESCP shall be prepared before starting land disturbance activities in any area of the Site. The purpose of the SSESCP shall be to demonstrate how compliance with the ESCP shall be achieved in relation to the specific Project Works being undertaken.

RC29 The SSESCP shall be prepared taking into account the ESCP and the requirements of conditions [RC23]-[RC27] and include the following information:

- (a) Management of unexpected conditions.
- (b) Identification of all discharge points to land or surface water.
- (c) Identification of high risk areas for sediment generation.
- (d) Details of the proposed work sequence and procedures to prioritise non-structural ESC elements that promote the reduction of sediment generation and yield.
- (e) A plan showing contours, cut and fill operations, the location of all ESC measures, and the location of catchment boundaries relevant to the ESC measures on the Site.

GROUNDWATER

Conditions RC30-RC33 apply to Consent RC03.

Existing water users

RC30 The design of the Project shall, as far as reasonably practicable, avoid groundwater drawdown that is greater than 1m at any consented water supply well that exists prior to the commencement of this consent and is within 1km of the Project Works.

Settlement

RC31 The design and construction of the Project shall ensure settlement effects on National Grid Transmission Assets and the Gas Pipeline (where operational) are:

- (a) no more than 50mm total settlement; and
- (b) within 1/200 and 1/300 differential settlement.

RC32 Compliance with Condition [RC30] and [RC31] shall be demonstrated by a numerical groundwater model as required by Condition [RC33].

RC33 At least 40 Working Days before the start of any Major Cuts, a report prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person shall be provided to Council for certification against the requirements in (a) and (b) below, which:

- (a) Includes detailed design drawings of any Major Cut; and
- (b) Demonstrates (through use of a numerical groundwater model) that:
 - (i) the requirement in Condition [RC30] has been met. If this requirement has not been met, the Consent Holder must offer an alternative water supply to the landowner where the existing water supply is located. If an alternative water supply is offered, records of

any consultation undertaken with the relevant well owner must also be provided; and

(ii) the requirements in Condition [RC31] have been met. Records of any consultation undertaken with Transpower or First Gas must also be provided.

WORKS IN WATERCOURSES, FRESHWATER AND WETLAND ECOLOGY

Conditions RC34-RC49 apply to Consent RC02 and RC05.

RC34 Watercourses [x] and [x] must either be:

(a) bridged; OR

(b) realigned or culverted in accordance with Conditions RC[x] to RC[x].

RC35 For any loss of length of perennial Watercourse (ie. a length of Watercourse that is not realigned or culverted in accordance with Condition RC[x]), the Consent Holder must undertake riparian works where:

$(SEV\text{-}ImpEx - SEV\text{-}ImpPost) \times \text{length of perennial Watercourse to be lost}$

must equal

$(SEV\text{-}PostRip - SEV\text{-}PreRip) \times \text{length of permanent Watercourse where riparian works are to occur}$

Where:

- SEV-ImpEx is the habitat functionality (SEV) value before Project Works of the perennial Watercourse to be lost (as discussed in Condition RC29B).
- SEV-ImpPost is the predicted SEV value after Project Works of the perennial Watercourse to be lost.
- SEV-PreRip is the SEV value of the permanent Watercourse where riparian works are to occur.
- SEV-PostRip is the predicted SEV value for the permanent Watercourse where riparian works are to occur following those works.

For the purpose of this condition, SEV value is to be calculated in accordance with Technical Report 2011/009 Stream Ecological Valuation: a method for assessing the

ecological functions of Auckland Streams (Stream SEV method) or other method if agreed with Council.

RC36 The riparian works required by Condition [RC35] must be determined by a Suitably Qualified Person and include:

- (a) Planting of indigenous vegetation for a width of 10 m on each side of the Watercourse. Such planting must:
 - (i) be of a suitable species composition;
 - (ii) be sourced from the ecological district in which it is to be planted or be otherwise eco-sourced, except where it is not practicable to do so;
 - (iii) have spacing between 0.5 and 1.5 m; and
 - (iv) be maintained for a period of 5 years or until 80% indigenous canopy cover is achieved (whichever is earlier); and
- (b) Fencing or other methods to exclude stock.

Watercourse realignment and culvert design

Watercourse realignment design requirements

RC37 All of the realigned Watercourses must be designed by a Suitably Qualified Person to achieve, as far as practicable, the following outcomes:

- (a) The dimensions of each realigned Watercourse (depth, width, and gradient pattern) must be similar to the reclaimed Watercourse that it replaces to achieve similar velocities, depth profiles and wetted widths;
- (b) Each realigned Watercourse must have hydrological heterogeneity (pools, runs, riffles, etc) that is similar or better than the reclaimed Watercourse that it replaces. The realigned Watercourses must not have a homogenous run system;
- (c) Each realigned Watercourse must have the same or better mosaic of substrates and riparian planting as the reclaimed Watercourse that it replaces (excluding woody vegetation);
- (d) Where realignments are at spoil sites, location of the realignment at the juncture between the spoil and natural ground; and
- (e) Subject to achieving (a) – (d) above, the realigned Watercourses should provide for the conveyance of a 100-year ARI event, including adaptation for 100 years of climate change (from the date that the Project becomes operational).

Permanent culvert design requirements

RC38 Permanent culverts must be designed and constructed to provide fish passage and benthic habitat substrate where there is intermittent or perennial habitat above the culvert:

- (a) in the Watercourses [x], [x], [x], [x] and [x] shown on Appendix [x];

- (b) in all other Watercourses shown on Appendix [x], unless fish passage is considered unnecessary by a Suitably Qualified Person because, prior to the Project Works commencing, there is:
 - (i) limited upstream fish habitat;
 - (ii) limited fish populations that require fish passage; or
 - (iii) there are other existing barriers to fish passage.

RC39 The permanent culverts shall be designed by a Suitably Qualified Persons to achieve, as far as practicable, the following outcomes:

- (a) The width of the culvert must be wider than the Watercourse it has replaced;
- (b) The gradient of the culvert and the velocity of water flow in the culvert must be the same or similar as in the Watercourse it has replaced;
- (c) Retention of appropriate in-pipe substrate;
- (d) No obstructions to fish passage at the entrance or exit;
- (e) Provide for the conveyance of a 100-year ARI event, including adaptation for 100-years of climate change (from the date that the Project becomes operational); and
- (f) Incorporate energy dissipation and erosion control to minimise the occurrence of bed scour and bank erosion in receiving environments.

Any culvert that complies with the conditions in regulation 70 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 shall be deemed to comply with this Condition [RC39].

Information relating to structures, fish passage and culverts

Advice Note: The following information listed in the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 shall be provided to Council for information within 20 Working Days of construction of any culverts being completed:

- (a) Regulation 62(3) Requirements for all activities: information about structures and passage of fish; and
- (b) Regulation 63(3) Requirement for culvert activities: information about culverts.

WETLANDS

Conditions RC40-RC49 apply to Consent RC01 and RC05.

Wetland outcomes

RC40 The loss of any extent of the following Existing Wetlands shall be replaced at the following loss to gain ratios:

- (a) Existing Wetland(s) [x], [x], [x] and [x]:
 - (i) 1:2 (where the replacement Wetland(s) is Established within 2 to 5 years of the loss); or

- (ii) 1:1.5 (where the Wetland(s) is Established within 1 year of the loss); or
- (ii) 1:1 (where the replacement Wetland(s) is Established 3 years prior to the loss); and

(b) Existing Wetlands [x], [x], [x] and [x]:

- (i) 1:1 (where the replacement Wetland(s) is Established prior to the loss and created as contiguous habitat); or
- (ii) 1:1.5 (where the replacement Wetland(s) is Established prior to the loss but not created as contiguous habitat); or
- (iii) 1:2 (where the replacement Wetland(s) is Established after the loss and not created as contiguous habitat).

Advice note: *Temporary loss of an Existing Wetland that is remediated is not considered a loss of an Existing Wetland for the purpose of this condition.*

Wetland Management Plan

RC41 A **Wetland Management Plan (WMP)** shall be prepared. The purpose of the WMP is to identify measures that will be implemented to achieve the outcomes in Condition [RC40] to manage any effects of the Project Works on the:

- (a) extent and values of Existing Wetlands that are lost; and
- (b) habitat of Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*), spotless crane (*Porzana tabuensis*), and North Island Fernbird (*Poodytes punctatus vealeae*) (together, Cryptic Marsh Bird Species).

RC42 For the purpose of the WMP, the timing of loss is to be identified as follows:

- (a) where due to vegetation removal and / or earthworks, at the point of the relevant soil disturbing works; and
- (b) where due to hydrology, at the point there is a permanent fall in groundwater level or loss of saturation that results in the water table being more than 30cm below the soil surface during the growing season where wetland hydrology is not remediated (to be shown through a numerical groundwater model or by monitoring of the water table at the Existing Wetland).

Offsetting Wetlands [x], [x], [x] and [x]

RC43 The WMP shall include:

- (a) identification of the extent of any Existing Wetlands [x], [x], [x] and [x] that will be lost due to the Project Works, and the timing of such loss;
- (b) the amount of Wetland to be created, as calculated in accordance with Condition [RC40(a)];
- (c) methods for the creation of Wetland(s) that achieve the following requirements:
 - (i) Be located:

- (A) Within the same catchment, or otherwise within the same Ecological District as the Existing Wetland lost; and
- (B) In an area that is (or can be made) free from weed and pest species;

- (ii) Provide a mix of wetland hydrology and a majority of shallow water suitable for raupō;
- (iii) Include raupō in large and solid stands;
- (iv) Include fencing to avoid stock access;
- (v) Include edges of Carex sedgeland and rushland and have a dry land riparian buffer of 10m width; and
- (vi) Be setback an appropriate distance from the operational carriageway of the Project to avoid adverse effects on Cryptic Marsh Bird Species;

Habitat creation for Cryptic Marsh Bird Species

RC44 The WMP shall include:

- (a) identification of the extent of any Existing Wetlands [x], [x], [x] and [x] that will be lost due to the Project Works, and the timing of such loss;
- (b) the amount of Wetland to be created, including whether it will be contiguous, as calculated in accordance with Condition [RC40(b)];
- (c) methods for the creation of Wetland(s) that meet the following requirements:
 - (i) Contain the same or better habitat features than what has been lost (including the replacement of the open water habitat, such as that within Existing Wetland [x]);
 - (ii) Be located an appropriate setback from the operational carriageway of the Project to avoid adverse effects of Cryptic Marsh Bird Species; and
 - (iii) Be contiguous (where the extent of habitat to be created has been calculated in accordance with Condition [RC40(b)(i)]).

Compensation

RC45 Where it is not practicable to comply with [RC43] or [RC44], in whole or in part, the WMP shall include details of a wetland compensation measure requiring the Consent Holder to pay funds to a conservation group or organisation to undertake wetland creation or restoration works within the Wairau catchment. The purpose of the compensation payment would be to improve hydrological function and indigenous biodiversity cover. Such details shall include:

- (i) Who the compensation will be paid to, and when it will be paid;
- (ii) The wetland creation works that the compensation payment will be used for; and
- (iii) The amounts of compensation, which must be calculated as follows:

The extent of wetland required to be created under Condition RC37 and RC38 in hectares	-	The extent of wetland that will be created by the Consent Holder in hectares	=	Compensation extent
Compensation extent	x	Cost per hectare to Consent Holder of creating wetland under Condition RC37 and RC38	=	Compensation amount

Monitoring and maintenance of created Wetlands

RC46 The WMP must outline methods and measures to monitor and maintain the Wetland(s) created in accordance with [RC43] and [RC44] (including measures to control invasive weed and pest species) until they have Established.

RC47 If the WMP is prepared for Wetland creation works only, then only the requirements of Conditions RC[43(b) and (c)], [RC44(b) and (c)], [RC45] and [RC46] apply for the purposes of certification under RC[6(b)].

RC48 A Suitably Qualified Person shall provide a report to Council confirming:

- (a) That Wetland(s) have been created in compliance with Condition [RC43(b)] and [RC44(b)] within 2 months of Completion of Construction; and
- (b) Any ongoing maintenance that shall be undertaken at these created Wetlands until the requirements of [RC43(b) and RC44(b)] have been achieved.

RC49 For the purpose of Conditions [RC40] to [RC46], “Established” means the Wetlands have:

- (a) Achieved 80% vegetation cover at vegetation assemblages;
- (b) Do not contain any invasive weed and / or pest species; and
- (c) Are hydrologically stable.

OPERATIONAL STORMWATER

Conditions RC50-RC58 apply to Consent RC04.

Stormwater Detailed Design Report

RC50 A **Stormwater Detailed Design Report (SDDR)** shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person. The purpose of the SDDR is to outline the detailed design of the stormwater management system for the Project to achieve the following requirements:

- (a) Treatment of stormwater run-off during operation of the Project;
- (b) Constructed wetlands and wetland swales shall be:
 - (i) Configured to provide extended detention;
 - (ii) Designed in accordance with NZTA STWS; and
- (c) Constructed wetlands shall be located offline from Watercourses.

RC51 The SDDR shall include:

- (a) A description of the receiving environment;
- (b) Measures to achieve the stormwater management outcomes outlined in [RC39] above; and
- (c) Design drawings, planting plans, design methodologies and the results of hydraulic and hydrological modelling that demonstrate how compliance with the stormwater management requirements outlined in [RC39] have been achieved.

Operational stormwater - construction

RC52 A stormwater management system shall be constructed in general accordance with the SDDR certified in accordance with Condition [RC6(b)].

RC53 Stormwater management devices used for:

- (a) Stormwater treatment shall be fully operational before Completion of Construction; and
- (b) Extended detention shall be fully operational prior to the discharge of water from any impervious area identified to discharge to any device.

As-built plans – stormwater management system

RC54 Within 3 months of completing construction of the stormwater management system, as-built plans prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person shall be provided to Council confirming that the stormwater management system has been constructed in general accordance with the certified design under Condition [RC42].

Operational stormwater maintenance

RC55 The stormwater management system constructed in accordance with Condition [RC52] shall be operated and maintained to meet the requirements of [RC50] for the duration of this consent.

Flooding

RC56 Before the start of Project Works, a report shall be provided to Council demonstrating that at the time of construction, the Project will not, as far as reasonably practicable, increase water levels in the 100 year ARI event:

- (a) By more than 100mm vertically in areas that are outside the Site at the time of construction and outside the banks of a Watercourse, Wetland or flood plain; and
- (b) Above floor level of any habitable building in areas outside the Site.

RC57 The report required by Condition [RC56] shall demonstrate compliance with [RC56] by a hydraulic and hydrological model with the level of detail and reporting to be confirmed by a Suitably Qualified Person. The peak flood levels for pre-development and post-development (considering maximum probable development) of the Project shall be compared upstream and downstream at the Site boundary.

RC58 Before the start of Project Works, a report shall be provided to Council demonstrating that any headwater ponding upstream of any Project culvert in the 100 year ARI event is contained within either:

- (a) Land within the Site at the time of construction; or
- (b) An existing Watercourse, Wetland or floodplain.

Appendix F

Schedule of Owners and occupiers of land within the Designation Boundary

Appendix F – Schedules of Owners and Occupiers of Land Within the Proposed Designation

Schedule 5, in relation to the RMA approvals sought, clauses 5(1)(d) and 12(1)(f) of the FTAA requires a consent application and notice of requirement to include the full name and address of:

- Each owner of the site to which the designation boundary relates and of the land adjacent to that boundary; and
- Each occupier of the site to which the designation boundary relates and of land adjacent to that boundary (whom NZTA has been able to identify after reasonable enquiry).

The following schedule includes the names and address of owners and occupiers of the site or land to which the designation boundary relates. The schedule contains the following information:

- Site ID Code, to be read in conjunction with the Drawings Package in Appendix D of Volume A.
- Site details, including the address and legal description.
- The owner/s of the site.
- The occupier/s (if different from the owner/s).

The schedule identifies NZTA's legal interest in the land on which the Project will occur. It does this by identifying all of the properties that the Crown owns (administered by NZTA) and identifying those properties that it has not yet acquired an interest in and that may need to be acquired under the PWA¹.

In May 2025, letters were sent to the landowners' postal address listed in the schedule below, outlining the Project and informing landowners that their property is located within the Emerging Preferred Corridor (prior to confirmation of the Proposed Designation) for the Project. This letter also asked landowners to share their phone and email address with the Project team, so they could be quickly and easily contacted in the future. Landowners could fill in a contact form online or update their details with the Project team over the phone or by email.

In October 2025, follow up letters were sent to landowners to confirm whether their property was within the Proposed Designation or now located outside of it. Directly affected landowners were invited to book into an individual meeting with the Project team and additional contact details were gathered at these meetings.

Landowners were asked if their property was owner occupied or leased/tenanted. For those no longer directly affected by the Project, their letter informed them that NZTA is required to include their name and address as part of any FTAA consent application lodged for the Project. The letter asked them to contact the Project with the details of any tenants or lessees on the property, or if they wished to update their own personal details. Where such details have been provided, it has been recorded on the schedules below. Where no information was received, the schedule was left blank. Where an additional 'occupier' address is known, this has also been included in following schedule.

¹ In accordance with section 13(4)(s) of the FTAA.

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
1	ROAD	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
2	Lot 1 DP 125854	2395B State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	██████████	2395B State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
3	Lot 2 DP 168734	2395F State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████	2395F State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
4	Section 12 SO 456515	2414 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████ ██████████	2414 State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
5	ROAD	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
6	ROAD Section 1 SO 456515	Baldrock Road, Kaiwaka	Kaipara District Council	Private Bag 1001, Dargaville, 0340			Yes
7	ROAD	Baldrock Road, Kaiwaka	Kaipara District Council	Private Bag 1001, Dargaville, 0340			Yes
8	ROAD Section 2 SO 456515	Baldrock Road, Kaiwaka	Kaipara District Council	Private Bag 1001, Dargaville, 0340			Yes
9	Section 10 SO 456515	33 Baldrock Road, Kaiwaka	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, ██████████	33 Baldrock Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542	Yes
10	Section 11 SO 456515	9 Baldrock Road, Maungaturoto	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, ██████████	PO Box 17, Kaiwaka, Northland, 0542	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542	Yes
11	Section 3 SO 456515	9 Baldrock Road, Maungaturoto	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, ██████████	PO Box 17, Kaiwaka, Northland, 0542	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542	Yes
12	Lot 1 DP 49503	2447 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto	██████████ ██████████	PO Box 179, Kaiwaka, Northland, 0542			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
13	Lot 1 DP 131271	2395F State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395F State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
14	Lot 1 DP 85974	2395 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
15	Lot 4 DP 143908	2471 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2471 State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
16	Lot 8 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
17	Lot 1 DP 168734	2395F State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395F State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
18	ROAD	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
19	Lot 3 DP 143908	2475 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	3/2471 State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
20	Lot 2 DP 135342	2395E State Highway 1, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	2395E State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
21	Lot 2 DP 37995	274 Tain Road, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	274 Tain Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
22	Lot 100 DP 447692	2545 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Asher Valley Limited	533 Settlement Road, RD 2, Kaiwaka, Northland, 0573			Yes
23	Lot 1 DP 544537	2587 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████ ██████████	247 Paremoremo Road, Lucas Heights, Auckland, 0632	██████████	2587 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn 0587	Yes
24	ROAD		Kaipara District Council	Private Bag 1001, Dargaville, 0340			Yes
25	Lot 9 DP 447692	2545 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Asher Valley Limited	533 Settlement Road, RD 2, Kaiwaka, Northland, 0573			Yes
26	Lot 2 DP 27868	109 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Brynderwyn	Puriri Downs Limited	258 Sandon Road, Feilding, 4779	██████████	109 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto 0587	Yes
27	Part Lot 7 DP 28821	109 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Brynderwyn	Puriri Downs Limited	258 Sandon Road, Feilding, 4779	██████████	109 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto 0587	Yes
28	Lot 1 DP 466121	163 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	██████████ ██████████	195 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
29	Part Lot 1 DP 29926	109 State Highway 12, Maungaturoto	Puriri Downs Limited	258 Sandon Road, Feilding, 4779	██████████	109 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto 0587	Yes
30	Part Lot 2 DP 29926	47 State Highway 12, Maungaturoto	Puriri Downs Limited	258 Sandon Road, Feilding, 4779	██████████	109 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto 0587	Yes
31	Lot 2 DP 466121	137 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	██████████ ██████████	137 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
32	Lot 1 DP 41573	97 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	[REDACTED]	97 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
33	ROAD	State Highway 12, Brynderwyn	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
34	Lot 1 DP 374877	26 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	His Majesty the King (NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi)	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
35	ROAD Section 1 SO 413363	State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
36	Lot 1 DP 86300	84 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	[REDACTED]	84 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
37	Part Lot 6 Deposited Plan 28821	2669 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto	Puriri Downs Limited	258 Sandon Road, Feilding, 4779	[REDACTED]	109 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto 0587	Yes
38	ROAD Section 2 SO 413363	State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
39	Lot 2 DP 573641	66A Brynderwyn Road, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	37 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
40	ROAD	State Highway 12, Brynderwyn	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
41	Lot 1 DP 521775	164 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	164 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
42	ROAD	State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
43	Lot 1 DP 86796	25 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	[REDACTED]	25 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
44	Lot 2 DP 521775	164 State Highway 12, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	164 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
45	Lot 1 DP 573641	66 Brynderwyn Road, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	63 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
46	ROAD	State Highway 12, Brynderwyn	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
47	Part Lot 1 DP 113162	10 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	Stonex Developments Limited	10 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
48	Lot 2 DP 113162	2753 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Ask The Arborist Limited	45 Garnet Road, Westmere, Auckland, 1022	[REDACTED]	PO Box 5848, Victoria Street West, Auckland 1141	Yes
49	Lot 1 DP 196710	63A Brynderwyn Road, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	1559 Mangawhai Road, RD 5, Wellsford, 0975	[REDACTED]		Yes
50	Lot 3 DP 573641	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
51	ROAD	Brynderwyn Road	Kaipara District Council	Private Bag 1001, Dargaville, 0340			Yes
52	ROAD	State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
53	Lot 1 DP 208336	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
54	Lot 2 DP 196710	63 Brynderwyn Road, Brynderwyn	██████████	63 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
55	Part Lot 11 DP 3184	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
56	Lot 6 DP 160430	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
57	Lot 7 DP 162581	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████ ██████████	108 Lucerne Road, Remuera, Auckland, 1050			Yes
58	Lot 2 DP 417208	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
59	Lot 3 DP 171842	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████ ██████████ ██████████	117 Hurdall Street East, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0520			Yes
60	Lot 1 DP 171842	2941A State Highway 1, Waipu	██████████ ██████████ ██████	2941A State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
61	STREAM BED Lot 9 DP 162581	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Kaipara District Council	Private Bag 1001, Dargaville, 0340			Yes
62	Lot 3 DP 162581	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████ ██████████	195 State Highway 12, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
63	Lot 1 DP 162581	2941A State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	2941A State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
64	Lot 1 DP 417208	2941B State Highway 1, Brynderwyn	[REDACTED]	2941B State Highway 1, RD 2, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0587			Yes
65	RIVER	Piroa Stream	#N/A	#N/A			
66	Part Lot 2 DP 24461	State Highway 1, Waipu	Her Majesty the Queen (NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi)	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
67	Lot 8 DP 162581	State Highway 1, Waipu	Night Jasmine Holdings Limited	PO Box 377, Kerikeri, Northland, 0245			Yes
68	Part Allot 316A PSH OF Waipu	State Highway 1, Waipu	Her Majesty the Queen (NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi)	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
69	Allot 254 PSH OF Waipu	Glenmohr Road Waipu	A.H.I. Group Limited	PO Box 7403, Te Ngae, Rotorua, 3042			Yes
70	Lot 1 DP 422449	State Highway 1, Waipu	Zentral Estate Limited	PO Box 304, Turangi, Whangārei, 3353	[REDACTED]	P.O Box 304, Turangi 3334	Yes
71	ROAD Section 15 SO 70379	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
72	ROAD Section 14 SO 70379	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
73	ROAD Section 12 SO 70379	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
74	ROAD Section 16 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
75	ROAD Section 7 SO 70379	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
76	ROAD	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
77	ROAD Section 6 SO 70379	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
78	ROAD Section 4 SO 70379	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
79	ROAD Section 17 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
80	ROAD Section 20 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
81	Part Lot 2 DP 171833	State Highway 1, Waipu	██████████ ██████████ ██████████ ██████████	25 Lang Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
82	ROAD Section 1 SO 70379	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
83	Section 18 SO 510398	4647 State Highway 1 Waipu	64 State Highway One Limited	10 Lang Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
84	ROAD Section 21 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
85	ROAD Section 22 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
86	Section 19 SO 510398	4569 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ MR Trustee Company 2012 Limited	102 McLean Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████		Yes
87	ROAD Section 23 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
88	ROAD Section 25 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
89	ROAD Section 24 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
90	Section 26 SO 510398	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547			
91	ROAD Section 27 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
92	ROAD Section 28 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
93	Section 29 SO 510398	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547			Yes
94	Part Allot 115 PSH OF Waipu	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
95	ROAD Section 30 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
96	ROAD Section 31 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
97	ROAD Section 32 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
98	Allot 113 PSH OF Waipu	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547			Yes
99	ROAD Section 33 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
100	Allot 595 PSH OF Waipu	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547			Yes
101	Section 36 SO 510398	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547			Yes
102	ROAD Section 37 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
103	ROAD		Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, Whangārei, 0143			Yes
104	ROAD Section 1 SO 313920	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
105	Section 44 SO 510398	4321 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ ██████████	PO Box 69, Waipu, Northland, 0545			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
106	ROAD Section 45 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
107	Section 47 SO 510398	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547	Kauri Park Nurseries Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547	Yes
108	Part Allot 42 PSH OF Waipu	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547			Yes
109	ROAD Section 46 SO 510398	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
110	Part Lot 2 DP 45580	88 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	████████████████████ ██████████	95 Glenmohr Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████		Yes
111	RIVER	Waihoihoi River	#N/A	#N/A			
112	Part Allot 62 PSH OF Waipu	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	████████████████████ ██████████	95 Glenmohr Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████		Yes
113	RIVER	Waihoihoi River	#N/A	#N/A			
114	Part Allot 42 PSH OF Waipu	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547	Kauri Park Nurseries Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, Northland, 0547	Yes
115	ROAD	Glenmohr Road	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, Whangārei, 0143			Yes
116	ROAD Section 2 SO 313920	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
117	Part Lot 4 DP 26325	4135 State Highway 1 Waipu	████████████████████ ████████████████████	4135 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
118	ROAD Section 3 SO 313920	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
119	Lot 3 DP 26325	4135 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ ██████████	4135 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
120	Lot 2 DP 26325	4135 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ ██████████	4135 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
121	Part Lot 1 DP 26325	4135 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ ██████████	4135 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
122	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	4135 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ ██████████	4135 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
123	Part Allot 9 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
124	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
125	Part Allot 9 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
126	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
127	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
128	ROAD	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
129	Lot 2 DP 536742	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
130	ROAD	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
131	ROAD	Finlayson Brook Road	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, Whangārei, 0143			Yes
132	Lot 1 DP 536742	3971 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ ██████████	3971 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████		Yes
133	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
134	Lot 1 DP 24207	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
135	ROAD	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
136	ROAD Section 8 SO 389660	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
137	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
138	ROAD Section 7 SO 389660	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
139	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
140	Lot 1 DP 514700	3906 State Highway 1 Waipu	██████████ ██████████	3906 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	HPL Distribution Limited		Yes
141	ROAD	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
142	Lot 2 DP 514700	3924 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	271 Millbrook Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
143	Lot 1 DP 180474	3884 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	3884 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
144	Lot 3 DP 514700	3904 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	7 Argyle Street, Waipu, Northland, 0510			Yes
145	Part Allotment 5 Parish of Waipu	3846 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	1/486 Armagh Street, Linwood, Christchurch, 8011	[REDACTED]	c/o The Post Centre, Counter Delivery, Waipu 0545	Yes
146	Lot 2 DP 180474	3886 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	3886 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
147	Lot 1 DP 532165	3846 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	1/486 Armagh Street, Linwood, Christchurch, 8011	[REDACTED]	c/o The Post Centre, Counter Delivery, Waipu 0545	Yes
148	Part Allot 5 PSH OF Waipu	3868 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	271 Millbrook Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	[REDACTED]	3904 State Highway 1, Waipu 0582	Yes
149	Lot 3 DP 180474	3888 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	3888 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
150	ROAD	State Highway 1, Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
151	Lot 2 DP 532165	3838 State Highway 1 Waipu	Broad Acres Farms Limited	42 Flagstaff Terrace, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
152	Lot 2 DP 309994	3781 State Highway 1 Waipu	[REDACTED]	3781 State Highway 1, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
153	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	107 The Braigh Waipu	██████████ ██████████	302 Massey Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
154	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	105 The Braigh Waipu	██████████	105 The Braigh, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
155	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	107 The Braigh Waipu	██████████, ██████████ ██████████	302 Massey Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
156	Part Allot 3 PSH OF Waipu	99 The Braigh Waipu	██████████ ██████████	13 Foundries Lane, Freemans Bay, Auckland, 1011			Yes
157	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	99 The Braigh Waipu	██████████ ██████████	13 Foundries Lane, Freemans Bay, Auckland, 1011			Yes
158	ROAD	Waipu Bypass	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
158	ROAD	Waipu Bypass	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, Whangārei, 0143			Yes
159	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	90 The Braigh Waipu	GlenCairn Garden Centre Limited	90 The Braigh, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
160	Part Lot 1 DP 44163	47 Millbrook Road Waipu	██████████ ██████████ ██████████	134 North Camp Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	Bryham Farms Limited	111 Shoemaker Road, Waipu 0582	Yes
161	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	8 Millbrook Road Waipu	Rudi MacWills Limited	91 Cullen Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████ ██████████	91 Cullen Road, RD2, Waipu 0582	Yes
162	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	8 Millbrook Road, Waipu	Rudi MacWills Limited	91 Cullen Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████ ██████████	91 Cullen Road, RD2, Waipu 0582	Yes

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (current as of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')	Owner with a registered interest in land that may need to be acquired under the PWA 1981
163	ROAD	The Braigh	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, Whangārei, 0143			Yes
164	Section 1 SO 64911	90 The Braigh Waipu	GlenCairn Garden Centre Limited	90 The Braigh, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
165	STOPPED ROAD SO 64911	90 The Braigh Waipu	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
166	Lot 7 DP 310457	68 The Braigh Waipu	Bryham Farms Limited	111 Shoemaker Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████		Yes
167	ROAD	The Braigh	NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143			
168	ROAD	Millbrook Road	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, Whangārei, 0143			Yes
169	Lot 6 DP 310457	108 Shoemaker Road Waipu	Bryham Farms Limited	111 Shoemaker Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████		Yes
170	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	Millbrook Road Waipu	Candy Corn Limited	50 St Anne Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582			Yes
171	Part Lot 1 DP 46980	108 Shoemaker Road Waipu	Bryham Farms Limited	111 Shoemaker Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████		Yes
172	Lot 5 DP 310457	56 Millbrook Road Waipu	Bryham Farms Limited	111 Shoemaker Road, RD 2, Waipu, Northland, 0582	██████████ ██████████		Yes

Appendix G

Maps and Schedule of owners and occupiers of land adjacent to the Proposed Designation Boundary

Appendix G – Schedules of Owners and Occupiers of Land Adjacent to the Designation Boundary

Schedule 5, in relation to the RMA approvals sought, clauses 5(1)(d) and 12(1)(f) of the FTAA requires a consent application and notice of requirement to include the full name and address of:

- Each owner of the site to which the designation boundary relates and of the land adjacent to that boundary; and
- Each occupier of the site to which the designation boundary relates and of land adjacent to that boundary (whom NZTA has been able to identify after reasonable enquiry).

The following schedule includes the names and address of owners and occupiers of land adjacent to the site or land to which the designation boundary relates. The schedule contains the following information:

- Site ID Code, to be read in conjunction with the maps included in this Appendix.
- Site details, including the address and legal description.
- The owner/s of the site.
- The occupier/s (if different from the owner/s).

In March 2026, following confirmation of the Project's Proposed Designation boundary and subsequent mapping of adjacent properties in relation to it, letters were sent to all adjacent landowners to let them know they are now classified as "project neighbours", due to their property's proximity to the Proposed Designation boundary. For 'new' adjacent landowners, who did not have property within the Indicative Alignment or the previous Emerging Preferred Corridor study area (and therefore hadn't been directly engaged by the Project), their letter requested the names and postal addresses of any tenants or lessees they have.

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A1	Lot 1 DP 84890	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	His Majesty the King (Department of Conservation)	150 Colville Road, RD7, Dargaville, 0377		
A2	Section 12 SO 456515	2414 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2414 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A3	Part Allot 78A PSH OF Kaiwaka	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	180 Hurdall Street West, Maungaturoto, 0520		
A4	Allot 357 PSH OF Kaiwaka	2414 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2414 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A5	Lot 1 DP 41345	2414 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	2416 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A6	Allot 340 PSH OF Kaiwaka	2414 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	2416 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A7	Part Allot 251 PSH OF Kaiwaka	2414 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2414 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A8	Part Allot 86 PSH OF Kaiwaka	2416 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	2414 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A9	Allot 356 PSH OF Kaiwaka	2414 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2414 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A10	Section 4 SO 456515	33 Baldrock Road, Kaiwaka	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, [REDACTED]	33 Baldrock Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A11	Section 8 SO 456515	2414 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2414 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A12	Section 6 SO 456515	33 Baldrock Road, Kaiwaka	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, [REDACTED]	33 Baldrock Road, Maungaturoto, 0587	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542
A13	Part Lot 1 DP 45538	2458 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, [REDACTED]	PO Box 17, Kaiwaka, 0542	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542
A14	Allot 342 PSH OF Kaiwaka	33 Baldrock Road, Kaiwaka	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, [REDACTED]	33 Baldrock Road, Maungaturoto, 0587	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542
A15	Lot 1 DP 613042	2471 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	2471 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A16	Lot 2 DP 613042	2523 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Asher Valley Limited	533 Settlement Road, Kaiwaka, 0573		
A17	Section 10 SO 456515	33 Baldrock Road, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, Elaine [REDACTED]	33 Baldrock Road, Maungaturoto, 0587	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542
A18	Lot 3 DP 613042	2471 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Asher Valley Limited	533 Settlement Road, Kaiwaka, 0573		
A19	Allot 344 PSH OF Kaiwaka	33 Baldrock Road, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	EBP Trustees 2016 Limited, [REDACTED]	33 Baldrock Road, Maungaturoto, 0587	Absolute Concrete Limited	2458 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka 0542

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A20	Lot 1 DP 596420	2523 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Asher Valley Limited	533 Settlement Road, Kaiwaka, 0573		
A21	Lot 100 DP 447692	2545 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Asher Valley Limited	533 Settlement Road, Kaiwaka, 0573		
A22	Lot 2 DP 544537	2587 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Fortune Publicity Limited	2587B State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A23	Lot 1 DP 544537	2587 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████	247 Paremoremo Road, Lucas Heights, Auckland 0632	██████████	2587 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn 0587
A24	Lot 10 DP 447692	2587 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████	247 Paremoremo Road, Lucas Heights, Auckland 0632	██████████	2587 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn 0587
A25	Lot 11 DP 447692	2587 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	██████████	247 Paremoremo Road, Lucas Heights, Auckland 0632	██████████	2587 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn 0587
A26	Part Lot 7 DP 28821	109 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	Puriri Downs Limited	258 Sandon Road, Feilding 4779	██████████	109 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn 0587
A27	Lot 1 DP 179673	2682 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	██████████	423 State Highway 12, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A28	Part Lot 6 Deposited Plan 28821	2669 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Puriri Downs Limited	258 Sandon Road, Feilding 4779	██████████	109 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn 0587
A29	Lot 1 DP 41074	2730 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	██████████	10 Depot Road, Paparoa, 0571		
A30	Lot 1 DP 61490	2700 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587	██████████	2700 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A31	Part Lot 1 DP 28821	2734 State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Aukett Family ECA Trustees Limited, ██████████	2860 State Highway 1, Okaihau, 0476		
A32	Lot 3 DP 573641	116 Brynderwyn Road, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto; 94 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A33	Lot 1 DP 208324	2734 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	Aukett Family ECA Trustees Limited, ██████████	2860 State Highway 1, Okaihau, 0476		
A34	Section 1 SO 67449	2734 SH12 Brynderwyn-Maungaturoto, Otamatea	Aukett Family ECA Trustees Limited, ██████████	2860 State Highway 1, Okaihau, 0476		
A35	Part Lot 11 DP 3184	67 Brynderwyn Road, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A36	Lot 3 DP 208321	5043 State Highway 1, Waipu	Atlas Concrete Limited	PO Box 33244, Takapuna, Auckland 0740		
A37	Lot 2 DP 417208	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A38	Lot 1 DP 171842	2941A State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	2941A State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587; 13a Tarata Court, 0792		
A39	Part Lot 5 DP 29908	5043 State Highway 1, Waipu	Atlas Concrete Limited	PO Box 33244, Takapuna, Auckland 0740		
A40	Lot 1 DP 417208	2941B State Highway 1, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	2941B State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A41	Section 10 Block X Waipu SD	5043 State Highway 1, Waipu	Atlas Concrete Limited	PO Box 33244, Takapuna, Auckland 0740		
A42	Part Lot 2 DP 24461	State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	His Majesty the King (NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi)	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143		
A43	Part Lot 2 DP 24461	State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	His Majesty the King (NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi)	Private Bag 106602, Auckland, 1143		
A44	Part Allot 316A PSH OF Waipu	State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	Zentral Estate Limited	PO Box 304, Turangi, 3353	[REDACTED]	PO Box 304, Turangi 3334
A45	Lot 2 DP 422449	State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	Zentral Estate Limited	PO Box 304, Turangi, 3353	[REDACTED]	PO Box 304, Turangi 3334
A46	Lot 1 DP 44001	4800 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4800 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A47	Lot 1 DP 422449	State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	Zentral Estate Limited	PO Box 304, Turangi, 3353	[REDACTED]	PO Box 304, Turangi 3334
A48	Lot 1 DP 211877	4683 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4683 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A49	Lot 2 DP 211877	PARCEL ID: 6571851	His Majesty the King (Department of Conservation)	PO Box 842, Whangarei, 0140		
A50	Lot 1 DP 420840	4649 State Highway 1, Waipu	Killigray Limited	PO Box 73, Waipu, 0545		
A51	Part Allot 115 PSH OF Waipu	324 Glenmohr Road Waipu 0582	[REDACTED]	324 Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582		
A52	Allot 113 PSH OF Waipu	4351 State Highway 1, Waipu	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, 0547		
A53	Section 36 SO 510398	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, 0547		

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A54	Lot 1 DP 209140	186 Glenmohr Road, Waipu; 188 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	188 Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582		
A55	Part Allot 42 PSH OF Waipu	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, 0547		
A56	Section 47 SO 510398	4245 State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	The Waipu Land Company Limited	PO Box 63, Maungaturoto, 0547		
A57	Lot 1 DP 125679	90 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga	PO Box 2629, 6140		
A58	Part Lot 2 DP 45580	88 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582	[REDACTED]	
A59	Lot 2 DP 617876	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582	[REDACTED]	
A60	Lot 1 DP 617876	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582	[REDACTED]	
A61	Lot 2 DP 427416	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582	[REDACTED]	
A62	Part Allot 62 PSH OF Waipu	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	95 Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582	[REDACTED]	
A63	Lot 2 DP 342809	78 Ryan Road Waipu 0582	Southend Farms (2025) Limited	466 Cove Road, Waipu, 0582		
A64	Part Lot 1 DP 26325	4135 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4135 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A65	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, Waipu, 0582		
A66	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	4135 State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, Waipu, 0582		
A67	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3935 State Highway 1, Waipu	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, Waipu, 0582		
A68	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, Waipu, 0582		
A69	Part Lot 1 DP 201433	3823 State Highway 1, Waipu	Broad Acres Farms Limited	42 Flagstaff Terrace, Waipu, 0582		
A70	Part Lot 1 DP 194000	3823 State Highway 1, Waipu	Broad Acres Farms Limited	42 Flagstaff Terrace, Waipu, 0582		
A71	Part Lot 2 DP 370402	3823 State Highway 1, Waipu	Broad Acres Farms Limited	42 Flagstaff Terrace, Waipu, 0582		
A72	Lot 3 DP 194000	3819 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	136 Middleton Road, Papakura, Auckland 2383		

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A73	Lot 3 DP 309994	3783 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	3783 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A74	Part Lot 2 DP 194000	3817 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	3817 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A75	Part Lot 1 DP 309994	3785 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	3785 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A76	Lot 2 DP 309994	3781 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	3781 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A77	Lot 1 DP 183886	91 The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	91 The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A78	Lot 1 DP 196819	69 The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	69 The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A79	Lot 2 DP 352088	89 The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	89 The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A80	Lot 2 DP 196819	57 The Braigh, Waipu	Oliver Farms Limited	57 The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A81	Lot 1 DP 352088	89A The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	45 Wairimu Way, Waipu, 0582		
A82	Lot 5 DP 612956	The Braigh Waipu 0582	[REDACTED] TW Trustees 2010 Limited	PO Box 41, Waipu, 0545		
A83	Lot 25 DP 612956	PARCEL ID: 8720947	[REDACTED], TW Trustees 2010 Limited	PO Box 41, Waipu, 0545		
A84	Lot 1 DP 308117	64 The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	64 The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A85	Lot 2 DP 308117	60 The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	60 The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A86	Lot 4 DP 308117	54 The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	54 The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A87	Lot 3 DP 308117	58 The Braigh, Waipu	[REDACTED]	PO Box 86, Waipu, 0545		
A88	Part Allot 4 PSH OF Waipu	62 Shoemaker Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	62 Shoemaker Road, Waipu, 0510		
A89	Part Lot 1 DP 46980	108 Shoemaker Road, Waipu 0582	Bryham Farms Limited	111 Shoemaker Road, Waipu, 0582	[REDACTED]	111 Shoemaker Road, Waipu 0582
A90	Lot 4 DP 310457	108 Shoemaker Road, Waipu 0582	Bryham Farms Limited	111 Shoemaker Road, Waipu, 0582	[REDACTED]	111 Shoemaker Road, Waipu 0582
A91	Part Allot 6 PSH OF Waipu	85 Millbrook Road, Waipu	Gunson McLean Trustee Services Limited, [REDACTED]	187 Millbrook Road, Waipu, 0582		

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A92	Part Allot 69 PSH OF Waipu	PARCEL ID: 4763881	Gunson McLean Trustee Services Limited, [REDACTED]	187 Millbrook Road, Waipu, 0582		
A93	Lot 2 DP 469193	123 Ahuroa Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	2132 State Highway 1, Whangārei, 0171		
A94	Lot 1 DP 469193	157 Ahuroa Road, Waipu; 159 Ahuroa Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	159 Ahuroa Road, Waipu, 0582		
A95	Lot 12 DP 407737	PARCEL ID: 7130466	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, 0143		
A96	Part Allot 198 PSH OF Waipu	173 Ahuroa Road, Waipu	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, 0143		
A97	Allot 589 PSH OF Waipu	PARCEL ID: 4751363	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, 0143		
A98	Part Allot 198 PSH OF Waipu	PARCEL ID: 4767563	Whangārei District Council	Private Bag 9023, Te Mai, 0143		
A99	Lot 6 DP 417604	179 Ahuroa Road, Waipu	Summerlands Limited	147 Finlayson Brook Road, Waipu, 0582		
A100	Part Lot 2	PARCEL ID: 7277435	Summerlands Limited	147 Finlayson Brook Road, Waipu, 0582		
A101	Lot 2 DP 416555	PARCEL ID: 7179994	[REDACTED], SH&P Trustees Limited, [REDACTED]	48A The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A102	Lot 1 DP 190682	36 Finlayson Brook Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	36 Finlayson Brook Road, Waipu, 0582		
A103	Part Allot 8 PSH OF Waipu	7 Finlayson Brook Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	7 Finlayson Brook Road, Waipu, 0582		
A104	Part Allot 32 PSH OF Waipu	PARCEL ID: 5073151	[REDACTED], SH&P Trustees Limited, Stephen [REDACTED]	48A The Braigh, Waipu, 0582		
A105	Part Allot 9 PSH OF Waipu	3930 State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	C D & A M Roberts Limited	3930 State Highway 1 South, Waipu, 0582		
A106	Part Lot 1 DP 145770	4068 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4068 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A107	Part Lot 2 DP 187151	4100 State Highway 1, Waipu; 12 Brooks Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	12 Brooks Road, Waipu, 0582		
A108	Part Lot 3 DP 187151	10 Brooks Road, Waipu	[REDACTED]	10 Brooks Road, Waipu, 0582		
A109	Lot 8 DP 200091	PARCEL ID: 4824490	[REDACTED]	PO Box 71016, Auckland, 1348		

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A110	Part Lot 7 DP 340683	11 Tiria Lane, Waipu	[REDACTED]	11 Tiria Lane, Waipu, 0582		
A111	Lot 6 DP 200091	25 Tiria Lane, Waipu	[REDACTED]	PO Box 71016, Auckland, 1348		
A112	Part Lot 3 DP 340683	33 Tiria Lane, Waipu	[REDACTED]	33 Tiria Lane, Waipu, 0582		
A113	Lot 4 DP 200091	39 Tiria Lane, Waipu	[REDACTED]	39 Tiria Lane, Waipu, 0582		
A114	Part Lot 5 DP 181062	4164 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4164 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A115	Lot 1 DP 340683	PARCEL ID: 6755428	[REDACTED]	PO Box 71016, Auckland, 1348		
A116	Part Lot 2 DP 200091	57 Tiria Lane, Waipu	[REDACTED]	57 Tiria Lane, Waipu, 0582		
A117	Lot 4 DP 566376	4212 State Highway 1, Waipu	Gunson McLean Trustee Services Limited, [REDACTED]	4212 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A118	Lot 6 DP 566376	20 Schultz Road, Waipu	Gunson McLean Trustee Services Limited, [REDACTED]	4212 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A119	Lot 1 DP 171222	PARCEL ID: 5151833	Gunson McLean Trustee Services Limited, [REDACTED]	4212 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A120	Lot 1 DP 322657	PARCEL ID: 6858144	Gunson McLean Trustee Services Limited, [REDACTED]	4212 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A121	Lot 2 DP 322657	8 Waipu Gorge Road, Waipu	Whangārei Accessible Housing Trust	PO Box 10004, Whangārei, 0143		
A122	Lot 5 DP 566376	PARCEL ID: 8375865	Gunson McLean Trustee Services Limited, [REDACTED]	4212 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A123	Lot 1 DP 179379	4351 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4351 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A124	Lot 1 DP 187339	4482 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4482 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A125	Lot 2 DP 187339	4484 State Highway 1, Waipu	[REDACTED]	4484 State Highway 1, Waipu, 0582		
A126	Part Allot 548 PSH OF Waipu	Waipu Gorge Road Waipu 0582	His Majesty the King (Department of Conservation)	PO Box 842, Whangarei, 0140		

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

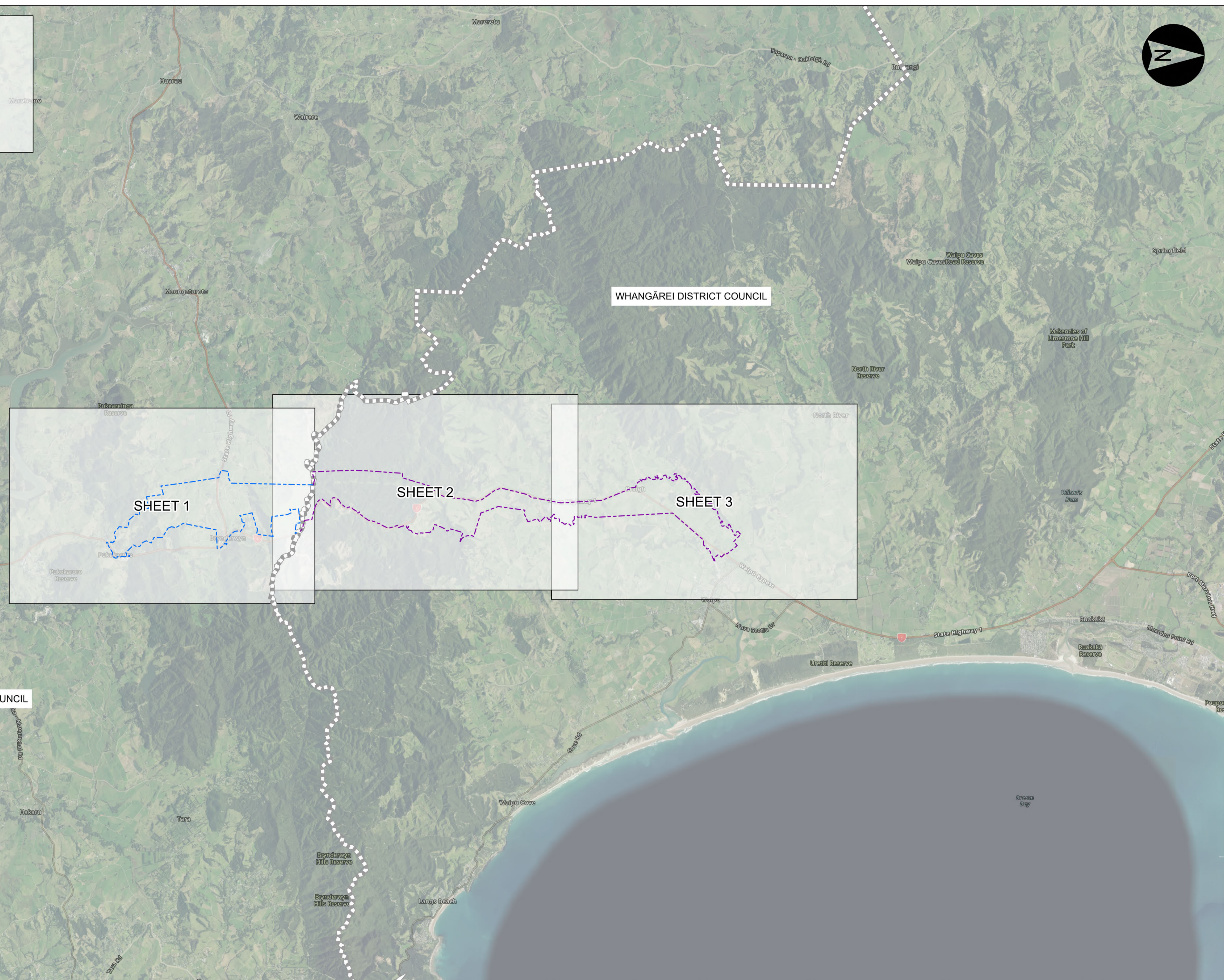
ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
A127	Allot 377 PSH OF Waipu	Waipu Gorge Road Waipu 0582	[REDACTED]	25 Lang Road, Waipu, 0582; 39 Marlborough Street, Mount Eden, 1024		
A128	Allot 254 PSH OF Waipu	Glenmohr Road, Waipu, 0582	A.H.I. Group Limited	PO Box 7403, Te Ngae, 3042		
A129	Lot 8 DP 162581	State Highway 1 Waipu 0582	Night Jasmine Holdings Limited	PO Box 377, Kerikeri, 0245		
A130	Lot 3 DP 162581	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	195 State Highway 12, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A131	Lot 7 DP 162581	State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	108 Lucerne Road, Remuera, 1050		
A132	Lot 6 DP 160430	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A133	Lot 1 DP 208336	37 Brynderwyn Road, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A134	Lot 2 DP 454381	37 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	Mayflower Farms Limited	37 Brynderwyn Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A135	Lot 1 DP 115752	195 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	195 State Highway 12, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A136	Lot 1 DP 466121	163 State Highway 12, Brynderwyn, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	195 State Highway 12, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A137	Lot 1 DP 27868	277 Tain Road, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED]	277 Tain Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A138	Lot 2 DP 37995	274 Tain Road, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED] Clive Jackson Trustee Limited, [REDACTED]	274 Tain Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A139	Lot 1 DP 37995	274 Tain Road, Maungaturoto	[REDACTED], Clive Jackson Trustee Limited, [REDACTED]	274 Tain Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A140	Lot 8 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A141	Lot 1 DP 407949	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		

SCHEDULE FOR OWNERS AND OCCUPIERS OF LAND ADJACENT TO THE SITE OR LAND TO WHICH THE DESIGNATION BOUNDARY RELATES (As of 3 April 2026)

ID Code	Legal Description	Address	Name of Owner	Owner Postal Address (if different to 'Address')	Name of Occupier (if different to 'Owner')	Other Occupier Address (if different to 'Address')
			[REDACTED]			
A142	Lot 2 DP 407949	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A143	Lot 7 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A144	Lot 5 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A145	Lot 1 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A146	Lot 6 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A147	Lot 3 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A148	Lot 4 DP 196115	2395 State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395 State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A149	Lot 10 DP 196115	2395F State Highway 1, Kaiwaka	[REDACTED]	2395F State Highway 1, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A150	Lot 3 DP 314531	166 Mountain Road, Maungaturoto	Kedesh Limited	166 Mountain Road, Maungaturoto, 0587		
A151	Lot 1 DP 207528	5043 State Highway 1, Waipu	Atlas Concrete Limited	PO Box 33244, Takapuna, Auckland 0740		
A152	Lot 1 DP 208321	5043 State Highway 1, Waipu	Atlas Concrete Limited	PO Box 33244, Takapuna, Auckland 0740		

LEGEND

- PROPOSED DESIGNATION BOUNDARY (KAIPARA DISTRICT COUNCIL)
- PROPOSED DESIGNATION BOUNDARY (WHANGĀREI DISTRICT COUNCIL)
- ▭ DISTRICT COUNCIL BOUNDARIES
- ▭ MAP SHEETS



ALL INFORMATION SHOWN IS SUBJECT TO FINAL DESIGN AND THE DETAILS MAY CHANGE. AREAS AND MEASUREMENTS ARE SUBJECT TO SURVEY.

PROJECT		REV	DATE	REVISION DETAILS	APPROVED	QA	STATUS	TITLE	PROJECT INFORMATION				
		A01	20.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	DRAWN	CONSENT DESIGN	BRYNDERWYN HILLS SECTION ADJACENT LAND OVERVIEW	NORTHLAND CORRIDOR				
		A02	24.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	CHECKED			DOCUMENT CODE				
						REVIEWED	APPROVED	10722-PTA-2B0-PE-DRG-1620					
						VERIFIED	R. DU PLOOY	SCALE	SIZE	REFERENCE NO.	REV		
						PROJECT LEAD	APPROVED BY	1:50,000	A1	PE-1620	A02		
							R. DU PLOOY	DATE					
								20.03.2026					



COORDINATE SYSTEM: NZGD 2000 New Zealand Transverse Mercator
VERTICAL DATUM: NZVD2016

ORIGINAL IN COLOUR DETAIL MAY BE LOST IF COPIED

LEGEND

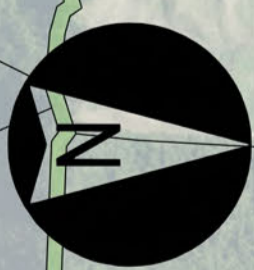
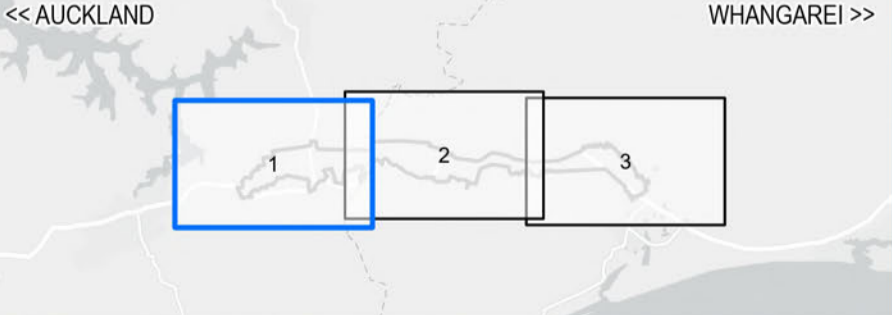
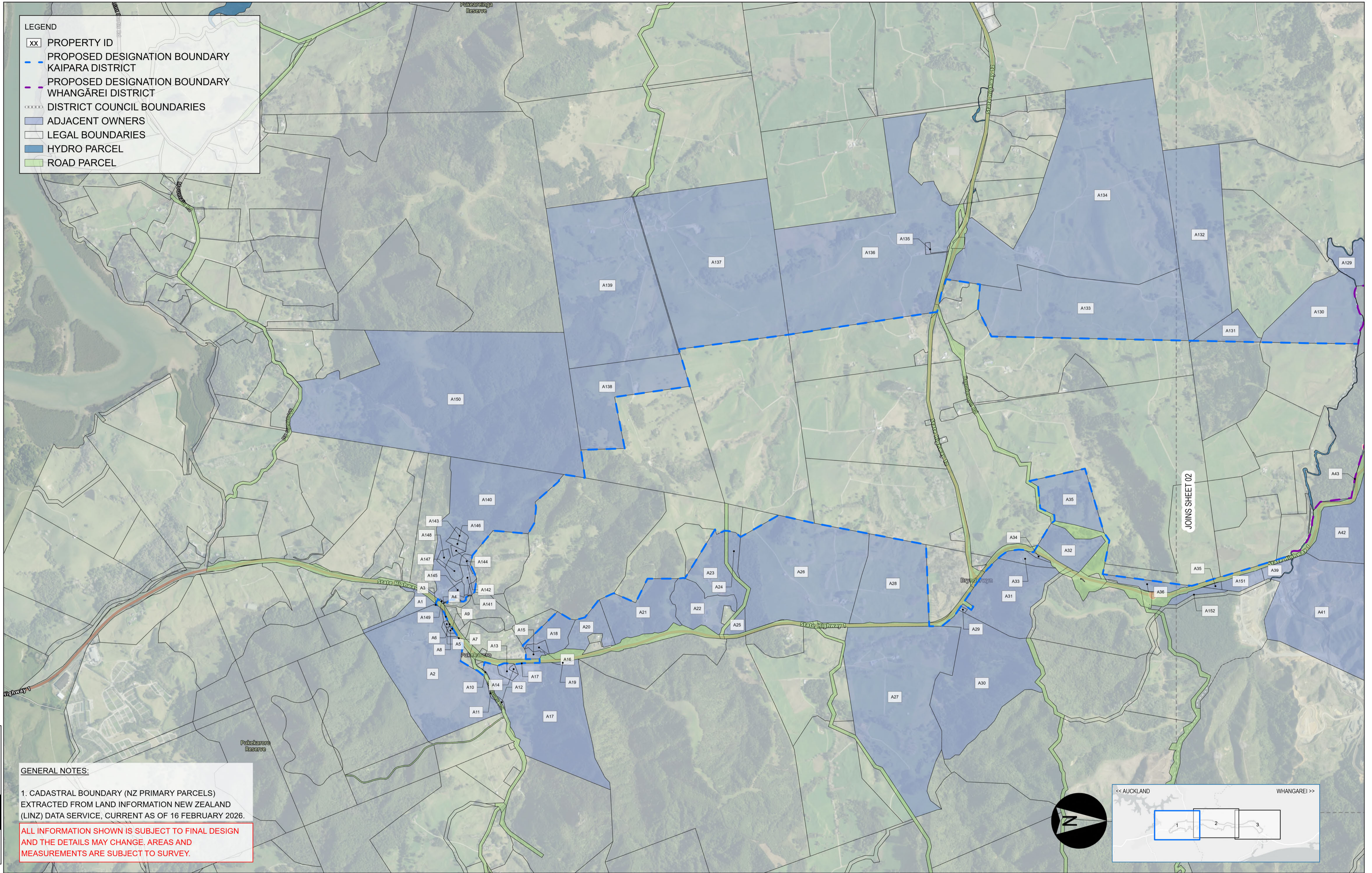
- xx PROPERTY ID
- PROPOSED DESIGNATION BOUNDARY KAIPARA DISTRICT
- PROPOSED DESIGNATION BOUNDARY WHANGĀREI DISTRICT
- DISTRICT COUNCIL BOUNDARIES
- ADJACENT OWNERS
- LEGAL BOUNDARIES
- HYDRO PARCEL
- ROAD PARCEL

400 m
0
200
400

GENERAL NOTES:

1. CADASTRAL BOUNDARY (NZ PRIMARY PARCELS) EXTRACTED FROM LAND INFORMATION NEW ZEALAND (LINZ) DATA SERVICE, CURRENT AS OF 16 FEBRUARY 2026.

ALL INFORMATION SHOWN IS SUBJECT TO FINAL DESIGN AND THE DETAILS MAY CHANGE. AREAS AND MEASUREMENTS ARE SUBJECT TO SURVEY.

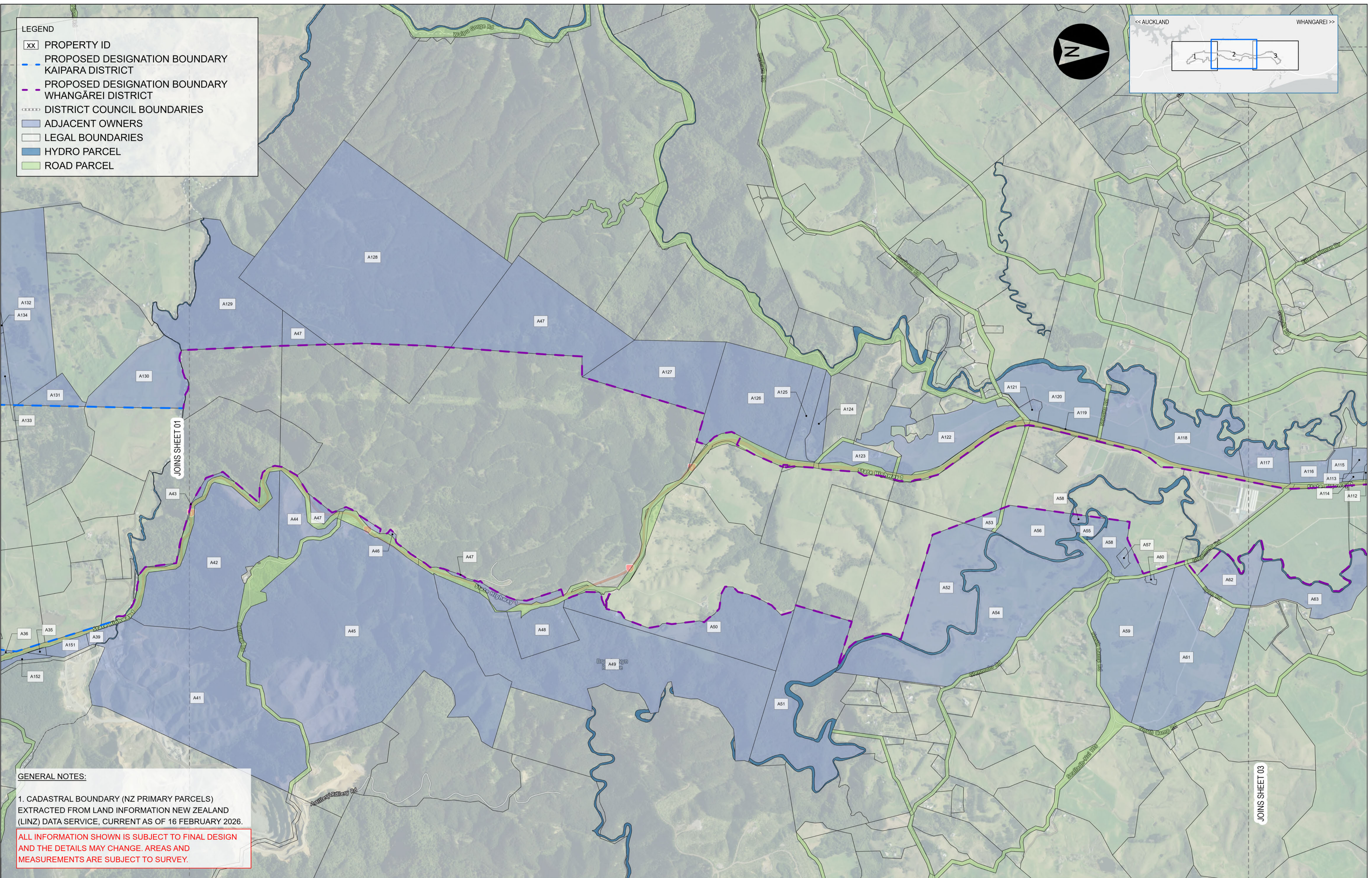


PROJECT	REV	DATE	REVISION DETAILS	APPROVED	QA	STATUS	TITLE	PROJECT INFORMATION
	A01	20.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	DRAWN	CONSENT DESIGN	BRYNDERWYN HILLS SECTION ADJACENT LAND PLAN SHEET 1 OF 3	NORTHLAND CORRIDOR
	A02	24.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	CHECKED			
					REVIEWED	APPROVED		DOCUMENT CODE
					VERIFIED	R. DU PLOOY		10722-PTA-2B0-PE-DRG-1621
					PROJECT LEAD	APPROVED BY	DATE	SCALE
					T. IRELAND	R. DU PLOOY	24.03.2026	1:10,000
								SIZE
								A1
								REFERENCE NO.
								PE-1621
								REV
								A02



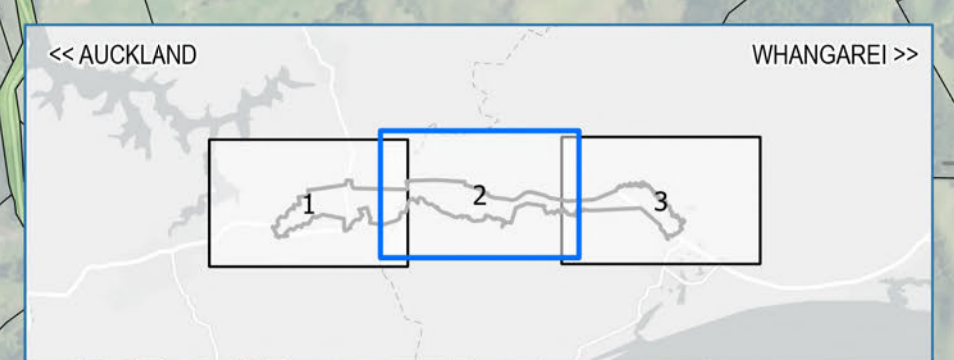
COORDINATE SYSTEM: NZGD 2000 New Zealand Transverse Mercator
VERTICAL DATUM: NZVD2016

ORIGINAL IN COLOUR DETAIL MAY BE LOST IF COPIED



LEGEND

- xx PROPERTY ID
- PROPOSED DESIGNATION BOUNDARY KAIPARA DISTRICT
- PROPOSED DESIGNATION BOUNDARY WHANGAREI DISTRICT
- DISTRICT COUNCIL BOUNDARIES
- ADJACENT OWNERS
- LEGAL BOUNDARIES
- HYDRO PARCEL
- ROAD PARCEL



400 m
0
200
400

GENERAL NOTES:

1. CADASTRAL BOUNDARY (NZ PRIMARY PARCELS) EXTRACTED FROM LAND INFORMATION NEW ZEALAND (LINZ) DATA SERVICE, CURRENT AS OF 16 FEBRUARY 2026.

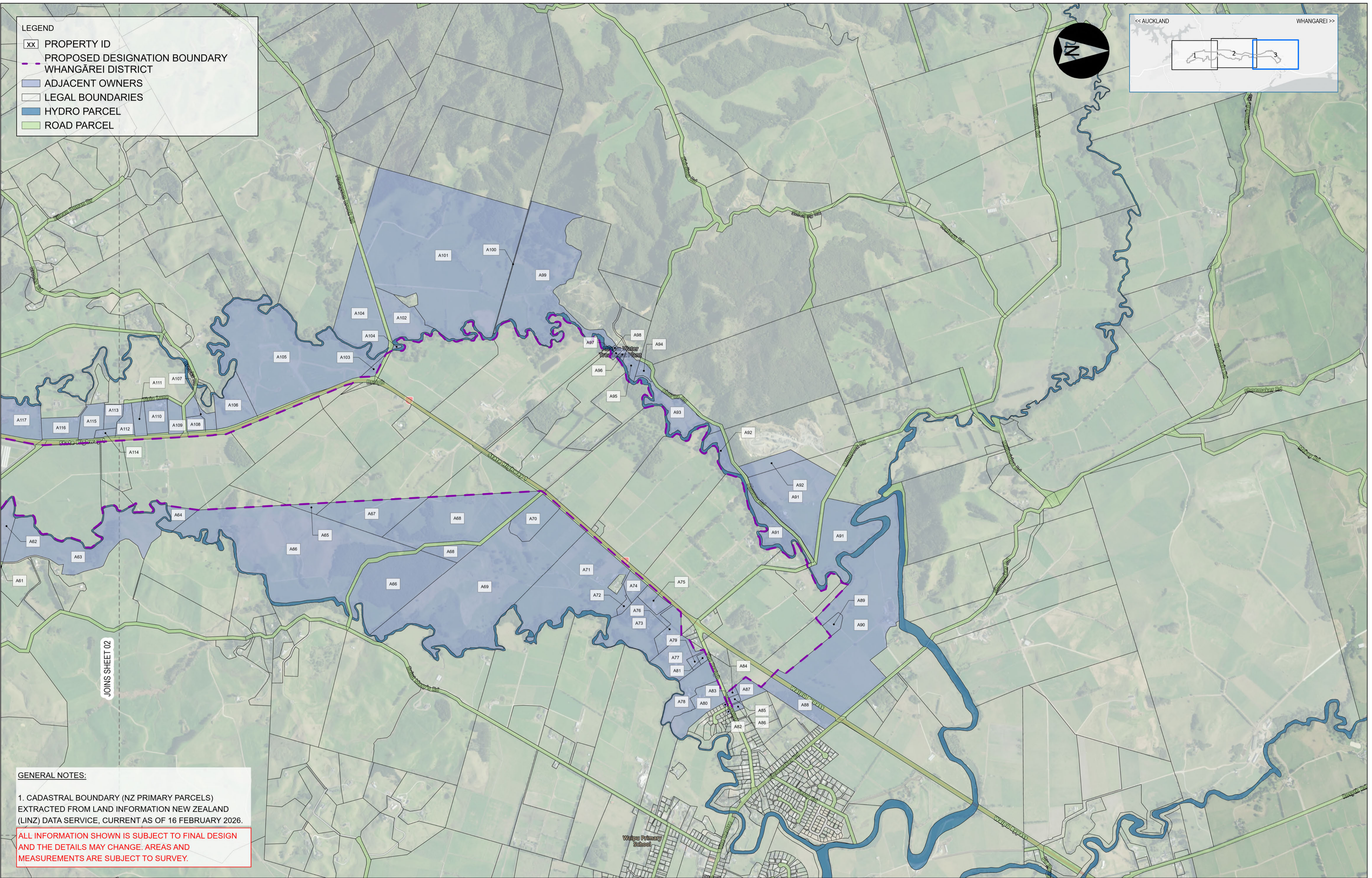
ALL INFORMATION SHOWN IS SUBJECT TO FINAL DESIGN AND THE DETAILS MAY CHANGE. AREAS AND MEASUREMENTS ARE SUBJECT TO SURVEY.

PROJECT		REV	DATE	REVISION DETAILS	APPROVED	QA	STATUS	TITLE	PROJECT INFORMATION			
		A01	20.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	DRAWN	CONSENT DESIGN	BRYNDERWYN HILLS SECTION ADJACENT LAND PLAN SHEET 2 OF 3	NORTHLAND CORRIDOR			
		A02	24.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	CHECKED			DOCUMENT CODE			
						REVIEWED	APPROVED		10722-PTA-280-PE-DRG-1622			
						VERIFIED	R. DU PLOOY		SCALE	SIZE	REFERENCE NO.	REV
						PROJECT LEAD	APPROVED BY	DATE	1:10,000	A1	PE-1622	A02
							R. DU PLOOY	24.03.2026				



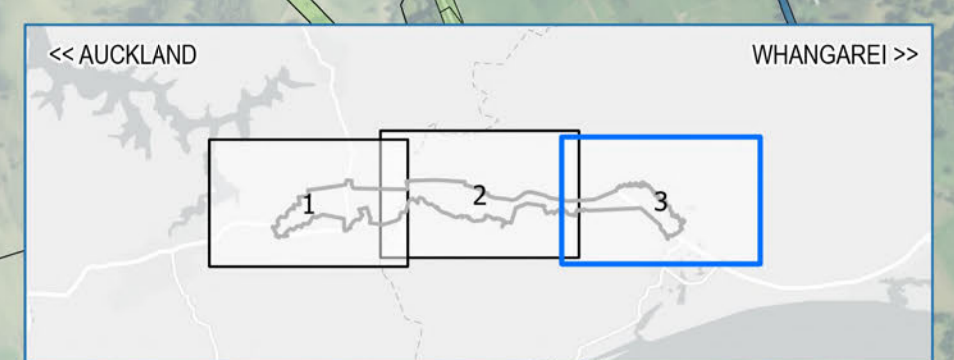
COORDINATE SYSTEM: NZGD 2000 New Zealand Transverse Mercator
VERTICAL DATUM: NZVD2016

ORIGINAL IN COLOUR DETAIL MAY BE LOST IF COPIED



LEGEND

- xx PROPERTY ID
- PROPOSED DESIGNATION BOUNDARY WHANGĀREI DISTRICT
- ADJACENT OWNERS
- LEGAL BOUNDARIES
- HYDRO PARCEL
- ROAD PARCEL



GENERAL NOTES:

1. CADASTRAL BOUNDARY (NZ PRIMARY PARCELS) EXTRACTED FROM LAND INFORMATION NEW ZEALAND (LINZ) DATA SERVICE, CURRENT AS OF 16 FEBRUARY 2026.

ALL INFORMATION SHOWN IS SUBJECT TO FINAL DESIGN AND THE DETAILS MAY CHANGE. AREAS AND MEASUREMENTS ARE SUBJECT TO SURVEY.

400 m
0
200
400

PROJECT	REV	DATE	REVISION DETAILS	APPROVED	QA	STATUS	TITLE	PROJECT INFORMATION
	A01	20.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	DRAWN	CONSENT DESIGN	BRYNDERWYN HILLS SECTION ADJACENT LAND PLAN SHEET 3 OF 3	NORTHLAND CORRIDOR
	A02	24.03.2026	CONSENT DESIGN FOR CLIENT REVIEW	R.D	CHECKED			
					REVIEWED	APPROVED R. DU PLOOY		DOCUMENT CODE 10722-PTA-2B0-PE-DRG-1623
					VERIFIED	APPROVED BY R. DU PLOOY		SCALE 1:10,000
					PROJECT LEAD	DATE 24.03.2026		SIZE A1
								REFERENCE NO. PE-1623
								REV A02



COORDINATE SYSTEM: NZGD 2000 New Zealand Transverse Mercator
VERTICAL DATUM: NZVD2016

ORIGINAL IN COLOUR DETAIL MAY BE LOST IF COPIED